



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







COMPLETE

SPANISH COURSE,

IN ACCORDANCE WITH

THE ROBERTSONIAN SYSTEM

OF

TEACHING MODERN LANGUAGES.

BY

LOUIS ERNST.

REVISED EDITION.

NEW YORK:
GEORGE R. LOCKWOOD,
FOR SALE BY
THE BAKER & TAYLOR CO.,

Copyright by
GEORGE R. LOCKWOOD.
1898.

SPANISH TEXT-BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

GEORGE R. LOCKWOOD.

| | |
|--|--------|
| VINGUT-OLLENDORFF. THE SPANISH TEACHER. 12mo... | \$1 50 |
| KEY TO THE EXERCISES..... | 75 |
| SPANISH READER AND TRANSLATOR. 12mo..... | 1 00 |
| DEL MAR. GUIDE TO SPANISH CONVERSATION. 12mo..... | 75 |
| ROBERTSON. COMPLETE SPANISH COURSE. 12mo..... | 1 50 |
| SALES' JOSSE'S SPANISH GRAMMAR. 12mo..... | 1 25 |
| MANTILLA. HAND-BOOK OF SPANISH CONVERSATION. 18mo. | 60 |

For Spaniards Learning English and French, or French Learning Spanish.

| | |
|---|------|
| VINGUT-OLLENDORFF. EL MAESTRO DE INGLÉS. 12mo. | 1 50 |
| CLAVE DE LOS EJERCICIOS..... | 75 |
| EL PRECEPTOR ELEMENTAL DE INGLÉS. 12mo... | 1 00 |
| CLAVE DE LOS EJERCICIOS..... | 50 |
| EL MAESTRO DE FRANCÉS. 12mo..... | 1 50 |
| CLAVE DE LOS EJERCICIOS..... | 75 |
| LE MAÎTRE D'ESPAGNOL. 12mo..... | 1 50 |
| CORRIGÉ DES EXERCISES..... | 75 |
| MANTILLA. NOCIONES DE LENGUA FRANCESA. 16mo..... | 40 |
| CARTERA DE LA CONVERSACION EN INGLÉS..... | 60 |
| LIBRO PRIMARIO PARA TRADUCIR EL FRANCÉS... | 40 |
| ELEMENTOS DE FISILOGIA É HIGIENE. 16mo... | 40 |
| CARTILLA DE FISICA. 16mo..... | 40 |
| DEL MAR. LA GUIA PARA LA CONVERSACION EN INGLÉS.... | 75 |
| JOYAS DE LA POESIA CASTELLANA. 12mo..... | 50 |
| VINGUT. LECTOR Y TRADUCTOR INGLÉS. 12mo..... | 1 00 |
| LECTURAS INGLESAS ESCOGIDAS, con Vocabulario..... | 1 25 |

PREFACE.

IN presenting to the public a "COMPLETE SPANISH COURSE," based upon Professor T. ROBERTSON'S admirable Method of Teaching Modern Languages, the author hopes that the title selected will not be found improperly applied, in view of the comprehensiveness of the plan pursued, as exhibited in the Table of Contents.

Without presuming upon any vital deviation from the Robertsonian system in general, a change has, however, been thought advisable in the choice of the text, which, instead of being an uninterrupted story, is made up of a series of short pieces, presenting in turn all the words likely to occur in ordinary conversation, followed by a selection from the best Spanish authors, and ending with a complete course of business letters and book-keeping; but the latter, having been added more especially for the use of those who study the language for commercial purposes, may be readily omitted, as all the grammatical rules and observations have been engrafted upon the earlier familiar lessons.

A portion of this text is taken up at each lesson, as appointed, and read over carefully until the pronunciation and meaning of the expressions contained in it have been fully mastered, when sundry questions, exclusively made up of the words already seen and readily answered, with small fragments of the text of the day, will establish from the first a short, but animated dialogue between the master and student, and remove in a very ingenious manner, the difficulties usually met with in beginning Spanish conversation

Not content with this, however, and feeling the importance of an early habit of composition, a number of sentences for oral translation, also devoid of expressions not explained before, have been introduced; and these, prepared with an especial view to display the many ways in which the words learned may be transposed so as to express new ideas, cannot fail to prove an excellent exercise to accustom the pupil to speak Spanish, and to understand the language when spoken. They conclude the first part of each lesson, which is invariably kept so far exclusively practical in its nature, being intended for those who feel impatient to speak as speedily as possible.

The second part, on the contrary, is dedicated to the theory, and explains, in a series of clear and easy rules, all the difficulties of Spanish grammar and syntax. It contains, also, numerous progressive exercises for home practice, and a key by which several thousand new words may be acquired with ease,—a feature which, while it encourages considerably the early efforts of a beginner, tends, at the same time, materially to smooth his first steps, by doing away entirely with the necessity of referring to the dictionary, and freeing him from the many perplexing doubts usually attending such consultations.

As to the best plan to be pursued in studying this book, it has been fully explained in the notes added for that purpose to the first two lessons.

The author would also improve this opportunity to thank Professor T. Rodriguez de Caballos, and Professor J. C. H. Gitterman, for their valuable assistance in the preparation of this work.

L. E.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| PREFACE..... | iii |
| PRONUNCIATION | vii |
| | |
| LESSON | |
| I. Of Man | 1 |
| II. Food or Dinner..... | 8 |
| III. The House..... | 14 |
| IV. Clothes..... | 20 |
| V. School..... | 30 |
| VI. Commerce | 39 |
| VII. Time and Numbers | 47 |
| VIII. Animals..... | 57 |
| IX. The City | 66 |
| X. The Country | 75 |
| XI. Arithmetic | 84 |
| XII. Geography | 92 |
| XIII. Anecdote | 101 |
| XIV. Presence of Mind | 110 |
| XV. Extract from Saavedra | 119 |
| XVI. Extract from P. B. Gracian | 128 |
| XVII. Extract from the History of the Conquest of Mexico, by Solis | 138 |
| XVIII. Extract from the History of Spain, by El Padre Isla.... | 147 |
| XIX. Extract from a Sketch of the Character of Queen Elizabeth of England, by Hume; translated into Spanish by Salvá | 157 |
| XX. Diversity of Character of the Spanish Provinces, by Ca- dalso: First Part: Cantabria | 166 |
| XXI. Second Part: Asturia | 175 |
| XXII. Third Part: Galicia and Castile..... | 184 |
| XXIII. Fourth Part: Estremadura and Andalusia..... | 193 |
| XXIV. Fifth Part: Murcia and Catalonia..... | 203 |
| XXV. Conclusion: Arragonia..... | 214 |
| XXVI. Extract from the Troubadour, by Don Juan Garcia Guti- errez: First Part..... | 224 |
| XXVII. Conclusion..... | 235 |
| XXVIII. Description of Seville, by Mariana: First Part | 247 |
| XXIX. Second Part | 256 |
| XXX. Conclusion | 265 |

| LESSON | PAGE |
|---|------|
| XXXI. Models of Notes: Invitation, Acceptance, and Refusal..... | 274 |
| XXXII. Receipt, Promissory Note, and Advertisements.. | 281 |
| XXXIII. COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENCE: | |
| Circular on establishing a new house | 288 |
| XXXIV. An Order | 295 |
| XXXV. Answer..... | 302 |
| XXXVI. Market Report..... | 308 |
| XXXVII. Invoice, Bill of Lading, and Drafts..... | 315 |
| XXXVIII. Complaint of the inferior quality and deficiency in weight of the goods sent..... | 323 |
| XXXIX. Answer to Complaint..... | 329 |
| XL. Extract from the Books of José Ruiz & Co... .. | 336 |
| XLI. Mercantile Vocabulary..... | 344 |
| XLII. Mercantile Phrases | 351 |
| XLIII. Parallel of Queen Isabella of Spain with Queen Elizabeth of England, by G. H. Prescott; translated by A. C. Iturburu: First Part.... | 358 |
| XLIV. Second Part | 360 |
| XLV. Conclusion | 362 |
| XLVI. A Letter of Lord Chesterfield to his Son; translated into Spanish by Luis Maneiro: First Part | 365 |
| XLVII. Conclusion | 367 |
| XLVIII. Extract from the 37th Chapter of the First Part of Don Quixote | 371 |
| FAMILIAR PHRASES | 372 |
| GENERAL INDEX, comprising all the Rules and Observations contained in this work, arranged in alphabetical order for the convenience of reference..... | 383 |

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.

Of the Alphabet.

The Spanish letters are the same as the English, with the exception of K and W, which are used only in foreign words. They are called and pronounced as follows :

Names of the Letters.

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|-----|------|-------|-------|-------|-----|--------|-------|-------|--------|----------|-------|
| A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | L | M | N |
| ah | bay | thay | day | ay | effay | hay | atchay | ee | hotah | ellay | emmay | ennay |
| O | P | Q | R | S | T | U | V | X | Y | Z | | |
| oh | pay | koo | erray | essay | tay | oo | vay | akiss | e | griega | thaydah. | |

Pronunciation.

| | | | | | | | |
|-----|--|----|---------|----|----|----|-------------|
| A | ..... | is | sounded | as | a | in | far. |
| B* | ..... | " | " | " | b | " | book. |
| C,† | before a, o, u, l, r, or a second c, | " | " | " | c | " | cat. |
| " | e or i,..... | " | " | " | th | " | thin. |
| Ch | ..... | " | " | " | ch | " | church. |
| D | ..... | " | " | " | d | " | day. |
| E | ..... | " | " | " | e | " | get. |
| F | ..... | " | " | " | f | " | far. |
| G, | before a, o, u, l, r, or a second g, | " | " | " | g | " | good. |
| " | e or i, is sounded as a strongly aspirated h. | | | | | | |
| Gu. | —U is silent in <i>gue</i> , and <i>gui</i> , unless a diæresis (ú) is put over it. | | | | | | |
| H | is always silent. | | | | | | |
| I | ..... | is | sounded | as | i | in | siz. |
| J | has a guttural sound, like a strongly aspirated h, or the German <i>ch</i> . | | | | | | |
| L | ..... | is | sounded | as | l | in | lion. |
| LL | ..... | " | " | " | ll | " | bullion. |
| M | ..... | " | " | " | m | " | me. |
| N | ..... | " | " | " | n | " | no. |
| Ñ | ..... | " | " | " | gn | " | mignonette. |
| O | ..... | " | " | " | o | " | no. |
| P | ..... | " | " | " | p | " | paper. |
| Q | is never used without <i>u</i> ; the <i>u</i> is, however, always silent, and the <i>Q</i> sounded like <i>K</i> . | | | | | | |

* B and V are often used for each other in Spanish.

† C, before e or i, is also sounded as in English, in the words *centre*, *citron*, especially in the West India islands.

| | |
|---------|---|
| R..... | is sounded as <i>r</i> in <i>rose</i> . |
| S..... | " " " <i>s</i> " <i>sia</i> . |
| T..... | " " " <i>t</i> " <i>table</i> . |
| U*..... | " " " <i>oo</i> " <i>good</i> . |
| V..... | " " " <i>v</i> " <i>voice</i> . |
| X†..... | " " " <i>x</i> " <i>expressions</i> . |
| Y..... | " " " <i>y</i> " <i>you</i> . |
| Z..... | " " " <i>th</i> " <i>thin</i> . |

Of Accentuation in Reading and Writing.

The acute accent (') is the only one used in Spanish. It serves to distinguish words of similar orthography, as :

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| <i>dé</i> , give ; | ..... | <i>de</i> , of. |
| <i>él</i> , he ; | ..... | <i>el</i> , the. |
| <i>está</i> , is ; | ..... | <i>esta</i> , this. |
| <i>mí</i> , me ; | ..... | <i>mi</i> , my. |
| <i>sí</i> , himself ; | ..... | <i>si</i> , if. |
| <i>té</i> , tea ; | ..... | <i>te</i> , thee. |
| <i>tú</i> , thou ; | ..... | <i>tu</i> , thy, etc. |

It also shows in some words what syllable has to be uttered with a particular stress ; as in *pérdida*, loss ; *difícil*, difficult ; *cantará*, he will sing, etc.

As words of one syllable cannot present any difficulty in this respect, they are never surmounted with an accent, except in cases where they are used in more than one meaning ; as, *él*, he ; *el*, the, etc.

In words of two or three syllables, the stress is generally on the last but one, for those ending with a vowel, and on the last, for those ending with a consonant ; as, *padre*, father ; *mujer*, woman.

An *s*, or any other inflexion introduced as the mark of the plural or of certain persons, in verbs, does not change the accent of a word ; and *padres*, fathers ; *mujeres*, women ; *pices*, fishes ; *venderás*, thou shalt sell ; *venderán*, they shall sell, are accented like *padre*, father ; *mujer*, woman ; *pez*, fish ; and *venderé*, I shall sell.

The diphthongs *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *ua*, *ue*, *uo*, etc., at the end of a word, as in *agua*, water ; *serie*, series, form generally but one syllable.

Words of more than three syllables have to be decomposed into two or more small ones, and read regularly as such.

Ex. *Ricamente*, richly ; read *rica-mente*.

Doctamente, wisely ; read *docta-mente*.

Only such words as deviate from the above rules are irregular, and have to be surmounted with an accent, to indicate which syllable has to be pronounced with a particular stress ; as,

Pérdida, loss ; *difícil*, difficult ; *cantará*, he will sing, etc.

* *U* is silent after *g* and *q*.—See those letters.

† Some words formerly spelled with an *X*, are now written with a *J* ; as *reloj*, watch. The *x* is also sometimes replaced by *cs*, as in *existence*, which may be written *existencia*, or *ecistencia*, though *existencia* is the more modern form.—See Lesson Sixth, p. 39.

FIRST LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion primera.*

Lesson first.

El Hombre,

The Man.

Este caballero y esta señora tienen dos

This gentleman and this lady have two

niños, un hijo y una hija. ¿Querria V.

children, a son and a daughter. Would like your honor

saber como se llaman? El niño se llama

to know how themselves they call? The boy himself calls

Pablo, y la niña Virginia. Pablo tiene la

Paul, and the girl Virginia. Paul has the

cabeza grande, el pelo negro y los ojos

head large, the hair black, and the eyes

vivos. Virginia tiene la cara agradable,

lively. Virginia has the face agreeable,

los dientes hermosos y los piés pequeños.

the teeth handsome, and the feet small.

¿Tiene V. alguna hermana? Si, señor,

Has your honor any sister? Yes, sir,

tengo una. ¿Que edad tiene ella? Es

I have one. What age has she? She is

muy jóven. ¿Quien es aquella señora?

very young. Who is that lady?

* Before attempting to read the text, the student should, if possible, hear it five or six times from the mouth of a native, or some person well versed in Spanish pronunciation; and then familiarize himself thoroughly with the spelling and meaning of each expression. To promote the latter in particular it will be well to transcribe once or twice, from dictation and from memory, the whole of the literal translation, in small fragments of a few words at a time; such exercises being highly calculated to form the eye and ear.

Es la hermana de mi madre. Aquel
 She is the sister of my mother. That
caballero es el hermano de mi padre.
 gentleman is the brother of my father.

The same in good English.

EL HOMBRE.

Este caballero y esta señora tienen dos niños, un hijo y una hija. ¿Querria V. saber como se llaman? El niño se llama Pablo, y la niña Virginia. Pablo tiene la cabeza grande, el pelo negro y los ojos vivos. Virginia tiene la cara agradable, los dientes hermosos y los piés pequeños. ¿Tiene V. alguna hermana? Si, señor, tengo una. ¿Que edad tiene ella? Es muy jóven. ¿Quien es aquella señora? Es la hermana de mi madre. Aquel caballero es el hermano de mi padre.

MAN.

This gentleman and this lady have two children, a son and a daughter. Would you like to know their names? The boy is called Paul, and the girl Virginia. Paul has a large head, black hair, and bright eyes. Virginia has a pleasant face, handsome teeth, and small feet. Have you a sister? Yes, sir, I have one. How old is she? She is very young. Who is that lady? She is the sister of my mother. That gentleman is the brother of my father.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

¿ Que leccion es esta? †
 ¿ Como se llama el niño?
 ¿ Como se llama la niña?
 ¿ Que cabeza tiene el niño?
 ¿ Que piés tiene la niña?
 ¿ Que ojos tiene Pablo?
 ¿ Que cara tiene Virginia?

Es la primera.
 El niño se llama Pablo.
 La niña se llama Virginia.
 Tiene la cabeza grande.
 Tiene los piés pequeños.
 Pablo tiene los ojos vivos.
 Virginia tiene la cara agradable.

* These are intended to accustom the scholar to speak, and to understand the language when spoken. The questions have been so imagined as to be readily understood and answered in Spanish, either verbally or in writing, by any one who has studied diligently the preceding text.

† Inverted signs of interrogation are generally placed before and after questions in Spanish, to assist in intoning them properly; but the rule is not obligatory.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| ¿ Que pelo tiene el niño ? | Pelo negro. |
| ¿ Que dientes tiene la niña ? | Dientes hermosos. |
| ¿ Quien es aquel caballero ? | Es el hermano de mi padre. |
| ¿ Es la señora la madre de Virginia ? | Si, señor, la señora es la madre de Virginia. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El caballero.
 La señora.
 Los caballeros.
 Un padre.
 Una madre.
 Mi hermano.
 Mi hermana.
 El niño joven.
 La niña joven.
 El niño es el hermano de la niña.
 La niña es la hija de la señora.
 ¿ Tiene V. niños ?
 Tengo dos.
 ¿ Tiene V. un hijo ?
 Tengo un niño y una niña.
 ¿ Como se llama el niño ?
 Se llama Pablo.
 ¿ Como se llama la niña ?
 Virginia.
 El caballero es el padre de los niños.
 La señora es la madre.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The gentleman.
 The lady.
 The gentlemen.
 A father.
 A mother.
 My brother.
 My sister.
 The young boy.
 The young girl.
 The boy is the brother of the girl.
 The girl is the lady's daughter.
 Have you any children ?
 I have two.
 Have you a son ?
 I have a son and a daughter.
 What is the name of the boy ?
 His name is Paul.
 What is the name of the girl ?
 Virginia.
 The gentleman is the father of the children.
 The lady is the mother.

We here conclude that part of our lesson which is merely practical. Those persons who are impatient to understand and speak as speedily as possible, will find it sufficient; and we

* No new word being introduced in any of these sentences, they should be translated without referring to the opposite column.

would advise them to postpone the study of the second division of each lesson until they have gone through all the practical exercises contained in this volume. Our second division is especially dedicated to those who are desirous of obtaining an accurate knowledge of the principles of the language.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Leccion primera, first lesson.

1.* The adjective is generally placed after the noun in Spanish.

Este caballero,
this gentleman.

Esta señora,
that lady.

2. THIS or THAT is translated by **este** before a word masculine, and by **esta** before a word feminine.†

3. In Spanish, as in English, names of males are masculine, and names of females are feminine.

But there is no neuter gender in nouns in Spanish, and the names of the inanimate objects are therefore, like those of the animate, either masculine or feminine. To determine which, recourse is generally had to their termination, the principal rule being the following :

4. Nouns ending with **a, d, ion,** and **umbre,** are feminine; those ending otherwise, are masculine.

The exceptions to this rule comprise a number of very necessary words, all of which have been carefully introduced in the course of these lessons, and will be explained as they occur in the text.

* Every observation of importance and every rule bears a number, by means of which we refer to it.

† **Esto, lo,** and **aquello** are used, instead of *este, el,* and *aquel,* before an adjective, when the noun to which that adjective refers is not expressed ; as in *Lo sublime,* the sublime. This is what is commonly called the neuter in Spanish.

Tienen dos niños, have two children.

Niños is the plural form of *niño*, boy. Its feminine is *niña*, girl; but *niños* is used for *children*, when speaking of boys and girls together.

5. In Spanish, as in English, nouns and adjectives generally take an *s* in the plural; but those ending with an *s* in the singular do not change in the plural.

Un hijo,
a son.

Una hija,
a daughter.

6. A or AN is translated by **un** before a word masculine, and by **una**, before a word feminine.

Querria V. saber ?

Would you like to know ?

literally,

Would your honor like to know ?

V., pronounced *usted*, is an abbreviation of the now obsolete expression, *Vuestra merced*, your honor. Its plural is **Vs.**, pronounced *ustedes*, which corresponds to "your honors."

7. In Spanish, the third person, joined to **V.**, is used instead of the second, for the sake of politeness, just as *you* is introduced in English; but care must be had to use the third person singular together with **V.** when addressing a single person, and the third person plural together with **Vs.**, when speaking to more than one.

Ex. *Que tiene V., señor ?*

What have you, sir ?

literally,

Que tienen Vs., señores ?

What have you, gentlemen ?

literally,

What has your honor, sir ? What have your honors, gentlemen ?

8. Some writers prefer *Vm.* to *V.*, and *Vms.* to *Vs.*; both are correct.

Como se llaman,

how they are called —

literally,

how they call themselves.

9. The pronominal form is much more frequently used in Spanish than in English; and verbs which should be passive

according to the sense, often take the pronominal form in Spanish.

El niño,
the boy.

La niña,
the girl.

10. **THE** is translated by **el**, before a word masculine singular; by **la**, before a word feminine singular; by **los**, before a word masculine plural; and by **las**, before a word feminine plural.*

Pablo tiene la cabeza grande,
Paul has a large head —
literally,

Paul has the head large.

11. The definite article **THE** is more used in Spanish than in English; the rules which govern its introduction will be explained later.

Alguna hermana, any sister.

12. **SOME** or **ANY** is translated by **alguno**, for the masculine singular; by **alguna**, for the feminine singular; by **algunos**, for the masculine plural; and by **algunas**, for the feminine plural. **Algun** is used instead of **alguno** before a noun masculine.

Tengo, I have.

13. The verb having a particular ending for each person in Spanish, the subject pronouns, *I, thou, he*, etc., are generally suppressed.

Aquel caballero,
that gentleman.

Aquella señora,
that lady.

14. We have already seen that *este, esta*, mean **THIS** and **THAT**. When it is desirable, however, to indicate more particularly the proximity or remoteness of the persons or things spoken of, **este, esta**, are used for **THIS**, and **aquel, aquella**, for **THAT**. **Aquel** is used before a word masculine, and **aquella** before a word feminine.*

El hermano de mi padre.

15. There are two ways of expressing the possessive in English — *The brother of my father*, and *My father's brother*.

* See note †, on page 4.

In Spanish there is but one — *The brother of my father*; and has always to be replaced by *of*, according to this model.

MI padre,
my father.

MI madre,
my mother.

16. **MY** is translated by **mi** before a word singular, and by **mis** before a word plural.

Exercises.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. This boy, 2.† | 11. The sons, 10. |
| 2. This girl, 2. | 12. The daughter, 10. |
| 3. This hair, 2, 4. | 13. The brother, 10. |
| 4. This head, 2, 4. | 14. The sister, 10. |
| 5. A gentleman, 6. | 15. Any boys, 12. |
| 6. A lady, 6. | 16. Any girls, 12. |
| 7. A hair, 6, 4. | 17. My eyes, 16. |
| 8. A head, 6, 4. | 18. My face, 16. |
| 9. The father, 10. | 19. My teeth, 16. |
| 10. The mother, 10. | 20. My feet, 16. |

21. This lady's daughter, 15.—22. That gentleman has two sons, 14.—23. My mother's sister has small feet, 11, 15.—24. This lady has a daughter.—Who is that lady? 14.—26. She is my mother.—27. And this young boy, who is he?—28. He is my brother.—29. What is the name of that gentleman? 9.‡—30. His name is Paul.—31. Have you a brother?—32. I have two.—33. Who is that girl?—34. She is my sister.

* These exercises ought to be prepared at home, and written down carefully in a book. No dictionary will be required for them, as all the words introduced have been explained in the lesson.

† The figures after each sentence refer to the rules in the *Second Division*. See note *, on page 4.

‡ In order to guard as much as possible against the habit of literal translation, which is generally so serious a drawback to free conversation, the sentences are given in ordinary English, and the student will have to change them into such forms as he has become acquainted with in the text.

SECOND LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion segunda.†

Lesson second.

La Comida.

The Food, or Dinner.

¿Que clase de comida tienen Vs. en su
What kind of food have your honors in their
posada? Bastante buena. Para el al-
boarding-house? Pretty good. For the break-
muerze tenemos café, pan y manteca; para
fast we have coffee, bread, and butter; for
la comida, sopa, carne y legumbres; para
the dinner, soup, meat, and vegetables; for
la cena nos sirven té con frutas y tortas,
the supper us they serve tea with fruits and cakes,
pero yo prefiero generalmente un vaso de
but I prefer generally a glass of
agua con galletitas ó bizcochos. ¿Donde
water with crackers or biscuits. Where
está su cuchillo de V.? Está sobre la
is his knife of your honor? It is on the
mesa. ¿Y su cuchara? Con el cuchillo
table. And his spoon? With the knife
y el tenedor. Muchas gracias.
and the fork. Many thanks.

* At the beginning of each new lesson, the student should rehearse the text and literal translation of all previous ones, so as to be sure of having fully mastered every word that has preceded. The best mode of effecting this would seem to be, for the teacher to read aloud, in small fragments, the English and the Spanish, making the pupil translate them.

† The directions given in note *, on page 1, are so important, that they would be here again earnestly recommended as never to be omitted.

The same in good English.

LA COMIDA.

¿Que clase de comida tienen Vs. en su posada? Bastante buena. Para el almuerzo tenemos café, pan y manteca; para la comida, sopa, carne y legumbres; para la cena nos sirven té con frustas y tortas, pero yo prefiero generalmente un vaso de agua con galletitas ó bizcochos. ¿Donde está su cuchillo de V.? Está sobre la mesa. ¿Y su cuchara? Con el cuchillo y el tenedor. Muchas gracias.

THE FOOD, OR DINNER.

How is the fare at your boarding-house? Pretty good. For breakfast we have coffee and bread and butter; for dinner, soup, meat, and vegetables; and for supper, tea, fruit, and cakes; but I prefer generally a glass of water with crackers or biscuits. Where is your knife? It is on the table. And your spoon? With the knife and fork. Thank you.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿Que leccion es esta? | Es la segunda. |
| ¿Que clase de comida tienen Vs. en su posada? | Una comida bastante buena. |
| ¿Que tienen Vs. para el almuerzo? | Café, pan y manteca. |
| ¿Que tienen Vs. para la comida? | Sopa, carne y legumbres. |
| ¿Que nos sirven para la cena?† | Té, con frutas y tortas. |
| ¿Que prefiero yo generalmente?‡ | Un vaso de agua con galletitas ó bizcochos. |
| ¿Donde está su cuchara de V.? | Sobre la mesa. |
| ¿Y su cuchillo? | Con el tenedor y la cuchara. |
| ¿Que está sobre la mesa? | El cuchillo, el tenedor y la cuchara. |

Sentences for Oral Translation. †

| TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH. | TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH. |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Mi comida. | My dinner. |
| Mi posada. | My boarding-house. |
| Su sopa de V. | Your soup. |

* See note *, on page 2.

† For the sake of making the questions in Spanish without using any other words than those already explained, the preceptor is identified with the author, and the sentiments of the latter are regarded as received axioms.

‡ See note at the bottom of page 3.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Su pan de V. | Your bread. |
| Su almuerzo de V. | Your breakfast. |
| La manteca de Pablo. | Paul's butter. |
| El vaso de Virginia. | Virginia's glass. |
| La carne de su hermano de V. | Your brother's meat. |
| El cuchillo de mi padre. | My father's knife. |
| La cuchara de su madre de V. | Your mother's spoon. |
| ¿Es grande su posada de V.? | Is your boarding-house a large one? |
| Si, señor, es bastante grande. | Yes, sir, it is tolerably large. |
| Tengo frutas y tortas. | I have fruit and cakes. |
| ¿Que tienen Vs.? | What have you? |
| Pan y manteca. | Some bread and butter. |
| ¿Querría V. té ó café? | Would you like to have some tea or some coffee? |
| Prefiero un vaso de agua. | I prefer a glass of water. |
| ¿Donde está su padre de V.? | Where is your father? |
| Está con mi madre. | He is with my mother. |
| ¿Quien es su hermano de V.? | Who is your brother? |
| Este caballero. | That gentleman. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART

La comida, the food, or the dinner.

La comida corresponds to the English words *food*, *fare*, or *eating*, in general, and to *dinner*, in particular.

¿Que clase? what kind?

Clase, kind, and *carne*, meat, are feminine by exception (4).*

Nos sirven,

they serve us —

literally,

us they serve.

17. The objective pronouns, *me*, *him*, *her*, *us*, *you*, *them*, etc., are generally placed before the verb in Spanish, except in imperative affirmative sentences, or if the verb is in the infinitive or in the participle present.—Ex. *Sirvanos V.*, serve us.

* See note*, on page 4.

Do not serve us, is translated regularly by *no nos sirva V.*; serving us, by *serviendonos*; and to serve us, by *servirnos*. It will be observed that the pronoun, when placed after the verb, is generally merged into one word with it.

Yo prefiero, I prefer.

18. Contrary to Rule 13, the subject pronouns, *I, thou, he*, etc., are expressed in Spanish for the sake of emphasis, when in English they would be underlined or printed in *italic*.

Generalmente, generally.

19. This word comes from *general*, general. Many words ending with **al** are alike, or nearly so, in both languages; as, *Brutal*, brutal; *fatal*, fatal; *verbal*, verbal; *metal*, metal; *mineral*, mineral; *jornal*, journal, etc.

20. Adverbs of quality are generally formed from adjectives by the addition of **mente**, which corresponds to the English ending, *ly*. The termination **mente** is always added to the feminine form of the adjective.

21. The adjective does not change in English, but in Spanish it takes the gender and number of the noun to which it relates.

22. Most adjectives are alike in the masculine and feminine in Spanish, but those ending with **o** change **o** into **a**.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ex. <i>El niño grande,</i> | <i>La niña grande,</i> |
| the big boy. ♀ | the big girl. |
| <i>El niño pequeño,</i> | <i>La niña pequeña,</i> |
| the small boy. | the small girl. |

23. Nouns and adjectives ending with a consonant take **es** instead of **s**, in the plural.—Ex. *Los metales*, the metals.

Donde está su cuchillo? where is your knife?

24. Both **está** and **es**, already seen in *¿Quién es aquella señora?* who is that lady? mean *is* in English.

25. There are two words in Spanish corresponding to the verb TO BE,—**ser** and **estar**; but they cannot be employed indiscriminately, and it is often very puzzling to tell which to choose. The following rule will serve to remove this difficulty, which is generally a source of much trouble.

26. Ser is used when the person or thing spoken of is likely to remain *what, where, or as* it is said to be ; whereas **estar** has invariably to be introduced when a change may reasonably be expected, or that the verb **TO BE** can be replaced by *to stand or to lay* in English, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence. *Where is your knife ?* is therefore translated by *¿ Donde está su cuchillo ?* because the place of the knife may reasonably be expected to change ; and *Who is that lady ?* by *¿ Quien es aquella señora ?* because, whoever that lady may be, she will always be the same one. **Ser** is, moreover, generally added to the participle past, and **estar** to the participle present. We will recur to this distinction whenever the text offers an opportunity, in order to illustrate it further by numerous other examples.

Está, *is*, has an accent over the **á**, to distinguish it from **esta**, *this*, already seen (2).

Su *cuchillo* **de V.**,

your knife —

literally,

his or her knife of your honor.

27. Su is used here instead of *your*, in accordance with Rule 7. Corresponding literally to *his, her, its, and their*, it becomes often necessary to add after it one of the following pronouns : *de él*, of him ; *de ella*, of her ; *de V.*, of your honor, etc., to show more clearly who the possessor is.

28. In Spanish, the possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor.

Ex. *Su padre*, his, her, or their father.

29. Mi and **su** do not change in the feminine. See Rule 22. Their plural is **mis** and **sus**. See Rule 5.

Muchas gracias,

thank you —

literally,

many thanks.

30. There is no literal equivalent to *I thank you*, nor to *If you please*, in Spanish, and both have to be expressed by a circumlocution—**THANK YOU**, by *muchas gracias*, as above, and

IF YOU PLEASE, by one of the following expressions of politeness:

Hagame V. el favor, Do me the favor.
Tenga V. la bondad, Have the goodness.

31. MANY is translated by **muchos** before a word masculine, and by **muchas** before a word feminine.

Ex. *Muchos niños*, many boys; *muchas niñas*, many girls.

32. But no difference is made in Spanish between quantity and number, and MUCH is translated by the same word as MANY—by **mucho** before a word masculine and by **mucha** before a word feminine.

Ex. *Mucho pan*, much bread; *mucha agua*, much water.

Exercises.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. My coffee, 29. | 11. Your supper, 27. |
| 2. My boarding-house, 29. | 12. Your knife, 27. |
| 3. My vegetables, 28, 29. | 13. Your forks, 27, 29. |
| 4. My glasses, 28, 29. | 14. Your tables, 27, 29. |
| 5. The agreeable man, 22. | 15. The small biscuit, 21. |
| 6. The agreeable lady, 22. | 16. The small spoon, 22. |
| 7. The agreeable men, 5, 21. | 17. The small crackers, 5, 21. |
| 8. The agreeable ladies, 5, 21. | 18. The small eyes, 5, 21. |
| 9. My handsome glasses, 5, 21. | 19. My good brothers, 5, 21. |
| 10. Your handsome daughters. | 20. My good sisters, 5, 21, 22. |
21. The minerals. 19.—22. The brutal men, 19.—23. The brutal generals, 19.—24. Fatally, 20.—25. Verbally, 20.—26. My spoon is good, 26.—27. My dinner is pretty good, 26.—28. Where is the father of this boy? 26.—29. He is at your boarding-house, 26.—30. Is the son of this lady with your brother? 26.—31. He is with my sister.—32. Your breakfast is on the table.—33. We have good soup for dinner.—34. What has this lady?—35. She has good butter.—36. Much soup, 32.—37. Many spoons, 31.—38. Many forks, 31.—39. Much coffee, 32.—40. Much tea, 32.—41. Many knives, 31.—42. Much meat, 32.

* See notes on page 7.

THIRD LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion tercera.

Lesson third.

La Casa,

The House.

¿Donde vive V.? Vivo en la calle
¿Where lives your honor? I live in the street
octava, cerca del parque. V. debe venir
eighth, near of the park. Your honor must come
á verme. Tengo una sala y un cuarto
to see me. I have a parlor and a room
para dormir. La sala está amueblada
to sleep. The parlor is furnished
elegantemente con una alfombra de
elegantly with a carpet of
terciopelo, seis sillas, un canapé, una mesa
velvet, six chairs, a sofa, a table,
y un espejo hermoso. En el cuarto para
and a looking-glass beautiful. In the room to
dormir hay una cama esplendida, una
sleep there is a bed splendid, a
cómoda y un lavamanos. Cuando hace
bureau, and a washstand. When it makes
calor, abro las puertas y las ventanas,
warm, I open the doors and the windows,
para dar libre paso á la brisa. En el
to give free passage to the breeze. In the
invierno las espesas cortinas y un buen
winter, the thick curtains and a good

* See notes on page 8.

fuego conservan el cuarto agradable.

fire keep the room agreeable.

¿Usa V. velas ó una lámpara? Uso gas.

Uses your honor candles or a lamp? I use gas.

¿Que tiene V. allí? La llave de mi cofre.

What has your honor there? The key of my trunk.

The same in good English.

LA CASA.

¿Donde vive V.? Vivo en la calle octava, cerca del parque. V. debe venir á verme. Tengo una sala y un cuarto para dormir. La sala está amueblada elegantemente con una alfombra de terciopelo, seis sillas, un canapé, una mesa y un hermoso espejo. En el cuarto para dormir hay una cama espléndida, una cómoda y un lavamanos. Cuando hace calor, abro las puertas y las ventanas, para dar libre paso á la brisa. En el invierno las espesas cortinas y un buen fuego conservan el cuarto agradable. ¿Usa V. velas ó una lámpara? Uso gas. ¿Que tiene V. allí? La llave de mi cofre.

THE HOUSE.

Where do you live? In Eighth street, near the park. You must call and see me. I have a parlor and a bedroom. The parlor is elegantly furnished with a handsome velvet carpet, six chairs, a sofa, a table, and a beautiful looking-glass. In my bedroom there is a splendid bed, a bureau, and a washstand. When the weather is warm, I throw open the doors and windows to let in the breeze, and in winter the thick curtains and a good fire keep the room quite comfortable. Do you use candles or a lamp? I use the gas. What have you there? The key of my trunk.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

¿Que leccion es esta?

Es la tercera.

¿En que calle vive V.?

En la calle octava, cerca del parque.

¿Tiene V. una sala?

Tengo una sala y un cuarto para dormir.

¿Como está amueblada la sala?

Muy elegantemente.

¿Que alfombra tiene V.?

Una alfombra de terciopelo.

* See note *, on page 2.

| | |
|--|---|
| ¿ Tiene V. un canapé ? | Si, señor, un canapé, seis sillas, una mesa y un espejo hermoso. |
| ¿ Como está amueblada el cuarto para dormir ? | Tiene una cama esplendida, una cómoda y un lavamanos. |
| ¿ Que hace V. cuando hace calor ? | Abro las puertas y las ventanas. |
| ¿ Para que ? | Para dar libre paso á la brisa. |
| ¿ Que conserva agradable el cuar- to en el invierno ? | Las espesas cortinas y un buen fuego. |
| ¿ Usa V. gas ? | Si, señor. |
| ¿ Que llave tiene V. allí ? | La llave de mi cofre. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La calle y el parque.
Mi sala y mi cuarto para dormir.
Su alfombra de terciopelo.
Las sillas y el canapé.
Una mesa y un espejo.
Mi cama y mi lavamanos.
La lámpara sobre la cómoda.
El calor y el fuego.
La puerta y la ventana.
El invierno y el fuego.
¿ Es hermosa su alfombra de ter-
ciopelo ?
Mi alfombra de terciopelo es muy
hermosa.
¿ Es grande su cuarto para
dormir ?
Mi cuarto para dormir es bas-
tante grande.
Abro las puertas y las ventanas
cuando hace calor.
¿ Donde está la llave de su cofre ?
La llave de mi cofre está en mi
cuarto para dormir.
¿ Donde está la lámpara ?
La lámpara está en mi sala.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The street and the park.
My parlor and bedroom.
Your velvet carpet.
The chairs and the sofa.
A table and a looking-glass.
My bed and my washstand.
The lamp upon the bureau.
The heat and fire.
The door and the window.
The winter and the fire.
Is your velvet carpet hand-
some ?
My velvet carpet is very hand-
some.
Is your bedroom a large one ?
My bedroom is pretty large.
I open the doors and windows
when it is warm.
Where is the key of your trunk ?
The key of my trunk is in my
bedroom.
Where is the lamp ?
The lamp is in my parlor.

* See note at the bottom of page 3.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

La calle, the street.

Calle, street, and *llave*, key, are feminine by exception (4).

Cerca del parque,

near the park—

literally,

near of the park.

33 The preposition *cerca*, near, is always followed by *de* in Spanish.

34. When the article *el*, *the*, is joined to the preposition *de* *of* or *from*, both small words are invariably merged into *del* but *de la*, *de los*, *de las*, are never so contracted.

Elegantemente, elegantly

Elegantemente, elegantly, comes from *elegante*, elegant (20).

35. Many adjectives ending with *ante* in Spanish end with *ant* in English; and from these, corresponding nouns may generally be formed by changing *ante* into *ancia*, a termination equivalent to *ance* or *ancy* in English. This observation applies also to words ending with *ent* and *ence*, most of which end with *ente* and *ancia* in Spanish, with little or no other difference

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Ex. Importante</i> , important. | <i>Importancia</i> , importance. |
| <i>Ignorante</i> , ignorant. | <i>Ignorancia</i> , ignorance. |
| <i>Constante</i> , constant. | <i>Constancia</i> , constancy |
| <i>Negligente</i> , negligent. | <i>Negligencia</i> , negligence. |
| <i>Prudente</i> , prudent. | <i>Prudencia</i> , prudence. |
| <i>Eminente</i> , eminent. | <i>Eminencia</i> , eminence. |
| <i>Inteligente</i> , intelligent. | <i>Inteligencia</i> , intelligence. |
| <i>Impaciente</i> , impatient. | <i>Impaciencia</i> , impatience. |
| <i>Diferente</i> , different. | <i>Diferencia</i> , difference. |

Una alfombra de terciopeto.

36. There are two ways of saying this in English,—*a carpet of velvet*, and *a velvet carpet*; in Spanish there is but one,—*a carpet of velvet*; and all sentences of this kind have to be translated according to this model, placing the name of the thing of which another is made last.

Cuando hace calor,
when it is warm—
literally,
when it makes heat.

37. *Hace* is a form of the verb *hacer*, to make, which is generally used instead of *to be*, in speaking of the weather in Spanish.

Ex. *¿Que tiempo hace?* how is the weather?
Hace hermoso tiempo, it is fine weather.

¿Que tiempo tenemos? what weather have we? and *Tenemos hermoso tiempo*, we have fine weather would, however, be quite as correct.

Para dar, to give, or in order to give.

38. The prepositions *to* and *for*, when used in the sense of *in order to* are translated into Spanish by *para*.

Un buen fuego, a good fire.

39. *Buen* is a form of *bueno*, *buena*, good. *Bueno*, good, and *malo*, bad, drop their final letter; and *grande* becomes *gran*, when placed before a noun beginning with a consonant.

Ex. *Un mal hombre*, a bad man.
Un gran señor, a great gentleman.

40. Although adjectives are generally placed after the noun to which they relate, according to Rule 1, they may be placed before when they have fewer syllables than the noun.

Grande is an exception, corresponding more particularly to *great*, when placed before the noun, and to *large*, when put after it. It has to be replaced by *alto*, high, whenever a doubt might arise as to which of these two meanings is intended.

Ex. *Un hombre alto*, a tall man.

¿Usa V. velas?
Do you use candles?—
literally,

Uses your honor candles?

41. There is no such word as *do* or *did*, to give greater strength to an affirmation, in Spanish; so that these two ex-

pressions, *I use*, and *I do use*, have but one translation,—*Uso*. But the use of the verb *to be*, joined to the present participle, to indicate that the action is going on, is quite frequent.

Ex. *Está llamando,* he is calling.
Está sabiendo, he is knowing.
Está durmiendo, he is sleeping

Uso gas, I use gas.

42. The plural of *gas* is *gases*. Contrary to Rule 5, words of one syllable ending with *s* in the singular, take *es* in the plural.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Of the park, 34. | 11. Of the heat, 34. |
| 2. From the room, 34. | 12. From the door, 34. |
| 3. Of the houses, 34. | 13. Of the gas, 34. |
| 4. From the parlors, 34. | 14. From the window, 34. |
| 5. Of the first lesson, 34. | 15. Of the black trunks, 34. |
| 6. Of the thick looking-glass. | 16. Of the pleasant breeze, 34 |
| 7. Of the splendid chairs. | 17. Of the good sofas, 34, 40. |
| 8. From the lively fire. | 18. From the young boys, 34. |
| 9. From the bedroom. | 19. From the small keys, 34. |
| 10. From the large bureau. | 20. From the handsome lamps. |

21. Where is your room?—22. In that house.—23. Would you like to have a beautiful sofa and a large looking-glass?—24. I prefer a good bureau, 39, 40.—25. Thick curtains make a room comfortable.—26. I open my trunk with this key.—27. Patient, patience, 35.—28. Patiently, 35.—29. Imprudent, imprudence, imprudently.—30. Inconstant, inconstancy, inconstantly.—31. Near the trunk, 33.—32. Near the bureau, 33.—33. Near the table, 33.—34. The velvet carpet, 36.—35. He does call the boy, 41.—36. I do open, 41.—37. I do prefer, 41.—38. I do have, 41.—39. We do have, 41.

* See notes on page 7

FOURTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.†

Leccion cuarta.

Lesson fourth.

Los Vestidos.

The Clothes.

Venden un poco de todo en todas las
They sell a little of every thing in all the
tiendas de esta ciudad. Hé comprado al
stores of this city. I have bought at the
mismo mercader, al cual compré mis
same merchant, at the which I bought my
pantalones el año pasado, una casaca
pantaloons the year past, a coat
nueva, un chaleco, un sombrero y un par
new, a vest, a hat, and a pair
de botas ; tambien un paraguas, guantes,
of boots ; also an umbrella, gloves,
zapatos y algunos pañuelos. ; Sabe V.
shoes, and some handkerchiefs. Knows your honor
cuanto hé pagado por esta corbata ?
how much I have paid for this cravat ?
No ha costado mas de tres pesos, y pienso,
Not it has cost more than three dollars, and, I think,
que es muy barata. ; Que hermoso vestido
that it is very cheap. What beautiful dress
de seda es este ! Es mas elegante que
of silk is this ! It is more elegant than

* See notes on page 3.

el mío y el de mi hermana. La seda
mine and the one of my sister. The silk
es cara. ¿Prefiere V. la seda a la
is dear. Prefers your honor the silk to the
lana? Sí, señora; la seda me gusta más
wool! Yes, madam; the silk me pleases more.

The same in good English.

Los Vendedores.

Venden un poco de todo en todas las tiendas de esta ciudad. Me acompañó al mismo mercader, al cual compré mis pantalones el año pasado, una casaca nueva, un chaleco, un sombrero y un par de botas; también un paraguas, guantes, zapatos, y algunas pañuelos. ¿Sabe V. cuánto he pagado por esta corbata? No ha costado más de tres pesos, y pienso, que es muy barata. ¿Que hermosa vestimenta de seda es esta? Es mas elegante que el mío y el de mi hermana. La seda es cara. ¿Prefiere V. la seda á la lana? Sí, señora; la seda me gusta mas.

THE CUSTOMER.

They sell a little of every thing in every store of this city. I have bought at the same merchant's where I got my pants last year, a new coat, a vest, a hat, and a pair of boots, also an umbrella, gloves, shoes, and some handkerchiefs. Do you know how much I paid for this cravat? It cost only three dollars, and I think it is very cheap. What a beautiful silk dress! It is much handsomer than mine and my sister's. Silk is dear. Do you prefer silk to wool? Yes, madam; silk pleases me more.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

¿Que lección es esta?
Que venden en todas las tiendas de esta ciudad?
¿Que ha comprado V.?
¿No ha comprado V. mas?

Es la cuarta.
Venden un poco de todo.
Una casaca nueva, un chaleco, un sombrero y un par de botas.
Sí, señor.

* See note †, on page 2.

| | |
|--|---|
| ¿Que ha comprado V. mas? | Un paraguas, guantes, zapatos y algunos pañuelos. |
| ¿Es todo? | No, señor; hé comprado una corbata. |
| ¿Es cara ó barata la corbata que V. ha comprado? | Es muy barata? |
| ¿Cuanto ha pagado V.? | No mas de tres pesos. |
| ¿A que mercader ha comprado V. su casaca nueva? | Al mismo, al cual compré mi pantalones. |
| ¿Donde vive este mercader? | En la ciudad. |
| ¿Que vestido es mas elegante que el mio? | Este hermoso vestido de seda. |
| ¿Gusta mas á V. la lana ó la seda? | La seda me gusta mas. |
| ¿Es cara la seda? | La seda es mas cara que la lana |

Sentences for Oral Translation.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La tienda y el mercader.
 La ciudad y la calle.
 La casaca y el chaleco.
 Las botas y los zapatos.
 Mi sombrero y mi paraguas.
 Sus guantes de lana.
 Un vestido de seda.
 El pañuelo del niño.
 ¿Que casaca barata!
 El sombrero de mi hija.
 Un paraguas y una corbata.
 Mis guantes y mi pañuelo.
 ¿Hay hermosas tiendas en esta ciudad?
 Si, señor, hay tiendas muy hermosas.
 ¿Que venden en aquellas tiendas?
 Venden un poco de todo.
 V. tiene una corbata hermosa.
 Hé pagado tres pesos.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The store and the merchant
 The city and the street.
 The coat and the vest.
 The boots and the shoes.
 My hat and my umbrella.
 His woollen gloves.
 A silk dress.
 The boy's handkerchief.
 What a cheap coat!
 The hat or bonnet of my daughter
 An umbrella and a cravat.
 My gloves and my handkerchief
 Are there any fine stores in this city?
 Yes, sir, there are some very fine stores.
 What do they sell in those stores
 They sell a little of every thing.
 You have a fine cravat.
 I have paid three dollars.

* See note on page 2.

| | |
|--|---|
| Es bastante barato. | It is tolerably cheap. |
| ¿No prefiere V. los vestidos de terciopelo á los de seda? | Do you not prefer velvet clothes to silk ones? |
| Quando hace calor prefiero los de seda. | When the weather is warm,* I prefer those of silk. |
| ¿Que chaleco es el mas elegante el mio ó el de mi hermano? | Which vest is the more elegant one, mine or that of my brother? |
| El de su hermano es mas caro. | That of your brother is dearer. |
| ¿Es el vestido de su hermana de lana ó de seda? | Is your sister's dress a silk or a woollen one? |
| Es de seda.* | It is a silk one. |
| Pero el mio es de lana. | But mine is a woollen one. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Los vestidos, the clothes.

Vestidos is used indifferently for *dresses* and *clothes* in general; but its singular, *vestido*, means more particularly a lady's *dress*.

En todas las tiendas, in all the stores.

43. ALL is translated by **todo**, before a word masculine singular; by **toda**, before a word feminine singular; by **todos**, before a word masculine plural; and by **todas**, before a word feminine plural. It is almost always followed by the article *the*.

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Ex. <i>Todo el café,</i> | all the coffee. |
| <i>Toda la sopa,</i> | all the soup. |
| <i>Todos los hombres,</i> | all men. |
| <i>Todas las mujeres,</i> | all women. |

Hé comprado, I have bought.

44. *Tengo* would not be correct here. There are two words in Spanish corresponding to the English verb TO HAVE,—**haber** and **tener**; but **haber** is used exclusively as an auxiliary, while **tener** is an active verb, and can be introduced only when TO HAVE is not followed by a participle, in which case it may generally be replaced by *to hold* or *to possess*, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence.

* See note †, on page 7.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *Haber*, TO HAVE

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Haber, to have.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Habiendo, having.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Habido had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo</i> <i>h</i> <i>é</i> , | I have, | or do have. |
| <i>Tú</i> <i>has</i> ,* | thou hast, | or dost have. |
| <i>El</i> <i>ha</i> ,† | he has, | or does have. |
| <i>Nosotros</i> <i>hemos</i> , | we have, | or do have. |
| <i>Vosotros</i> <i>habeis</i> ,* | you have, | or do have. |
| <i>Ellos</i> <i>han</i> , | they have, | or do have. |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Yo</i> <i>habia</i> , | I had. |
| <i>Tú</i> <i>habias</i> , | thou hadst. |
| <i>El</i> <i>habia</i> , | he had. |
| <i>Nosotros</i> <i>habíamos</i> , | we had. |
| <i>Vosotros</i> <i>habíais</i> , | you had. |
| <i>Ellos</i> <i>habían</i> , | they had. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo</i> <i>hube</i> , | I had, | or did have. |
| <i>Tú</i> <i>hubiste</i> , | thou hadst, | or didst have. |
| <i>El</i> <i>hubo</i> , | he had, | or did have. |
| <i>Nosotros</i> <i>hubimos</i> , | we had, | or did have. |
| <i>Vosotros</i> <i>hubisteis</i> , | you had, | or did have. |
| <i>Ellos</i> <i>hubieron</i> , | they had, | or did have. |

* The third person being generally used instead of the second in Spanish, the forms of the verb which accompany *tú* and *vosotros* are not so essential as the rest: and it might, perhaps, even be best to leave them out entirely at the beginning.

† The pronoun *él, le*, has ordinarily an accent over the *e*, to distinguish it from the article *el, the*; but all accents are omitted over capitals.

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo habré,</i> | I shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Tú habrás,</i> | thou shalt have, | or wilt have. |
| <i>El habrá,</i> | he shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Nosotros habrémos,</i> | we shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Vosotros habréis,</i> | you shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Ellos habrán,</i> | they shall have, | or will have. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo habria,</i> | I should have, | or would have. |
| <i>Tú habrias,</i> | thou shouldst have, | or wouldst have. |
| <i>El habria,</i> | he should have, | or would have. |
| <i>Nosotros habríamos,</i> | we should have, | or would have. |
| <i>Vosotros habríais,</i> | you should have, | or would have. |
| <i>Ellos habrian,</i> | they should have, | or would have. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

This verb has no imperative mood, being used only as an auxiliary.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo haya,</i> | that I may have. |
| <i>Que tú hayas,</i> | that thou mayst have. |
| <i>Que él haya,</i> | that he may have. |
| <i>Que nosotros háyamos,</i> | that we may have. |
| <i>Que vosotros háyais,</i> | that you may have. |
| <i>Que ellos hayan,</i> | that they may have. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo hubiera,</i> | or <i>hubiese,</i> | that I might have. |
| <i>Que tú hubieras,</i> | or <i>hubieses,</i> | that thou mightst have. |
| <i>Que él hubiera,</i> | or <i>hubiese,</i> | that he might have. |
| <i>Que nosotros hubiéramos,</i> | or <i>hubiésemos,</i> | that we might have. |
| <i>Que vosotros hubiérais,</i> | or <i>hubiéseis,</i> | that you might have. |
| <i>Que ellos hubieran,</i> | or <i>hubiesen,</i> | that they might have. |

* There is a second future: it occurs, however, so seldom in ordinary conversation, that it has been added here chiefly for reference when trans-

45. **Haber** enters into the composition of the compound tenses of all verbs, regular and irregular.

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Hé comprado,</i> | I have bought. |
| <i>Había comprado,</i> | I had bought. |
| <i>Habré comprado, etc.,</i> | I shall have bought, etc. |

46. It is also joined to verbs in the infinitive, and forms with them a particular idiomatic locution, expressive of *duty* or *necessity*. It is then invariably followed by the preposition **de**.

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Ex. I have to call, | <i>háy de llamar.</i> |
| I have to know, | <i>háy de saber.</i> |
| I have to sleep, | <i>háy de dormir.</i> |

Al mismo mercader,
at the same merchant.

47. When the article **el**, *the*, is joined to the preposition **a**, *to* or *at*, both small words are invariably merged into **al**; but **a la**, **á los**, **á las**, are never so contracted.

48. This completes the study of the article :

| | Before a word Masc. sing. | Before a word Fem. sing. | Before a word Masc. plur. | Before a word Fem. plur. |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| THE is translated by | el | la | los | las |
| OF THE OR FROM THE, “ | del | de la | de los | de las |
| TO THE, “ | al | á la | á los | á las |

Mismo, same.

49. **SAME** is translated by **mismo**, before a word masculine singular; by **misma**, before a word feminine singular; by **mismos**, before a word masculine plural; and by **mismas**, before a word feminine plural.

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------|
| Ex. <i>El mismo niño,</i> | the same boy. |
| <i>La misma niña,</i> | the same girl. |
| <i>Los mismos niños,</i> | the same boys. |
| <i>Las mismas niñas,</i> | the same girls |

ating the more difficult Spanish authors. Its correct use could, moreover, be acquired only from observation and careful reading of well-written works.

Yo hubiere, *tú hubieres,* *él hubiere,*
Nosotros hubiéremos, *vosotros hubiéreis,* *ellos hubieren.*

No *ha costado*, it has not cost.

50. The negative **no**, *not*, is always placed before the verb to which it refers.

Mas *de tres pesos*, more than three dollars.

51. **THAN** is translated sometimes by **que** and sometimes by **de**, and it is often troublesome to make a proper selection. The following rule will, however, remove this difficulty. There is always a verb expressed or understood in all sentences in which this word is found. **Que** must be used whenever this verb can be repeated after **THAN** without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence; and **de**, when the verb cannot be so repeated.

Ex. It cost not more than three dollars,

No ha costado mas de tres pesos ;

because we cannot say, It cost not more than three dollars cost.

My dress is more elegant than yours,

Mi vestido es mas elegante que el de V. ;

because we can say, My dress is more elegant than yours is.

Mas *elegante*, more elegant.

52. The degrees of comparison are generally formed by placing before the adjective one of the following words :—**Tan**, *as* ; **mas**, *more, most* ; **ménos**, *less, least* ; **muy**, *very* ; **bastante**, *enough, tolerably*, etc.

Ex. *El mas jóven de los dos*, the younger of the two.

El mas jóven de los tres, the youngest of the three.

Muy jóven, very young.

Bastante jóven, young enough.

The exceptions to this rule, together with another form of the superlative, by adding **ísimo**, *ísima*, to the adjective, which is less frequently used than that indicated in Rule 52, will be explained later. Those already seen are the following :

Buen, good. *Mejor*, better. *El mejor*, or *el óptimo*, the best.

Malo, bad. *Peor* worse. *El peor*, or *el péjimo*, the worst.

53. When the adjective is one which requires to be placed

after the noun, according to Rules 1, 40, the adverbs **tan**, **mas**, **ménos**, or **muuy**, etc., goes over with it.

Ex. The most intelligent man, *El hombre mas inteligente.*

54. If the conjunction **THAN** follows, it has to be translated by **que**. See Rule 51.

Ex. Less young than he, *menos jóven que él.*

55. In the comparative of equality, **AS** is translated by **tan** before the adjective, and by **como** after it.

Ex. As young as he, *tan jóven como él.*

Que el mio, than mine.

56. **El mio**, *mine*, is the possessive pronoun corresponding to the possessive adjective **mi**, *my*, already seen (16, 20). Its feminine singular is **la mia**; its masculine plural, **los mios**; and its feminine plural, **las mias**.

57. In Spanish, the possessive pronouns agree, like the possessive adjectives, in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor.

Ex. *Este sombrero es el mio*, this hat is mine.
Esta lámpara es la mia, this lamp is mine.
Estos sombreros son los mios, these hats are mine.
Estas lámparas son las mias, these lamps are mine.

58. The article **el**, which enters into the composition of these words, continues subject to contraction when joined to the preposition **de** or **á**, according to Rule 34.

Ex. *Del mio*, of mine. *Al mio*, to mine.

El de mi hermana.

59. There are two ways of expressing this in English,—*that of my sister*, and *my sister's*. In Spanish there is but one,—*that of my sister*; and all sentences of the kind have to be translated according to this model—using **el**, **la**, **los**, **las**, instead of *aquel*, *aquella*, *aquellos*, *aquellas*.

Ex. *Mi sombrero ó el del hombre*, *Mis sillas ó las de V.*,
 my hat, or the man's; my chairs, or yours;
literally, literally.
 my hat, or that of the man. my chairs, or those of your honor

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. The city. | 13. The vest. |
| 2. Of the city 47. | 14. Of the vest, 47. |
| 3. To the city, 47. | 15. To the vest, 47. |
| 4. To the umbrellas, 47. | 16. To the coats, 47. |
| 5. To the shoes, 47. | 17. To the silk, 47. |
| 6. Very impatient, 52. | 18. Very elegant, 52. |
| 7. A very lively boy, 52. | 19. A very thick carpet, 52. |
| 8. The most handsome girl, 52. | 20. The smallest merchant, 52. |
| 9. The least handsome coat. | 21. The least agreeable store. |
| 10. As handsome as mine, 55. | 22. As agreeable as mine, 55. |
| 11. Have you your hat? | 23. Have you your gloves? |
| 12. I have mine, 57. | 24. I have mine, 57. |

25. Paul is more prudent than Virginia, 51, 54.—26. Virginia is less negligent than Paul, 54.—27. All the gentlemen, 43.—28. All the ladies, 43.—29. All the bread, 43.—30. All the cake, 43.—31. In which store have you bought this hat? 45.—32. I bought this hat in Fourth-street.—33. I bought a pair of gloves and an umbrella at the same store, 49.—34. What do they sell there?—35. They sell handkerchiefs.—36. This boy is more imprudent than mine, 54, 56.—37. That girl is less negligent than you, 54.—38. Meat pleases me more than bread, 54.—39. Crackers are as good as biscuits, 55.—40. The same year, 49.—41. The same house, 49.—42. The same hats, 49.—43. The same tables, 49.—44. My table or Paul's, 59.—45. My gloves and my brother's, 59.—46. My curtains or the merchant's 59.—47. My coffee or yours, 59.

* See notes on page 7.

FIFTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.†

Leccion quinta.

Lesson fifth.

La Escuela.

The School.

¿Que tiene V. allí? Tengo algo de
What has your honor there? I have something —

útil, no tengo nada feo. ¿Que tiene V.
useful — I have nothing ugly. What has your honor

de útil? Tengo una regla de madera.
‡ useful? I have a ruler of wood.

¿Adonde va V.? A la escuela en la calle
Whither goes your honor? To the school in the street

del Rey. ¿Tiene V. todas sus cosas?
of the King. Has your honor all his things?

Si, señorita; tengo mis libros y mis
Yes, miss; I have my books and my

cuadernos. ¿Que libros son estos? Son
copy-books. What books are these? They are

mis libros ingleses, mi gramática y mi
my books English, my grammar, and my

diccionario. ¿Que ejercicio es aquel? Mi
dictionary. What exercise is that? My

* Every new lesson should still be preceded, as indicated in note * on page 8, by a full rehearsal of the text, and translation of all previous ones. In consequence of the accumulation of matter, however, and to prevent this exercise from engrossing too much time, the following modification in the mode of reviewing would be here suggested:—Translate the first only from the Spanish into English, the second only from the English into Spanish, and so on. † See note †, on page 8. ‡ See Rule 62.

ejercicio español. ¿Escribe V. con una
 exercise Spanish. Writes your honor with a
pluma y tinta? No, señorita; escribo con
 pen and ink! No, miss; I write with
un lápiz. ¿En papel ó en una pizarra?
 a pencil. On paper, or on a slate?
En papel. ¿Que lee V. ahora? Leo el
 On paper. What reads your honor now? I read the
Don Quijote de Cervantes. ¿V.
 Don Quixote of Cervantes. Your honor
encuentra difícil el Cervantes, no es
 finds difficult the Cervantes, not is it
verdad? No le encuentro ni demasiado
 truth? * It I find neither too
fácil ni demasiado difícil. Tengo miedo
 easy nor too difficult. I have fear
que V. haga muchas faltas.
 that your honor makes many mistakes.

The same in good English.

LA ESCUELA.

¿Que tiene V. allí? Tengo algo de útil, no tengo nada fêo. ¿Que tiene V. de útil? Tengo una regla de madera. ¿Adonde va V.? A la escuela en la calle del Rey. ¿Tiene V. todas sus cosas? Si, señorita; tengo mis libros y mis cuadernos. ¿Que libros son estos? Son mis libros ingleses, mi gramática y mi diccionario. ¿Que ejercicio es aquel? Mi ejercicio español. ¿Escribe V. con una pluma y tinta? No, señorita;

SCHOOL.

What have you there? I have something useful, I have nothing ugly. What have you useful? I have a wooden ruler. Where are you going to? I am going to school in King-street. Have you all you want? Yes, miss; I have my books and copy-books. Which books are these? They are my English books, my grammar and my dictionary. What exercise is that? My Spanish exercise. Do you write

* See Rule 71.

escribo con un lápiz. ¿En papel, ó en una pizarra? En papel. ¿Que lee V. ahora? Leo el Don Quijote de Cervantes. ¿V. encuentra difícil el Cervantes, no es verdad? No le encuentro ni demasiado fácil ni demasiado difícil. Tengo miedo que V. haga muchas faltas.

with pen and ink? No, miss; I write with a pencil. On paper, or on a slate? On paper. What are you reading now? Don Quixote, by Cervantes. You find it difficult, do you not? I find it neither too easy nor too difficult. I am afraid you make many mistakes.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

¿Que lección es esta?
 ¿Tiene V. algo de fêo?
 ¿Tiene V. algo de útil?
 ¿Que tiene V. de útil?
 ¿Y que tiene V. mas?
 ¿Va V. á la escuela?
 ¿En que calle es la escuela de V.?
 ¿Tiene V. libros ingleses?
 ¿Que ejercicio tiene V. allí?
 ¿Con que escribe V.?
 ¿Escribe V. en una pizarra?
 ¿Que libro lee V.?
 ¿Cervantes es difícil, no es verdad?

Es la quinta.
 No tengo nada fêo.
 Tengo algo de útil.
 Tengo una regla de madera.
 Mis libros y mis cuadernos.
 Si, señor.
 En la calle del Rey. [nario.
 Tengo una gramática y un diccio-
 Este es mi ejercicio español.
 Con un lápiz.
 Escribo en papel.
 Leo el Don Quijote de Cervantes.
 No es ni demasiado fácil ni de-
 masiado difícil.

Sentences for Oral Translation.†

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El lápiz.
 Una escuela.
 Un cuaderno.
 El libro útil.
 La regla de madera.
 Todas mis cosas.
 Todos sus libros de V.
 Este ejercicio y aquel.
 La tinta y las plumas.
 ¿Que papel y que pizarra

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The pencil.
 A school.
 A copy-book.
 The useful book.
 The wooden ruler.
 All my things.
 All your books.
 This exercise and that one.
 The ink and the pens.
 What paper and what slate?

* See note *, on page 2.

† See note at the bottom of page 2.

| | |
|--|---|
| Se gramática de V. y mi diccionario inglés. | Your grammar and my English dictionary. |
| ¿Tiene V. un libro español? | Have you a Spanish book? |
| Tengo el Don Quijote. | I have Don Quixote. |
| ¿Es un libro difícil? | Is it a difficult book? |
| No es ni demasiado difícil ni demasiado fácil. | It is neither too difficult nor too easy. |
| Lee V. en la escuela? | Do you read at school? |
| Leo y escribo. | I read and write. |
| ¿Hay muchos niños en la escuela de V.? | Are there many children in your school? |
| Si, señorita, hay muchos niños y niñas. | Yes, miss, there are many boys and girls. |
| ¿Son mas jóvenes que V.? | Are they younger than you? |
| Son ménos jóvenes que yo. | They are older than I.* |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

¿Que tiene V.? what have you?

60. *Que ha V.* would not be correct here. See Rule 44.

CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE VERB **TENER**, TO HAVE,
OR TO HOLD.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Tener, to have.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Teniendo, having.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Tenido, had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo tengo</i> , | I have, | or do have. |
| <i>Tú tienes</i> | thou hast | or dost have. |
| <i>El tiene</i> , | he has, | or does have. |
| <i>Nosotros tenemos</i> , | we have, | or do have. |
| <i>Vosotros tenéis</i> , | you have, | or do have. |
| <i>Ellos tienen</i> , | they have, | or do have. |

* See note †, on page 7.

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Yo tenia,</i> | I had. |
| <i>Tú tenias,</i> | thou hadst. |
| <i>El tenia,</i> | he had. |
| <i>Nosotros tentamos,</i> | we had. |
| <i>Vosotros tentais.</i> | you had. |
| <i>Ellos tenían,</i> | they had. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo tuve,</i> | I had, | or did have. |
| <i>Tú tuviste,</i> | thou hadst, | or didst have. |
| <i>El tuvo,</i> | he had, | or did have. |
| <i>Nosotros tuvimos,</i> | we had, | or did have. |
| <i>Vosotros tuvisteis,</i> | you had, | or did have. |
| <i>Ellos tuvieron,</i> | they had, | or did have. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo tendré,</i> | I shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Tú tendrás,</i> | thou shalt have, | or wilt have. |
| <i>El tendrá,</i> | he shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Nosotros tendremos,</i> | we shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Vosotros tendréis,</i> | you shall have, | or will have. |
| <i>Ellos tendrán,</i> | they shall have, | or will have. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo tendria,</i> | I should have, | or would have. |
| <i>Tú tendrías,</i> | thou shouldst have, | or wouldst have. |
| <i>El tendria,</i> | he should have, | or would have |
| <i>Nosotros tendríamos.</i> | we should have, | or would have. |
| <i>Vosotros tendríais,</i> | you should have, | or would have. |
| <i>Ellos tendrían,</i> | they should have, | or would have. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25) :

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo tuviera,</i> | <i>tú tuvieras,</i> | <i>él tuviera,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros tuviéramos.</i> | <i>vosotros tuvierais,</i> | <i>ellos tuvieran.</i> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

Ten, have (thou).*Tened*, have (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Que yo tenga,</i> | that I may have. |
| <i>Que tú tengas,</i> | that thou mayst have |
| <i>Que él tenga,</i> | that he may have. |
| <i>Que nosotros tengamos,</i> | that we may have. |
| <i>Que vosotros tengais,</i> | that you may have. |
| <i>Que ellos tengan,</i> | that they may have. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo tuviera,</i> | or <i>tuviese,</i> | that I might have. |
| <i>Que tú tuvieras,</i> | or <i>tuvieses,</i> | that thou mightst have |
| <i>Que él tuviera,</i> | or <i>tuviese,</i> | that he might have. |
| <i>Que nosotros tuviéramos,</i> | or <i>tuviésemos,</i> | that we might have. |
| <i>Que vosotros tuviérais,</i> | or <i>tuviéseis,</i> | that you might have. |
| <i>Que ellos tuvieran,</i> | or <i>tuviesen,</i> | that they might have. |

61. The compound tenses of **tener**, as of all other verbs, are formed with **haber**. See Rule 45.

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Hé tenido,</i> | I have had. |
| <i>Había tenido,</i> | I had had. |
| <i>Habré tenido, etc.,</i> | I shall have had, etc. |

Algo de útil, something useful.

62. The preposition **de** may be prefixed to any adjective

* The imperative has properly but one person in the singular and plural; and the expressions, *Let him have*, *Let us have*, *Let them have*, are supplied by the subjunctive present, or the verb *dejar*, to let or leave.

| | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Ex. Let him have, | <i>Dejele tener,</i> | or <i>tenga,</i> | that he may have. |
| Let us have, | <i>Dejennos tener,</i> | or <i>tengamos,</i> | that we may have. |
| Let them have, | <i>Dejenles tener,</i> | or <i>tengan,</i> | that they may have |

It is, moreover, to be observed that the subjunctive form is always used instead of the imperative in all negative sentences:

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Ex. Have (thou) not, | <i>no tengas.</i> |
| Let him not have, | <i>no le deje tener,</i> or <i>no tenga.</i> |
| Let us not have, | <i>no nos dejen tener</i> or <i>no tengamos.</i> |
| Have (you) not, | <i>no tengais.</i> |
| Let them not have, | <i>no les dejen tener,</i> or <i>no tengan</i> |

which follows **algo**, something; **nada**, nothing; or **que**, what but this addition is not absolutely necessary. *Algo útil* would be as correct.

En la calle del Rey, in King-street.

63. The plural of *rey* is *reyes*. Words ending with **y** in the singular, form their plural by the addition of **es**.

Estos, these or those.

64. **Estos** is the plural of **este**, **esta**, *this* or *that*, already seen (2). Its feminine is **estas**. Used in turn as a demonstrative adjective and as a pronoun, it invariably agrees in gender and number with the object pointed out.

Mis libros ingleses, my English books.

65. The singular of *ingleses* is *ingles*. Names of nation ending with **es** take **es** in the plural.

¿Que ejercicio es aquel? what exercise is that?

66. Like **este**, *this*; **aquel**, *that*, already seen in No. 14 is used in turn as an adjective and as a pronoun. Its feminine singular is **aquella**; its masculine plural, **aquellos**, *those*, and its plural feminine, **aquellas**, *those*. See also Rule 64.

Ex. *Este libro ó aquel*, this or that book.

Estos libros ó aquellos, these or those books.

Un lápiz, a pencil.

67. The plural of *lápiz* is *lápices*. Words ending with **z** in the singular, change **z** into **ces** in the plural.

68. This completes the rules for the formation of the plural of nouns and adjectives. Most nouns take an **s** in the plural.

Those ending with an **s** in the singular do not change in the plural, except monosyllables, and the names of nations, which, like those ending with **y**, take **es**. Words ending with **z** change **z** into **ces**.

En papel ó en una pizarra,

on paper, or on a slate.

69. *Sobre papel ó sobre una pizarra* would not be correct. The preposition **en** is often used, instead of **sobre**, for *on* or *upon*, as in the above examples; but this substitution is re

quired only when the sense of the sentence clearly shows the particular meaning intended.

¿No es verdad?

do you not?

literally,

is it not the truth?

70. The interrogative form annexed to a proposition in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In Spanish, this form is invariably *¿No es verdad?* or *¿no es así?* is it not so? thus:

¿V. vendra, no es verdad? you will come, will you not?

¿V. no vendra, no es verdad? you will not come, will you?

¿El hablo bien, no es verdad? he spoke well, did he not?

No le encuentro ni demasiado fácil ni demasiado difícil,

I find it neither too easy nor too difficult.

71. **Ni** corresponds to *neither* or *nor*. When placed after the verb, that verb must be preceded by the negative **no**; but **ni** may be used by itself when put before, or if there is no verb in the phrase. This sentence would therefore be equally well expressed thus:

Ni demasiado fácil ni demasiado difícil le encuentro.

This observation applies also to *nada*, nothing; *ninguno* or *nadie*, nobody; and *nunca*, never.

Ex. *Nada veo,* or *no veo nada,* I see nothing.

Ninguno veo, or *no veo ninguno* I see nobody.

Nunca veo, or *no veo nunca,* I never see.

Tengo miedo,

I am afraid;

literally,

I have fear.

72. The verb to HAVE is used instead of to BE, in the following idiomatic expressions:

Tener calor, to be warm. *Tener sueño,* to be sleepy.

Tener frio, to be cold. *Tener miedo,* to be afraid.

Tener hambre, to be hungry. *Tener vergüenza* to be ashamed.
Tener sed, to be thirsty. *Tener razon*, to be right.

73. There is no exact equivalent to the expression, TO BE WRONG, in Spanish, and the negative form of TO BE RIGHT, has to be used instead, thus:

am wrong, *No tengo razon*, I am not right.
 Am I right or wrong? *Tengo yo razon ó no*, Am I right or not?

Exercises.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. The rulers, 68. | 15. The dollars, 66. |
| 2. The gases, 67. | 16. The English kings, 68. |
| 3. The kings, 63. | 17. The pencils, 67. |
| 4. These books, 64. | 18. These copy-books, 64. |
| 5. Those mistakes, 64. | 19. These things, 64. |
| 6. These or those grammars. | 20. These or those dictionaries. |
| 7. Neither too small nor too large, 71. | 21. Neither too handsome nor too ugly, 71. |
| 8. Something easy, 62. | 22. Nothing difficult, 62. |
| 9. I am afraid, 72. | 23. I am not afraid, 72. |
| 10. He is afraid, 72. | 24. He is not afraid, 72. |
| 11. We are afraid, 72. | 25. We are not afraid, 72. |
| 12. You are afraid, 72. | 26. You are not afraid, 72. |
| 13. They are afraid, 72. | 27. They are not afraid, 72. |
| 14. You are afraid, are you not? | 28. You are not afraid, are you not? |

29. The useful book.—30. The ugly copy-book.—31. A wooden ruler.—32. This school and that one, 66.—33. The king has bought many houses in this city, 61.—34. How much have you paid for this dictionary? 61.—35. I have paid three dollars, 61.—36. How many books have you given to your brother? 61.—37. What books are these? 64.—38. My Don Quixote and my dictionary.—39. Don Quixote pleases me very much.—40. He is afraid, is he not? 70.—41. Are you hungry or thirsty? —42. I am neither hungry nor thirsty, but I am sleepy, 72.

* See notes on page 7.

SIXTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION — PRACTICAL PART

Literal Translation.†

Leccion sexta.

Lesson sixth.

El Comercio.

The Commerce.

El Señor N. empezó de buhonero
The Mr. N. began from pedler
traficando en quinquilleras, á saber:
dealing in small wares, to wit:
hilo, algodón, alfileres, agujas, dedales y
thread, cotton, pins, needles, thimbles, and
tijeras. Poco á poco aumentó su existencia
scissors. Little by little he augmented his stock
con un surtido de perfumerias, artículos
with an assortment of perfumeries, articles
de escribania y otras cosas mas ventajosas;
of writing, and other things more profitable;
y como siempre fué muy cumplido en
and as always he was very prompt in
pagar sus pagarés vencidos, los comercian-
to pay his notes due, the merchants
tes por mayor le daban mercancías á
wholesale him gave goods or
crédito. Ahora él es uno de los ciudadanos
credit. Now he is one of the citizens
mas respetables de nuestra plaza. Tiene
most respectable of our place. He has

* See note on page 80.

† See note †, on page 9

mucho dinero y usa carruage. ¿ Tiene
much money, and uses carriage. Has

V. mi cuenta consigo? ¿ A cuanto
your honor my account with him? To how much

monta? No puedo pagar el todo hoy.
does it amount? Not I can pay the whole to-day

pero daré á V. algo á cuenta.
but I will give to your honor something on account

The same in good English.

EL COMERCIO.

El Señor N. empezó de buhonero traficando en quinquilleras, á saber: hilo, algodón, alfileres, agujas, dedales y tijeras. Poco á poco aumentó su existencia con un surtido de perfumerias, artículos de escribania y otras cosas mas ventajosas; y como siempre fué muy cumplido en pagar sus pagarés vencidos, los comerciantes por mayor le daban mercancías á crédito. Ahora él es uno de los ciudadanos mas respetables de nuestra plaza. Tiene mucho dinero y usa carruage. ¿ Tiene V. mi cuenta consigo? ¿ A cuanto monta? No puedo pagar el todo hoy, pero daré á V. algo á cuenta.

COMMERCE.

Mr. N. began as a pedler, dealing in small wares; such as thread, cotton, pins, needles, thimbles, and scissors. He added by degrees to his stock, an assortment of perfumery, stationery, and other more profitable things; and as he was always very prompt in meeting his payments when due, wholesale dealers readily trusted him with goods on credit. He is now possessed of a large fortune, and keeps his carriage. Have you my bill with you? How much does it amount to? I cannot pay it all to-day, but I will give you something on account.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

¿ Que leccion es esta?
¿ Como empezó el Señor N.?
¿ Traficando en que?

Es la sexta.
Empezó de buhonero.
En quinquilleras.

* See note *, on page 2.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿ Que clases de quinquilleras ? | Hilo, algodón, alfileres, agujas dedales y tijeras. |
| ¿ Con que aumentó su ecsistencia ? | Con un surtido de perfumerias. |
| ¿ Con que mas ? | Con artículos de escribania y otras cosas mas ventajosas. |
| ¿ Fué muy cumplido en pagar sus pagarés ? | Siempre fué muy cumplido en pagar sus pagarés vencidos. |
| ¿ Que le daban los comerciantes por mayor ? | Le daban mercancías á crédito. |
| ¿ Que es él ahora ? | Es uno de los ciudadanos mas respetables de nuestra plaza. |
| ¿ Que tiene él ? | El tiene mucho dinero. |
| ¿ Que usa él ? | Un carruage. |
| ¿ Que tiene V. consigo ? | La cuenta de V. |
| ¿ Puede V. pagarla hoy ? | No puedo pagar el todo hoy. |
| ¿ Puede V. darme algo ? | Daré á V. algo á cuenta. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El buhonero.
 Nuestro hilo.
 Su algodón.
 Un alfiler.
 Una aguja.
 ¿ Que mercancías ?
 La plaza.
 El dinero.
 Mi carruage.
 Su cuenta.
 Los artículos de escribania.
 El pagaré vencido.
 El comerciante por mayor.
 El ciudadano respetable.
 Este dedal y aquellas tijeras.
 Mi ecsistencia y su surtido de V.
 Las otras cosas ventajosas.
 ¿ Que son quinquilleras ?

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The pedler.
 Our thread.
 His cotton.
 A pin.
 A needle.
 Which goods ?
 The place.
 The money.
 My carriage.
 His bill.
 The stationery.
 The note due.
 The wholesale merchant.
 The respectable citizen.
 This thimble and those scissors.
 My stock and your assortment.
 The other profitable things.
 What are small wares ?

* See note at the bottom of page 3.

| | |
|---|---|
| Hilo, algodón, alfileres, agujas y otras cosas de esta clase. | Thread, cotton, pins, needles, and other things of that sort. |
| ¿Son estas cosas ventajosas? | Are these things profitable? |
| Son muy ventajosas. | They are very profitable. |
| Es él cumplido en pagar sus pagarés? | Is he prompt in paying his notes? |
| El es muy cumplido. | He is very prompt. |
| ¿Que daba el comerciante al Señor N.? | What did the merchant give Mr. N.? |
| El le daba mercancías á crédito. | He gave him goods on credit. |
| ¿Usa V. lápices ingleses ó españoles? | Do you use English pencils or Spanish ones? |
| Uso siempre lápices ingleses. | I always use English pencils. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

El Señor N., Mr. N.

74. We have already observed that **THE**, **A** or **AN**, and **SOME**, are sometimes introduced and sometimes left out in Spanish, contrary to English usage. The rules which govern these words in this respect will be explained as they occur in the text.

75. Titles are preceded by the article **THE** in emphatic or ceremonious language.

N. is an abbreviation, which stands for *fulano*, meaning *such a one*.

De buhonero, as a pedler.

76. Before names of nations, and those of trades and professions, the article **A** or **AN** is omitted, unless followed by a relative pronoun, or if the noun is qualified by an adjective.

Ex. He is a pedler, *es buhonero*.

He is a pedler who sells cheap,

Es un buhonero que vende barato.

Fué, he was.

77. *Fué* is the past tense definite of **ser**, to be. The corresponding form of **estar** would not be correct here. **See** Rule 26.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *Ser*, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Ser, to be.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Siendo, being.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Sido, been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Yo soy</i> , | I am. |
| <i>Tú eres</i> , | thou art. |
| <i>El es</i> , | he is. |
| <i>Nosotros somos</i> , | we are. |
| <i>Vosotros sois</i> , | you are. |
| <i>Ellos son</i> , | they are. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------------|------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo era</i> , | I was, | or used to be. |
| <i>Tú eras</i> , | thou wast, | or usedst to be. |
| <i>El era</i> , | he was, | or used to be. |
| <i>Nosotros éramos</i> , | we were, | or used to be. |
| <i>Vosotros érais</i> , | you were, | or used to be. |
| <i>Ellos eran</i> , | they were, | or used to be. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | |
|----------------------------|------------|
| <i>Yo fui</i> , | I was. |
| <i>Tú fuiste</i> , | thou wast. |
| <i>El fué</i> , | he was. |
| <i>Nosotros fuimos</i> , | we were. |
| <i>Vosotros fuisteis</i> , | you were. |
| <i>Ellos fueron</i> , | they were. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| <i>Yo seré</i> , | I shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Tú serás</i> , | thou shalt be, | or wilt be. |
| <i>El será</i> , | he shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Nosotros serémos</i> , | we shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Vosotros seréis</i> , | you shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Ellos serán</i> , | they shall be, | or will be. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

Yo fuere, tú fueres, él fuere, nosotros fuéremos, vosotros fuéreis, ellos fueran.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo seria,</i> | I should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Tú serias,</i> | thou shouldst be, | or wouldst be. |
| <i>El seria,</i> | he should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Nosotros seríamos,</i> | we should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Vosotros seriais</i> | you should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Ellos serian,</i> | they should be, | or would be. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Se, be (thou).

Sed, be (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Que yo sea,</i> | that I may be. |
| <i>Que tú seas,</i> | that thou mayst be. |
| <i>Que él sea,</i> | that he may be. |
| <i>Que nosotros seamos,</i> | that we may be. |
| <i>Que vosotros seais,</i> | that you may be. |
| <i>Que ellos seun,</i> | that they may be. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo fuera,</i> | or <i>fuese,</i> | that I might be. |
| <i>Que tú fueras,</i> | or <i>fueses,</i> | that thou mightst be. |
| <i>Que él fuera,</i> | or <i>fuese,</i> | that he might be. |
| <i>Que nosotros fuéramos,</i> | or <i>fuésemos,</i> | that we might be. |
| <i>Que vosotros fuérais,</i> | or <i>fuéseis,</i> | that you might be. |
| <i>Que ellos fueran,</i> | or <i>fuesen,</i> | that they might be. |

En pagar, in paying.

78. All prepositions must be followed by the infinitive in Spanish.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Ex. Sin examinar,</i> | without examining. |
| <i>Antes de beber,</i> | before drinking. |
| <i>Después de haber comido,</i> | after having eaten. |

Sus pagará, his notes.

Pagará is derived from the future tense of *pagar*, to pay, and means literally, *I shall pay*. It never corresponds to the English word *payment*.

Sus pagarés vencidos, his notes due.

79. The past participle, when used by itself, or with the auxiliary **TO BE**, agrees, like the adjective, in gender and number with the noun to which it relates; but when joined to the verb **TO HAVE**, it is generally invariable.

Ex. *Las mercancías son compradas*, the goods are bought.

Hé comprado las mercancías, I have bought the goods.

Por mayor, wholesale.

The contrary of this idiomatic expression is *por menor*, retail.

A crédito, on credit.

The contrary of *á crédito* is *al contado*, for cash.

Uno, one.

80. **ONE** is translated by **uno** for the masculine, and by **una** for the feminine. The numeral *uno, una*, one, should not be confounded with the indefinite article *un, una*, **A** or **AN**, already seen.

Respetables, respectable.

81. Most words ending with **able** are alike, or nearly so, in both languages; as, *Admirable*, admirable; *capable*, capable; *estimable*, estimable; *pasable*, passable; *razonable*, reasonable, etc.

Nuestra.

82. **Nuestra** is the feminine of **nuestro**, which means *our* an. *nurs*, being used in turn as an adjective and as a pronoun. Its plural masculine is **nuestros**, and its feminine plural **nuestras**. See Rule 57. **Vuestro, vuestra, vuestros, vuestras**, *YOUR, YOURS*, is subject to the same rules as **nuestro**.

Consigo, with him.

83. **Migo, tigo, sigo**, are used instead of **me, te, se**, in the compound expressions, **conmigo**, WITH ME; **contigo**, WITH THEE; and **consigo**, WITH HIM, OR WITH HER. But no contraction takes place with **con nosotros, con vosotros, con V., con Vs., con ellos, and con ellas**.

A cuenta, on account.

Cuenta, like its equivalent in English, corresponds in turn to *bill* and *account*.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Mr. Paul, 75. | 15. Miss Virginia, 75. |
| 2. Our money, 82. | 16. Our needles, 82. |
| 3. Our scissors, 82. | 17. Our cotton, 82. |
| 4. Our pins, 82. | 18. Our goods, 82. |
| 5. Our thimbles, 82. | 19. Our assortment, 82. |
| 6. He is a citizen, 76. | 20. He is a merchant, 76. |
| 7. In knowing, 78. | 21. In selling, 78. |
| 8. In order to pay, 38. | 22. In order to have, 38. |
| 9. This room is furnished, 79. | 23. These things are bought, 79. |
| 10. These bills are paid, 79. | 24. This thread is cut, 79. |
| 11. The money has been paid. | 25. The articles are here. |
| 12. He is estimable, 81. | 26. She was reasonable, 81. |
| 13. She will be free. | 27. He would be the first. |
| 14. It is Miss A—, 75. | 28. She is Mrs. B—, 75. |

29. Much money.—30. The whole amount.—31. Is he a pedler, or a wholesale dealer? 76.—32. He is a pedler, 76.—33. He is neither a pedler nor a wholesale dealer, 76.—34. He is a merchant, 76.—35. What have you bought in the store of Mr. C.? 76, 79.—36. I have bought there needles and thread, 79.—37. Are you hungry or thirsty?—38. I am neither warm nor cold, 72.—39. I am afraid, 72.—40. Are you cold or warm? 72.—41. I am cold; I am not warm.—42. Are you ashamed?—43. I am neither ashamed nor afraid, but I am warm.—44. With me, 83.—45. With you, 83.

* See notes on page 7.

SEVENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.†

Leccion séptima.

Lesson seventh.

El Tiempo y los Números.

The time and the numbers.

¿A que hora se levanta V., y como

At what hour himself does get up your honor, and how

pasa V. el dia? Me levanto temprano

passes your honor the day? Myself I get up early

por la mañana á las siete y media.

in the morning at the seven and half.

Almuerzo á las ocho ó á las ocho y diez

I breakfast at the eight or at the eight and ten

minutos, y me voy á mi escritorio, adonde

minutes, and myself I go to my office, whither

llego generalmente á las nueve, y las horas

I arrive generally at the nine; and the hours

inmediatamente siguientes las ocupo en

immediately following them I occupy in

los negocios. Tomo mi comida á las doce.

the business. I take my dinner at the twelve.

Despues monto á caballo por una hora

Afterwards I mount on horse for one hour

ó dos y paso la noche en cualquier lugar

or two, and I pass the night in some place

de diversion hasta las once ménos cuarto;

of amusement til. the eleven less quarter;

* See note on page 80.

† See note †, on page 8.

entonces me acuesto, pues muy raras
 then myself I lay down, for very rare

veces estoy despierto hasta media noche.
 times I am awake till middle night.

¿Que dia del mes tenemos? El cinco
 What day of the month have we? The five.

¿Que dia fué ayer? Ayer fué el
 What day was yesterday? Yesterday was the

cuatro. Mañana será el seis. ¿Que hora
 four. To-morrow will be the six. What hour

es? No lo sé, mi reloj está roto.
 Is it? Not it I know, my watch is broken.

Trece. Catorce. Quince.
 Thirteen. Fourteen. Fifteen.

The same in good English.

EL TIEMPO Y LOS NÚMEROS.

¿A que hora se levanta V., y como pasa V. el dia? Me levanto temprano por la mañana á las siete y media. Almuerzo á las ocho ó á las ocho y diez minutos y me voy á mi escritorio, adonde llego generalmente á las nueve, y las horas inmediatamente siguientes las ocupo en los negocios. Tomo mi comida á las doce. Despues monto á caballo por una hora ó dos y paso la noche en cualquier lugar de diversion hasta las once ménos cuarto; entonces me acuesto, pues muy raras veces estoy despierto hasta media noche. ¿Que dia del mes tenemos? *El cinco.* ¿Que dia fué

TIME AND NUMBERS.

At what time do you get up, and how do you spend the day? I rise early in the morning, at half-past seven o'clock, breakfast at eight or ten minutes past eight, and walk down to my office, where I arrive generally at nine. My morning hours are devoted to business, and I take my dinner at twelve; after which I ride on horseback for an hour or two, and spend my evenings at some place of amusement until a quarter to eleven o'clock, when I go to bed. I seldom stay up until midnight. What day of the month is it? It is the fifth. What day was it yesterday? Yesterday was

ayer? Ayer fué el cuatro. Mañana será el seis. ¿Que hora es? No lo sé, mi reloj está roto. Trece. Catorce. Quince.

the fourth, and to-morrow will be the sixth. What o'clock is it. I don't know; my watch is broken. Thirteen, fourteen, fifteen.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

Que lección es esta?
Se levanta V. temprano?
¿A que hora?
A que hora sirven á V. el almuerzo?
¿Donde va V. despues?
¿Que hace V. en las horas inmediatamente siguientes?
¿A que hora sirven á V. la comida?
¿Que hace V. despues?
¿Por cuanto tiempo?
¿Donde pasa V. la noche?
¿Hasta que hora?
¿Que hace V. entónces?
¿Tonemos hoy el cuatro?
¿Que dia fué ayer?
¿Que día será mañana?
¿Que hora es?
¿Está roto su reloj de V.?

Es la séptima.
Me levanto temprano por la mañana.
A las siete y media.
A las ocho ó á las ocho y diez minutos.
Me voy á mi escritorio.
Las ocupo en los negocios.
A las doce.
Monto á caballo.
Por una hora ó dos.
En cualquier lugar de diversion.
Hasta las once ménos cuarto.
Entónces me acuesto.
No, señor, tenemos el cinco.
El cuatro.
Será el seis.
No lo sé.
Si, señor.

Sentences for Oral Translation.†

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La hora.
¿Es la una?
Es la una y cinco minutos.
Es la una ménos diez minutos.
Es la una y cuarto.
Es la una y media.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The hour.
Is it one o'clock?
It is five minutes past one.
It is ten minutes to one.
It is a quarter-past one.
It is half-past one.

* See note *, on page 2.

† See note on page 2.

| | |
|---|---|
| Son las dos ménos cuarto. | It is a quarter to two. |
| Son las tres. | It is three o'clock. |
| Son las cuatro. | It is four o'clock. |
| Son las cinco. | It is five o'clock. |
| Son las seis. | It is six o'clock. |
| Son las siete. | It is seven o'clock. |
| Son las ocho. | It is eight o'clock. |
| Son las nueve. | It is nine o'clock. |
| Son las diez. | It is ten o'clock. |
| Son las once. | It is eleven o'clock. |
| Son las doce. | It is twelve o'clock. |
| El día del mes. | The day of the month. |
| Es el primero. | It is the first. |
| Tenemos el dos. | We have the second. |
| Es el trece. | It is the thirteenth. |
| Tenemos el catorce. | We have the fourteenth. |
| Es el quince. | It is the fifteenth. |
| La mañana temprana. | The early morning. |
| Raras veces. | Seldom. |
| Algunas veces. | Sometimes. |
| Un lugar de diversion. | A place of amusement. |
| Hoy y mañana. | To-day and to-morrow. |
| ¿Había muchas señoras y muchos señores en su tienda ayer? | Were there many ladies and gentlemen in your store yesterday? |
| Había catorce señoras y nueve señores. | There were fourteen ladies and nine gentlemen. |
| ¿Estará V. conmigo? | Will you stay with me? |
| Estaré con V. por algunas horas. | I will stay a few hours with you. |
| ¿Donde ha estado V. ayer? | Where were you yesterday? |
| Hé estado en la casa de mi hermano. | I was at my brother's. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>A que hora?</i> | <i>A las siete y cuarto,</i> |
| at what o'clock? | at a quarter past 7 o'clock; |
| literally, | literally, |
| at what hour? | at the seven and a quarter. |

84. The distinction made in English between *hour* and *o'clock* has no equivalent in Spanish: the word *hora* being used in differently to express an interval of sixty minutes, and to ask

what o'clock it is. In the answers to this question, however, the *o'clock* disappears entirely, and the numbers indicating the exact hour of the day or night have to be preceded by the article **THE**, translated by **la** before **una**, and by **las** before all the others. In stating the time between any two hours, the one nearest to the small hand should always be named first, and the words *and* or *less* be placed after it, thus: It is 3 o'clock and 5 minutes. It is 3 o'clock and 10 minutes. It is 3 o'clock and a quarter. It is 3 o'clock and 20 minutes. It is 3 o'clock and a half. It is 4 o'clock, less 25 minutes. It is 4 o'clock, less 20 minutes. It is 4 o'clock, less a quarter. It is 4 o'clock, less 10 minutes, etc. *Cuarto*, quarter, is a noun, and *media*, half, is an adjective; but *media* never changes in speaking of the time, because it invariably agrees with *hora*, hour, understood.

El día, the day.

Día, day, is masculine, and *noche* and *vez* are feminine, by exception. **Noche**, properly *night*, is used indifferently for *night* and *evening* in Spanish. **Vez**, *time*, should not be confounded with **tiempo**, *time*, which invariably implies duration. **Vez** refers rather to repetition.

Ex. *¿Cuanto tiempo ha estado V. aquí?*
how long time have you been here?
¿Cuántas veces ha estado V. aquí?
how many times have you been here?

Por la mañana, in the morning.

En la mañana would not be incorrect, but *por la mañana* is the more customary expression. The same observation will apply to *por la tarde*, in the afternoon, and to *por la noche*, in the evening. *Mañana*, used without an article, means *to-morrow*.

Las *ocupo*, I occupy them.

85. **Las** is here in the feminine, because it stands for the word *horas*, hours, which is of that gender.

THEY is always translated by **los** for the masculine, and by **las** for the feminine. But to **THEM**, or **THEM** used for to **THEM**, is translated by **les** for either gender. **THEM** is used for to **THEM**

in cases like the following: Give them some money; which means literally, Give some money to them, *Da les algun dinero*.

Cualquier.

86. The literal meaning of this word is, **WHOEVER, WHATEVER, OR ANY ONE**. A compound of **cual** and **quier**, it agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers. Its feminine singular is **cualquiera**; its masculine plural, **cualesquier**; and its feminine plural, **cualesquiera**.

Diversion, amusement, diversion.

87. Over two thousand words ending with **ion** are alike, or nearly so, in both languages; as, *opinion*, opinion; *union*, union; *aversion*, aversion; *leccion*, lesson; *nacion*, nation; *accion*, action. The **t** in the termination **tion** is always changed into a **c**.

Pues, for.

88. **For**, when it can be replaced by *because*, is a conjunction, and has to be translated by **pues**.

Estoy despierto, I am awake.

Soy despierto would not be correct, because a person could not be expected to remain always awake. See Rule 26.

CONJUGATION OF *Estar*, THE SECOND VERB TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Estar, to be.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Estando, being.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Estado, been.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Yo estoy</i> , | I am. |
| <i>Tú estas</i> , | thou art. |
| <i>El está</i> , | he is. |
| <i>Nosotros estamos</i> , | we are. |
| <i>Vosotros estais</i> , | you are. |
| <i>Ellos están</i> , | they are. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo estaba,</i> | I was, | or used to be. |
| <i>Tú estabas,</i> | thou wast, | or usedst to be. |
| <i>El estaba,</i> | he was | or used to be. |
| <i>Nosotros estábamos,</i> | we were, | or used to be. |
| <i>Vosotros estábais,</i> | you were, | or used to be. |
| <i>Ellos estaban,</i> | they were, | or used to be. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | |
|------------------------------|------------|
| <i>Yo estuve,</i> | I was. |
| <i>Tú estuviste,</i> | thou wast. |
| <i>El estuvo,</i> | he was. |
| <i>Nosotros estuvimos,</i> | we were. |
| <i>Vosotros estuvisteis,</i> | you were |
| <i>Ellos estuvieron,</i> | they were. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| <i>Yo estaré,</i> | I shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Tú estarás,</i> | thou shalt be, | or wilt be. |
| <i>El estará,</i> | he shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Nosotros estaremos,</i> | we shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Vosotros estaréis,</i> | you shall be, | or will be. |
| <i>Ellos estarán,</i> | they shall be, | or will be. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo estaría,</i> | I should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Tú estarías</i> | thou shouldst be, | or wouldst be. |
| <i>El estaría,</i> | he should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Nosotros estaríamos,</i> | we should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Vosotros estaríais,</i> | you should be, | or would be. |
| <i>Ellos estarían,</i> | they should be, | or would be. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Está, be (thou).

Estad, be (you).

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Yo estuviera,</i> | <i>tú estuvieras,</i> | <i>él estuviera,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros estuviéramos,</i> | <i>vosotros estuviérais,</i> | <i>ellos estuvieran</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Que yo esté,</i> | that I may be. |
| <i>Que tú estés,</i> | that thou mayst be. |
| <i>Que él esté,</i> | that he may be. |
| <i>Que nosotros estemos,</i> | that we may be. |
| <i>Que vosotros estéis,</i> | that you may be. |
| <i>Que ellos estén,</i> | that they may be. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Que yo estuviera,</i> | or <i>estuviese,</i> | that I might be. |
| <i>Que tú estuvieras,</i> | or <i>estuvieses,</i> | that thou mightst be |
| <i>Que él estuviera,</i> | or <i>estuviese,</i> | that he might be. |
| <i>Que nosotros estuviéramos,</i> | or <i>estuviésemos,</i> | that we might be. |
| <i>Que vosotros estuviérais,</i> | or <i>estuviéseis,</i> | that you might be. |
| <i>Que ellos estuvieran,</i> | or <i>estuviesen,</i> | that they might be. |

El cinco, the fifth; literally, the five.

89. In speaking of the days of the month, the cardinal numbers must be used instead of the ordinal, except for the first, which is invariably *el primero*.

*No lo sé,**

I don't know;

literally,

I don't know it.

90. It is introduced here, because all transitive verbs require a direct regimen in Spanish.

91. Few words demand more attention than this small one. Translated in turn by *él, ella, ello, le, la, lo*, it has sometimes to be added and sometimes to be suppressed, contrary to English usage.

92. In impersonal verbs, and before the verb *to be*, it is most often left out.—Ex. *Llueve*, it rains; *es él*, it is he.

93. But owing to the absence of the neuter gender in Spanish, inanimate objects are always spoken of either in the masculine

* *Sé*, know, has an accent over the *e*, to distinguish it from *se*, himself herself, itself, themselves, which will be seen later.

or in the feminine, and it has therefore to be rendered in turn by *él*, *he*; *ella*, *she*; *le*, *him*; and *la*, *her*.

94. The best plan to be pursued in this respect is to replace at once the word *IT* by *HE*, *SHE*, *HIM*, or *HER*, according to the gender of the Spanish noun referred to, and to translate it regularly as a personal pronoun.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| Ex. <i>¿Dónde está mi libro?</i> | <i>Él está allí,</i> | <i>Lo veo,</i> |
| where is my book? | it is there; | I see it; |
| literally, | literally, | literally, |
| where is my book? | he is there. | I see him |
| <i>¿Dónde está mi gramática?</i> | <i>Ella está allí,</i> | <i>La veo,</i> |
| where is my grammar? | it is there; | I see it; |
| literally, | literally, | literally, |
| where is my grammar? | she is there. | I see her. |

95. It would be, perhaps, better to say simply *está allí*, instead of *él está allí* and *ella está allí*, according to Rule 13, which recommends the suppression of the subject pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they*, but the reverse is not incorrect. As a further and natural consequence of this rule, the equivalents of *IT* in the nominative case—that is to say, when used as *HE* or *SHE*—are comparatively seldom required; but too much care could not be bestowed upon *IT* in the direct objective case, which must be rendered by *le* when it has to be replaced by *HIM*, and by *la* when it has to be replaced by *HER*, according to Rules 93, 94.

96. When *IT* refers to an adjective, a verb, or a whole sentence, rather than to any noun in particular, it has to be translated by *ello* (seldom expressed, see Rule 13) for the nominative case, and by *lo* for the objective.

Ex. *No lo sé*, I don't know it.

Lo creo, I think it, or I think so.

97. The latter example shows, in addition, that *so* is often replaced by *IT*; and that *creer*, to believe, may be used instead of *pensar*, to think, in sentences like the following:

¿Cree V. que lloverá? Do you think it will rain?

No lo creo, I think not.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. It is five minutes past four o'clock, 84. | 8. Is it not half-past eleven o'clock? 84. |
| 2. It is ten minutes past five o'clock, 84. | 9. Is it five minutes past twelve o'clock? 84. |
| 3. It is a quarter past six o'clock, 84. | 10. Is it ten minutes past one o'clock? 84. |
| 4. It is a quarter to seven o'clock, 84. | 11. Is it a quarter-past two o'clock? 84. |
| 5. It is ten minutes to eight o'clock, 84. | 12. Is it a quarter-past three o'clock? 84. |
| 6. It is five minutes to nine o'clock, 84. | 13. Is it ten minutes to four o'clock? 84. |
| 7. It is a few minutes past ten o'clock, 84. | 14. Is it five minutes to five o'clock? 84. |

15. What day of the month is it?—16. Have we not the 11th? 89.—17. It is the 7th, 89.—18. Is it not the 9th? 89.—19. It is the 8th, 89.—20. We have the 12th, have we not? 89.—21. It is the first, is it? 89.—22. What day of the month will it be to-morrow?—23. It will be the 2d, 89.—24. Have you my watch? I have it, 94.—25. Have you your horse? I have it, 94.—26. Have you your pen? I have it, 94.—27. Have you my things? I have them, 85.—28. Have you your gloves? I have them, 85.—29. Have you your scissors? I have them, 85.—30. Have you my ink? I have it, 94.—31. Have you my exercises? I have them, 85.—32. Do you rise early in the morning? I rise at six o'clock, 84.—33. How many times have you been in the park? I have been there several times.—34. Do you know what time it is? I don't know, 90.—35. How do you spend your evening? I spend it in reading.—36. And your mornings? I spend them in the house, 85.—37. Do you think this lesson difficult? 97.—38. I think it is useful, 97.

* See notes on page 7.

EIGHTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.†

Leccion octava.

Lesson eighth.

Los Animales.

The Animals.

V. que ha estudiado la historia

Your honor who has studied the history

natural, dígame V., ¿cuales son los

natural, tell me your honor, which are the

principales animales domésticos? Son

principal animals domestic. They are

el caballo, la mula, el buey, la vaca, el

the horse, the mule, the ox, the cow, the

carnero, el cerdo, el perro y el gato. ¿Sabe

sheep, the pig, the dog, and the cat. Knows

V. los nombres de algunos pájaros?

your honor the names of some birds?

Conozco algunos: El pollo, el pavo, el

I know a few: The chicken, the turkey, the

pato, el ánsar, el canario, el papagayo y

duck, the goose, the canary, the parrot, and

el águila. ¿Porqué hay muchos insectos

the eagle. Why are there many insects

en este país: tenemos moscas, mosquitos,

in this country we have flies, mosquitoes,

gusanos y mariposas? Porque hace mucho

worms, and butterflies? Because it makes much

* See note *. on page 30.

† See note † on page 8.

calor. **¿Que sabe V. acerca de las**
 heat. What knows your honor about * the
serpientes? **Nada, pues no hemos estudia-**
 serpents? Nothing, for † we have studied
do todavía ni los reptiles, ni los peces
 yet neither the reptiles, nor the fishes.
¿Quiere V. beber? Quiero comer y beber
 Will your honor drink? I will eat and drink.

The same in good English.

LOS ANIMALES.

V. que ha estudiado la historia natural, dígame V., ¿cuales son los principales animales domésticos? Son el caballo, la mula, el buey, la vaca, el carnero, el cerdo, el perro y el gato. ¿Sabe V. los nombres de algunos pájaros? Conozco algunos: El pollo, el pavo, el pato, el ánsar, el canario, el papagayo y el águila. ¿Porqué hay muchos insectos en este país; tenemos moscas, mosquitos, gusanos y mariposas? Porque hace mucho calor. ¿Que sabe V. acerca de las serpientes? Nada, pues no hemos estudiado todavía ni los reptiles, ni los peces. ¿Quiere V. beber? Quiero comer y beber.

THE ANIMALS.

You who have studied natural history, tell me the principal domestic animals. They are the horse, the mule, the ox, the cow, the sheep, the pig, the dog, and the cat. Do you know some names of birds? I know a few: The chicken, the turkey, the duck, the goose, the canary, the parrot, and the eagle. Why are there so many insects in this country: we have flies, mosquitoes, worms, and butterflies? Because it is very warm. What do you know about snakes? Nothing, for we have not yet studied the reptiles, nor the fishes. Will you drink? I will eat and drink.

Questions and Answers for Conversation ‡

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿Que lección es esta? | Es la octava. |
| ¿Que ha estudiado V.? | La historia natural. |
| ¿Cuales son los principales animales domésticos? | El caballo, la mula, el buey, la vaca, el carnero, el cerdo, el perro y el gato. |

* See Rule 107, p. 65.

† See Rule 71, p. 37.

‡ See note *, on p. 2.

Dígame V. los nombres de algunos pájaros.

¿ Hay insectos en este país ?

¿ Que clase de insectos ?

¿ Porque hay tantos insectos ?

¿ Sabe V. tambien algo acerca de las serpientes ?

¿ Porque ?

¿ Han estudiado V. los peces ?

¿ Quiere V. comer ?

¿ Es el caballo un animal doméstico ?

¿ Y el pollo ?

¿ Y la mosca ?

¿ Y la serpiente ?

El pollo, el ganso, el pato, el ánser, el canario, el papagayo y el águila.

Hay muchos insectos en este país. Hay moscas, mosquitos, gusanos y mariposas.

Porque hace calor.

No, señor, nada.

Porque no hemos estudiado todavía las serpientes.

No hemos estudiado todavía a los reptiles, ni los peces.

Quiero comer y beber.

Si, señor.

El pollo es un pájaro.

Un insecto.

Un reptil.

Sentences for Oral Translation.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El buey y la vaca.

El ánser y los insectos.

Mi canario y su papagayo de V.

Mis pájaros y su gato de V.

Su mesa y sus sillas.

Su sombrero y su vestido.

Nuestros animales domésticos.

Vuestros pavos y vuestros ánsares.

Sus libros y sus cuadernos.

¿ Cuales nombres sabe V. ?

Estas mariposas son hermosas.

Algunas moscas para el pájaro.

Algunos gusanos para los peces.

Algunas faltas en su ejercicio de V.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The ox and the cow.

The goose and the insects.

My canary and your parrot.

My birds and your cat.

His table and his chairs.

Her bonnet and her dress.

Our domestic animals.

Your turkeys and your geese.

Their books and their copy-books.

Which names do you know ?

These butterflies are handsome.

Some flies for the bird.

Any worms for the fishes ?

A few mistakes in your exercise.

* See note at the bottom of page 3.

| | |
|--|--|
| Muchos reptiles y muchos mosquitos. | Many reptiles and many mosquitoes. |
| Mucho pan y poca carne. | Much bread and little meat. |
| Mas café que té. | More coffee than tea. |
| Ménos galletitas que bizcochos. | Fewer crackers than biscuits. |
| Ménos manteca que pan. | Less butter than bread. |
| El principal animal doméstico. | The principal domestic animal. |
| El perro es un animal muy útil. | The dog is a very useful animal. |
| Que gato hermoso! | What a beautiful cat! |
| ¿Hay muchos caballos en este país? | Are there many horses in this country? |
| Hay muchos caballos y muchas mulas. | There are many horses and many mules. |
| ¿Venden en esta tienda canarios y papagayos? | Do they sell canaries and parrots in this store? |
| No venden ni canarios ni papagayos. | They sell neither canaries nor parrots. |
| ¿Que venden? | What do they sell? |
| Venden pollos, patos y pavos. | They sell chickens, ducks, and turkeys. |
| ¿Quiere V. comprar algunos? | Will you buy some? |
| Quiero comprar un águila. | I will buy an eagle. |
| ¿Prefiere V. los canarios á los papagayos? | Do you prefer canaries to parrots? |
| Prefiero estos á aquellos. | I prefer these to those. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART

Ha estudiado, has studied.

Ha estudiado is the third person singular of the perfect tense of *estudiar*, to study,—a regular verb of the first conjugation.

98. All Spanish verbs end in the infinitive with **ar**, **er** or **ir**. Those ending with **ar** are said to be of the first conjugation; those ending with **er** are of the second; and those ending with **ir**, of the third.

MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Hablar, to speak.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Hablando, speaking.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Hablado, spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo hablo</i> , | I speak, | or do speak. |
| <i>Tú hablas</i> , | thou speakest, | or dost speak. |
| <i>El* habla</i> , | he speaks, | or does speak. |
| <i>Nosotros* hablamos</i> , | we speak, | or do speak. |
| <i>Vosotros* habláis</i> , | you speak, | or do speak. |
| <i>Ellos* hablan</i> , | they speak, | or do speak. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>Yo hablaba</i> , | I spoke, | or used to speak. |
| <i>Tú hablabas</i> , | thou spokest, | or usedst to speak. |
| <i>El hablaba</i> , | he spoke, | or used to speak. |
| <i>Nosotros hablábamos</i> , | we spoke, | or used to speak. |
| <i>Vosotros hablábais</i> , | you spoke, | or used to speak. |
| <i>Ellos hablaban</i> , | they spoke, | or used to speak. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo hablé</i> , | I spoke, | or did speak. |
| <i>Tú hablaste</i> , | thou spokest, | or didst speak. |
| <i>El hablé</i> , | he spoke, | or did speak. |
| <i>Nosotros hablamos</i> , | we spoke, | or did speak. |
| <i>Vosotros hablasteis</i> , | you spoke, | or did speak. |
| <i>Ellos hablaron</i> , | they spoke, | or did speak. |

* The feminine of *él* is *ella*, and the feminine of *ellos* is *ellas*. But *we* and *you* have also a feminine form in Spanish; their regular equivalents *nos* and *vos* having become obsolete, the word *other*, which enters into the composition of the compounds *nosotros* and *vosotros*, used instead, agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers, thus: *nosotras* and *vosotras*. All these pronouns are, however, seldom required. See Rule 18.

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo hablaré,</i> | I shall speak, | or will speak. |
| <i>Tú hablarás,</i> | thou shalt speak, | or wilt speak. |
| <i>El hablará,</i> | he shall speak, | or will speak. |
| <i>Nosotros hablaremos,</i> | we shall speak, | or will speak. |
| <i>Vosotros hablaréis,</i> | you shall speak, | or will speak. |
| <i>Ellos hablarán,</i> | they shall speak, | or will speak. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo hablaría,</i> | I should speak, | or would speak. |
| <i>Tú hablarías,</i> | thou shouldst speak, | or wouldst speak. |
| <i>El hablaría,</i> | he should speak, | or would speak. |
| <i>Nosotros hablaríamos,</i> | we should speak, | or would speak. |
| <i>Vosotros hablaríais,</i> | you should speak, | or would speak. |
| <i>Ellos hablarían,</i> | they should speak, | or would speak. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Habla, speak (thou).

Hablad, speak (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo hable,</i> | that I may speak. |
| <i>Que tú hables,</i> | that thou mayst speak. |
| <i>Que él hable,</i> | that he may speak. |
| <i>Que nosotros hablemos,</i> | that we may speak. |
| <i>Que vosotros habléis,</i> | that you may speak. |
| <i>Que ellos hablen,</i> | that they may speak. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Que yo hablara,</i> | or <i>hablase,</i> | that I might speak. |
| <i>Que tú hablaras,</i> | or <i>hablases,</i> | that thou mightst speak. |
| <i>Que él hablara,</i> | or <i>hablase,</i> | that he might speak. |
| <i>Que nosotros habláramos,</i> | or <i>hablásemos,</i> | that we might speak. |
| <i>Que vosotros hablarais,</i> | or <i>habláseis,</i> | that you might speak. |
| <i>Que ellos hablaran,</i> | or <i>hablasen,</i> | that they might speak. |

For the compound tenses, see Rule 45.

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo hablaré,</i> | <i>tú hablarás,</i> | <i>él hablará,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros hablaremos,</i> | <i>vosotros hablaréis,</i> | <i>ellos hablarán.</i> |

99. The verbs ending with **ar** in the infinitive are the most numerous, and are almost all conjugated like **hablar**, to speak. The regular verbs of this conjugation already seen, are :

| | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------------|------------|
| <i>Amueblar</i> , | to furnish. | <i>Levantarse</i> | to rise. |
| <i>Aumentar</i> , | to augment. | <i>Llamar</i> , | to call. |
| <i>Comprar</i> , | to buy. | <i>Montar</i> , | to mount. |
| <i>Conservar</i> , | to preserve. | <i>Ocupar</i> , | to occupy. |
| <i>Cortar</i> , | to cut. | <i>Pasar</i> , | to pass. |
| <i>Estudiar</i> , | to study. | <i>Tomar</i> , | to take. |
| <i>Gustar</i> , | to please. | <i>Usar</i> , | to use. |

The irregular ones are :

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|-------------------|-----------|
| <i>Acostar</i> , | to go to bed. | <i>Encontrar</i> | to meet. |
| <i>Almorzar</i> , | to breakfast. | <i>Estar</i> , | to be. |
| <i>Dar</i> , | to give. | <i>Pagar</i> , | to pay. |
| <i>Despertar</i> , | to awake. | <i>Pensar</i> , | to think. |
| <i>Empezar</i> , | to begin. | <i>Traficar</i> , | to deal. |

They will be explained later.

Historia, history.

100. Many words ending with **ia** in Spanish, end with **y** in English; as, *Comedia*, comedy; *melodia*, melody; *economia*, economy, etc.

Digame, tell me.

We have already seen that the pronouns, when placed after the verb, are merged into one word with it (17).

101. The objective pronouns, **ME**, **THEE**, **HIM**, **HER**, **IT**, **US**, **YOU**, **THEM**, are generally put before the verb; but they must invariably be placed after it in imperative affirmative sentences, and when joined to an infinitive or a present participle.—Ex. .

| | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>El me da</i> , | he gives me. | <i>Dame</i> , | give me. |
| <i>El me ha dado</i> , | he has given me | <i>Dandome</i> , | giving me. |
| <i>No me da</i> , | he does not give me. | <i>Puede darme</i> , | he can give me |

102. **Me** corresponds usually to **me** and to **my**; but when to **me** is used by itself, that is to say, without a verb and after

as, it is, *qué*, than, and *como*, as, it has to be translated by *á mí*. See also *conmigo* (83).

Ex. *Es á mí que habla*, it is to me (that) he speaks.

Cuales *son*, which are.

103. **WHO, WHOM, WHICH, WHAT**, are sometimes interrogative and sometimes relative. When interrogative, they are generally placed at the beginning or at the end of a sentence; but when relative, they are never so placed.

104. **WHICH** is translated by **cual**, as an interrogative, and by **que**, as a relative; but **OF WHICH**, and **TO WHICH**, are generally rendered by **del cual** and **al cual**. **Que** does not change, but **cual** agrees in gender and number with the word to which it refers. Its feminine singular is like the masculine. See Rule 22. Its plural for both genders is **cuales** (23).

Domésticos, domestic.

105. Many words ending with **ico** in Spanish end with *ic* or *ical* in English; as, *Atlántico*, Atlantic; *poético*, poetical; *trágico*, tragic, etc.

Muchos *insectos*,
many insects.

Mucho *calor*,
much heat.

106. When joined to a verb, **mucho** is an adverb, and consequently an invariable word corresponding to **MUCH** in English; but joined to a noun, it is an adjective, meaning **MUCH** or **MANY**, no difference being made in Spanish between quantity and number. The adjective **mucho** agrees in gender and number with the word to which it refers. Its feminine singular is **mucha**; its plural masculine, **muchos**; and its feminine plural, **muchas**. The whole of this observation will apply to the following words:

Poco, *poca*, *pocos*, *pocas*, little or few.

Tanto, *tanta*, *tantos*, *tantas*, so much, or so many.

Cuanto, *cuanta*, *cuantos*, *cuantas*, how much? or how many?

Demasiado, *demasiada*, *demasiados*, *demasiadas*, too much, or too many.

Porqué, why? *Porque*, because.

Porqué, why, is distinguished from *porque*, because, by an accent over the *e*.

Acerca de las serpientes, about the serpents.

107. Like *cerca*, near, *acerca*, concerning or about, is always followed by *de* in Spanish.

Las serpientes, the serpents.

Serpiente, serpent, is feminine by exception.

Exercises.*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 I take, 99. | 16. I should take. |
| 2. He takes. | 17. He should take. |
| 3. We take. | 18. We should take. |
| 4. You take. | 19. You should take. |
| 5. They take. | 20. They should take. |
| 6. I took. | 21. I have taken. |
| 7. He took. | 22. He has taken. |
| 8. We took. | 23. We have taken. |
| 9. You took. | 24. You have taken. |
| 10. They took. | 25. They have taken. |
| 11. I shall take. | 26. Let him take. |
| 12. He shall take. | 27. Let us take. |
| 13. We shall take. | 28. Let them take. |
| 14. You shall take. | 29. Take. |
| 15. They shall take. | 30. Taking. |

31. I have passed, 45, 99.—32. We have augmented, 45, 99.—33. They have used, 45, 99.—34. I had mounted, 45, 99.—35. You had called, 45, 99.—36. They had preserved, 45, 99.—37. Passing, 99.—38. Buying, 99.—39. Paying, 49.—40. We have spent the whole day in the city.—41. Let us take our dinner, and spend the evening at some place of amusement.†—42. We shall pay our bills as soon as we (shall) have money.—43. How many canary birds have you?—44. I have two.—45. The fly is an insect.—46. He calls me, 101.—47. He passed me, 101.—48. Calling me, 101.—49. Which hat is this? 104.—50. Which books are these? 104.—51. Much bread, 106.—52. Much coffee, 106.—53. Many boys, 106.—54. Many girls, 106.

* See notes on page 7.

† See note on page 35.

NINTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation†

Leccion nona.

Lesson ninth.

La Ciudad.

The City.

¿ Donde estamos ? En la Habana. ¿ Que

Where are we? In Havana. What

hermosa ciudad! Si el vivir no es

beautiful city! If the living not is

demasiado caro, tengo la intencion de

too dear, I have the intention to

quedarme aquí por algun tiempo, para

stop myself here for some time, for

familiarizarme con los habitantes y las

to familiarize me with the inhabitants and the

costumbres. ¿ Cual es la mejor posada ?

customs. Which is the best hotel?

Hay varias buenas, las unas en la parte

There are various good, the ones in the part

de arriba, las otras en la parte de abajo

of up, the others in the part of down

de la ciudad: pero la mas patrocinada

of the city; but the most patronized

es la posada americana, un gran edificio

is the hotel American, a large edifice

de piedra en el mismo centro de la ciudad.

of stone in the very centre of the city.

* See note on page 30.

† See note †, on page 8.

Querria proporcionarme un coche, que
 I would procure me a coach, which
me llevara allí, porque no sé el camino.
 me might bring there, for not I know the way.

No valdrá la pena, pues es muy cerca
 Not it will be worth the trouble, for it is very near
del paradero del ferrocarril; siga
 of the depot of the railroad; let him follow

V. la primera calle á su lado derecho
 your honor the first street to his side right,
y despues la segunda á su lado izquierdo.
 and afterwards the second to his side left.

Hay un farol delante de la puerta. Muchas
 There is a lamp before of the door. Many
gracias. Buenos dias, Don José. Adios.
 thanks. Good days, Mr. José. Good-by.

The same in good English.

LA CIUDAD.

¿Donde estamos? En la Habana. ¿Que hermosa ciudad! Si el vivir no es demasiado caro, tengo la intencion de quedarme aquí por algun tiempo, para familiarizarme con los habitantes y las costumbres. ¿Cual es la mejor posada? Hay varias buenas, las unas en la parte de arriba, las otras en la parte de abajo de la ciudad; pero la mas patrocinada es la posada americana, un gran edificio de piedra en el mismo centro de la ciudad. Querria proporcionarme un coche, que me llevara allí, porque no sé el camino. No valdrá la pena, pues es muy cerca del paradero

THE CITY.

Where are we? In Havana. What a beautiful city! If living be not too dear, I will spend some time here to become acquainted with the people and customs of the place. Which is the best hotel? There are several good ones, some up town and some down town; but the most fashionable is the American, a large stone building in the very centre of the city.

I should like to get a carriage to carry me there, for I do not know the way.

It will not be worth while, for it is very near to the railroad depot. Take the first street to

del ferrocarril; siga V. la primera calle á su lado derecho y despues la segunda á su lado izquierdo. Hay un farol delante de la puerta. Muchas gracias. Buenos dias, Don José. Adios.

your right, and the second to your left. There is a lamp before the door.

Thank you. Good day, Mr. Joseph. Good-by.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.*

¿ Que leccion es esta ?
 ¿ En que ciudad estamos ?
 ¿ Que intencion tiene V. ?
 ¿ Que quiere V. hacer aquí ?
 ¿ Hay buenas posadas aquí ?
 ¿ Donde estan ?
 ¿ Y las otras ?
 ¿ Cual es la mejor posada ?
 ¿ Que clase de edificio es ?
 ¿ En que parte de la ciudad está ?
 ¿ Valdría la pena de proporcionarme un coche, que me llevara allí ?
 ¿ Porqué ?
 ¿ Sabé V. el camino ?
 ¿ Que camino debo tomar ?
 ¿ Y despues ?
 ¿ Hay algo delante de la puerta ?

Es la nona.
 En la Habana.
 De quedarme aquí por algun tiempo si el vivir no es demasiado caro.
 Quiero familiarizarme con los habitantes y las costumbres.
 Hay varias buenas.
 Las unas estan en la parte de arriba de la ciudad.
 En la parte de abajo.
 La posada americana es la mas patrocinada.
 Es un gran edificio de piedra.
 En el mismo centro de la ciudad.
 No, señor, no valdrá la pena.
 Porque es muy cerca del paradero del ferrocarril.
 No sé el camino.
 Siga V. la primera calle á su lado derecho.
 Despues siga V. la segunda calle á su lado izquierdo.
 Hay un farol.

Sentences for Oral Translation.†

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La intencion.
 Una costumbre.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The intention.
 A custom.

* See note *, on page 2.

† See note on page 2.

Un habitante.
 Mi camino.
 Este coche.
 Un paradero del ferrocarril.
 Mi lado derecho.
 Su lado izquierdo de V.
 Cuantos faroles?
 Cuanto tiempo se quedará V
 aquí?
 Me quedaré aquí algunos dias.
 ¿En que posada está V.?
 En la posada americana.
 ¿Es un gran edificio?
 Es un gran edificio de piedra.
 ¿Hay posadas en la parte de ar-
 riba de la ciudad?
 En la parte de arriba y en la
 parte de abajo.
 ¿Donde está la posada ameri-
 cana?
 Cerca del paradero del ferrocarril.
 ¿Que calle debo tomar?
 ¿Es la posada americana mejor
 que las otras?
 Es la mejor, y la mas patroci-
 nada.
 ¿Es este edificio de piedra ó de
 madera?
 Es de piedra.
 ¿Son buenos los cuartos?
 Son muy agradables.
 ¿Y las camas?
 Las camas son las mejores de la
 ciudad.
 ¿Como es la comida?
 La comida es muy buena.
 ¿Cuanto se paga al dia?
 Tres pesos y medio.
 ¿Hay muchos mosquitos?
 No hay muchos.
 Muchas gracias.
 Buenos dias, Don Pablo.

An inhabitant.
 My way.
 This coach.
 A railroad depot.
 My right side.
 Your left side.
 How many lamps?
 How long time will you stay
 here?
 I shall stay here a few days.
 In which hotel are you?
 In the American hotel.
 Is it a large edifice?
 It is a large stone edifice.
 Are there any hotels up town?
 Up town and down town.
 Where is the American hotel?
 Near the railroad depot.
 Which street must I take?
 Is the American hotel better than
 the others?
 It is the best, and the most
 fashionable.
 Is that edifice of stone or of
 wood?
 It is of stone.
 Are the rooms good ones?
 They are very pleasant.
 And the beds?
 The beds are the best in the
 city.
 How is the fare?
 The fare is very good.
 How much do you pay a day?
 Three dollars and a half.
 Are there many mosquitoes?
 There are not many.
 Thank you.
 Good morning, Mr. Paul.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Que hermosa ciudad! what a beautiful city!

108. WHAT is translated by **que** as an interrogative, and by **lo que** when it can be replaced by *that which*, or *the thing*, *which*, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence. (103.)

Ex. What you say is correct, *lo que V. dice es correcto*.

109. A or **AN** is suppressed in Spanish before the words *hundred*, *thousand*, and after *what*, in exclamative sentences.

Ex. A hundred children, *cien niños*.

What a man! *que hombre!*

El vivir, the living.

110. Words which, without being nouns, are accidentally used as such, are masculine.

111. This completes the study of the gender of nouns:

Names of males are masculine, and names of females are feminine.

Words ending with **a**, **d**, **ion**, and **umbre**, are feminine; those ending otherwise are masculine.

Words which, without being nouns, are accidentally used as such, are masculine.

The exceptions already seen are: *águila*, eagle; *dia*, day which are masculine; and *calle*, street; *carne*, meat; *clase*, kind; *llave*, key; *noche*, night; *parte*, part; and *vez*, time, which are feminine. The rest will be explained as they occur in the text.

Americana, American.

112. Many words ending with *an* in English, end with **ano** in Spanish, and have their feminine in **ana**; as, *Humano*, *Humana*, Human; *Republicano*, *Republicana*, Republican; *Romano*, *Romana*, Roman, etc.

En el mismo centro, in the very centre.

113. The word **VERY**, usually translated by **muy**, already seen, is rendered by **mismo** when it precedes a noun. (49.)

No sé, I do not know.

Sé is a form of *saber*, to know, an irregular verb of the second conjugation.

MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Vender, to sell.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Vendiendo, selling.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Vendido, sold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo vendo</i> , | I sell, | or do sell. |
| <i>Tú vendes</i> , | thou sellest, | or dost sell. |
| <i>El vende</i> , | he sells, | or does sell. |
| <i>Nosotros vendemos</i> , | we sell, | or do sell. |
| <i>Vosotros vendeis</i> , | you sell, | or do sell. |
| <i>Ellos venden</i> , | they sell, | or do sell. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo vendia</i> , | I sold, | or used to sell. |
| <i>Tú vendias</i> , | thou soldest, | or usedst to sell. |
| <i>El vendia</i> , | he sold, | or used to sell. |
| <i>Nosotros vendíamos</i> , | we sold, | or used to sell. |
| <i>Vosotros vendíais</i> , | you sold, | or used to sell. |
| <i>Ellos vendían</i> , | they sold, | or used to sell. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo vendí</i> , | I sold, | or did sell. |
| <i>Tú vendiste</i> , | thou soldst, | or didst sell. |
| <i>El vendió</i> , | he sold, | or did sell. |
| <i>Nosotros vendimos</i> , | we sold, | or did sell. |
| <i>Vosotros vendisteis</i> , | you sold, | or did sell. |
| <i>Ellos vendieron</i> , | they sold, | or did sell. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo venderé,</i> | I shall sell, | or will sell. |
| <i>Tú venderás,</i> | thou shalt sell, | or wilt sell. |
| <i>El venderá,</i> | he shall sell, | or will sell. |
| <i>Nosotros venderémos,</i> | we shall sell, | or will sell. |
| <i>Vosotros venderéis,</i> | you shall sell, | or will sell. |
| <i>Ellos venderán,</i> | they shall sell, | or will sell. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo venderia,</i> | I should sell, | or would sell. |
| <i>Tú venderias,</i> | thou shouldst sell, | or wouldst sell. |
| <i>El venderia,</i> | he should sell, | or would sell. |
| <i>Nosotros venderiamos,</i> | we should sell, | or would sell. |
| <i>Vosotros venderiais,</i> | you should sell, | or would sell. |
| <i>Ellos venderian,</i> | they should sell, | or would sell. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Vende, sell (thou).

Vended, sell (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo venda,</i> | that I may sell. |
| <i>Que tú vendas,</i> | that thou mayst sell. |
| <i>Que él venda,</i> | that he may sell. |
| <i>Que nosotros vendamos,</i> | that we may sell. |
| <i>Que vosotros vendais,</i> | that you may sell. |
| <i>Que ellos vendan,</i> | that they may sell. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo vendiera,</i> | or vendiese, | that I might sell. |
| <i>Que tú vendieras,</i> | or vendieses, | that thou mightst sell. |
| <i>Que él vendiera,</i> | or vendiese, | that he might sell. |
| <i>Que nosotros vendiéramos,</i> | or vendiésemos, | that we might sell. |
| <i>Que vosotros vendierais,</i> | or vendieseis, | that you might sell. |
| <i>Que ellos vendieran,</i> | or vendiesen, | that they might sell. |

For the compound tenses, see Rule 45.

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Yo vendiere,</i> | <i>tú vendieres,</i> | <i>él vendiere,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros vendiéremos,</i> | <i>vosotros vendierais,</i> | <i>ellos vendieran.</i> |

114. Most verbs ending in the infinitive with **er**, are conjugated like **vender**, to sell. The regular ones which have occurred in our text, are: *Beber*, to drink; *deber*, to owe, ought must; *comer*, to eat; *vender*, to sell; and *vencer*, to fall due.

The irregular ones are: *Conocer*, to know, to be acquainted with (a person); *haber*, to have; *hacer*, to make; *leer*, to read, *poder*, to be able; *querer*, to be willing; *romper*, to break; *saber*, to know (a thing); *ser*, to be; and *valer*, to be worth.

Haber and *ser* have already been seen: the rest will be explained later.

Delante de la puerta, before the door.

115. *Delante* must not be confounded with *antes*, another equivalent of *before*, in Spanish. *Delante* simply denotes place or situation; *antes* marks priority of time. *Delante* and *antes* require to be followed by the preposition *de*.

Buenos días,
Good day;
Literally,
good days.

116. The salutations, Good morning, Good day, and Good evening, are always used in the plural in Spanish.

Don José, or *Señor Don José*, Mr. Joseph.

117. Christian names are generally preceded by **Don**, instead of **Señor**, and by **Doña**, instead of **Señora** or **Señorita**, though both may be introduced at the same time with equal propriety.

118. Nouns denoting titles, qualities, professions, or degrees of relationship, which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives by means of the same termination which the adjective takes in the feminine.

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------|------------------------|------------------|
| Ex. <i>Un niño</i> , | a boy. | <i>Un hermano</i> , | a brother. |
| <i>Una niña</i> , | a girl. | <i>Una hermana</i> , | a sister. |
| <i>Un hijo</i> , | a son. | <i>Un ciudadano</i> , | a male citizen. |
| <i>Una hija</i> , | a daughter. | <i>Una ciudadana</i> , | a female citizen |

Llevar, to carry; *patrocinar*, to patronize; *proporcionar*, to procure; and *quedar*, to remain, are regular verbs of the first

conjugation. *Familiarizer*, to familiarize, is irregular, and will be explained later.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I drink, 114. | 16. I should drink. |
| 2. He drinks. | 17. He should drink. |
| 3. We drink. | 18. We should drink. |
| 4. You drink. | 19. You should drink. |
| 5. They drink. | 20. They should drink |
| 6. I drank. | 21. I have drunk. |
| 7. He drank. | 22. He has drunk. |
| 8. We drank. | 23. We have drunk. |
| 9. You drank. | 24. You have drunk. |
| 10. They drank. | 25. They have drunk. |
| 11. I shall drink. | 26. Let him drink.† |
| 12. He shall drink. | 27. Let us drink. |
| 13. We shall drink. | 28. Let them drink. |
| 14. You shall drink. | 29. Drink. |
| 15. They shall drink. | 30. Drinking. |

31. I have eaten, 45.—32. We have feared, 45.—33. They owe, 114.—34. Have you feared? 45.—35. Do you eat? 114.—36. Do they fear? 114.—37. I owe, 114.—38. Owing, 114.—39. Eating, 114.—40. Would you like to live in Havana?—41. Yes, sir; it is a beautiful city.—42. Have you been there?—43. I have been there several times.—44. What do you do when it is warm?—45. I open my doors and my windows.—46. Do you wish to eat something?—47. I wish to eat and drink.—48. What do you wish to eat?—49. Some bread and some meat.—50. What do you wish to drink?—51. I wish to drink a glass of water.—52. The watch which I have bought is broken.—53. What a beautiful horse! 108.—54. Where is your sister?—55. Have you met her?—56. And your brothers; have you met them?—57. Miss Virginia is my daughter, 117, 118.

* See notes on page 7.

† See note *, on page 35.

TENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.†

Leccion décima.

Lesson tenth.

El Campo.

The Country.

Los productos mas importantes de Cuba
The products most important of Cuba
son: azúcar, café y tabaco. He visitado
are: sugar, coffee, and tobacco. I have visited
algunas haciendas de azúcar, para con-
several estates of sugar, in order to con-
templar la maquinaria, y me pareció tan
template the machinery, and to me it appeared as
perfecta como el hombre puede fabricarla.
perfect as the man can fabricate it.
Nada puede rivalizar con la limpieza de
Nothing can rival with the cleanliness of
estos establecimientos. Sin embargo no
these establishments. However, not
recomendaria á V. ir allí y hacerse
I should recommend to your honor to go there and to make himself

* As it is desirable to limit the time to be spent in the review indicated in note *, on page 8, to a quarter of an hour at the utmost, it would be perhaps well now, in addition to the modification already suggested in note * on page 80, to cease by degrees to rehearse the first lessons, the text of which by this time, may be supposed to have been thoroughly mastered. This observation, however, is not intended to recommend a total neglect of them, but rather a systematical omission of a portion, in the following order, leaving out, to begin with, the first three, then the 2d, 3d, 4th, and so on.

† The directions given in note *, or page 1, continue as important as ever and should be faithfully attended to.

agricultor ; pues aunque la isla produce las
 farmer ; for although the island produces the
mas sabrosas frutas tropicales, flores de
 most savory fruits tropical, flowers of
los mas ricos colores, palmas magnificas
 the most rich colors, palms magnificent
y otros árboles, los cereales y los vegetales
 and other trees, the cerealia and the vegetables
de nuestra zona no crecen allí. El jardin
 of our zone not grow there. The garden
mas hermoso es el del Obispo, y la
 most beautiful is that of the Bishop, and the
finca mas bonita es la del Capitan -
 country-seat most pretty is that of the Captain-
general, que es el virey de la isla.
 general, who is the viceroy of the island.

The same in good English.

EL CAMPO.

Los productos mas importantes de Cuba son: azúcar, café y tabaco. He visitado algunas haciendas de azúcar, para contemplar la maquinaria, y me pareció tan perfecta como el hombre puede fabricarla. Nada puede rivalizar con la limpieza de estos establecimientos. Sin embargo no recomendaria á V. ir allí y hacerse agricultor; pues aunque la isla produce las mas sabrosas frutas tropicales, flores de los mas ricos colores, palmas magnificas y otros árboles, los cereales y los vegetales de nuestra zona no crecen allí. El jardin mas

THE COUNTRY.

The most important productions of Cuba are sugar, coffee, and tobacco. I have been to several sugar plantations to view the machinery used, and it has appeared to me to be the most perfect that could be imagined. Nothing can compare with the cleanliness of these establishments. I would, however, not recommend you to remove there as a farmer; for although the island produces the richest tropical fruits, flowers of every color and magnificent palms and other trees, the cerealia and vegetables of our zone do not grow there.

hermceo es el del Obispo, y la finca mas bonita es la del Capitan-general, que es el virey de la isla.

The most beautiful garden is the Bishop's, and the handsomest country-seat that of the Captain-general, who is the viceroy of the island.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿ Que leccion es esta ? | Es la décima. |
| ¿ Cuales son los productos mas importantes de la isla de Cuba ? | Azúcar, café y tabaco. |
| ¿ Ha visitado V. las haciendas ? | He visitado algunas haciendas de azúcar. |
| ¿ Para qué ? | Para contemplar la maquinaria. |
| ¿ Como le pareció á V. ? | Me pareció tan perfecta como el hombre puede fabricarla. |
| ¿ Que sabe V. de la limpieza de estos establecimientos ? | Nada puede rivalizar con la limpieza de estos establecimientos. |
| ¿ Me recomendaria V. ir allí ? | No recomendaria á V. ir allí y hacerse agricultor. |
| ¿ Produce frutas la isla ? | La isla produce las mas sabrosas frutas tropicales. |
| ¿ Y tambien flores ? | Flores de los mas ricos colores. |
| ¿ Que árboles hay ? | Palmas magnificas y otros árboles. |
| ¿ Ocreen allí los cereales de nuestra zona ? | No, señor, ni los cereales ni los vegetales. |
| ¿ Cual es el mas hermoso jardin ? | El jardin del Obispo. |
| ¿ Y cual es la mas bonita finca ? | La finca del Capitan-general. |
| ¿ Quien es el virey de la isla ? | El Capitan-general. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El azúcar.
El tabaco.
Mi hacienda de azúcar.
La maquinaria.
Sin embargo.
Las frutas y las flores

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH

The sugar.
The tobacco.
My sugar estate.
The machinery.
However.
The fruits and the flowers

| | |
|---|--|
| Un agricultor. | A farmer. |
| Los vegetales de nuestra zona. | The vegetables of our zone. |
| Cerca de la Habana. | Near Havana. |
| El Obispo. | The Bishop. |
| La finca. | The country-seat. |
| El Capitan-general. | The Captain-general. |
| Una isla. | An island. |
| ¡Que hermoso establecimiento! | What a beautiful establishment! |
| Ha estado V. en Ouba? | Have you been in Cuba? |
| He estado allí. | I have been there. |
| ¿Que produce aquella isla? | What does that island produce? |
| Azúcar, café, tabaco y frutas tropicales. | Sugar, coffee, tobacco, and tropical fruits. |
| ¿Que vestidos se usan allí? | What clothes do they use there? |
| Se usan vestidos de hilo. | They use linen coats. |
| ¿No tienen vestidos de algodón? | Have they not cotton coats? |
| Tienen tambien vestidos de algodón. | They have also cotton coats. |
| ¿Ha visitado V. el jardin del Obispo? | Have you visited the Bishop's garden? |
| Le he visitado. | I have visited it. |
| ¿Puede rivalizar con nuestros jardines? | Does it compare with our gardens? |
| Puede rivalizar con nuestros mas hermosos jardines. | It compares with our finest gardens. |
| ¿Ha comido V. algo bueno? | Have you eaten something good? |
| He comido algunas frutas. | I have eaten some fruit. |
| ¿Que clase de frutas? | What kind of fruit? |
| Algunas frutas tropicales. | Some tropical fruits. |
| ¿A que hora quiere V. venir á verme? | At what o'clock will you come to see me? |
| A las once. | At eleven o'clock. |
| Pero no estaré en casa á aquella hora. | But I shall not be at home at that hour. |
| Entonces vendré á las doce. | Then I will come at twelve o'clock. |
| Estoy siempre en casa, á las doce. | At twelve o'clock I am always at home. |
| Es la hora de comer. | It is dinner-time. |
| Muy bien, señor. | Very well, sir. |
| Adica. | Good-by. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

El campo, the country.

119. *Campo* and *pais*, already seen, are not synonymous. **Campo** means country, as opposed to *city*, while **pais** has a signification akin to that of *region* or *state*.

Tabaco, tobacco.

120 In the singular, **tabaco** means *tobacco*; but the plural, **tabacos**, is applied chiefly to *cigars*: the Spanish word *cigarro*, or *cigarrillo*, being confined to *paper cigars*, at least in Cuba.

Visitado visited, from *visitacion*, visitation.

121 Verbs may be formed from almost all the substantives ending with **acion**, by changing this termination into **ar**; as, *consolacion*, consolation, *consolar*, to console; *continuacion*, continuation, *continuar*, to continue; *preparacion*, preparation, *preparar*, to prepare. See Rule 87.

Rivalizar con la limpieza,
rival with the cleanliness.

122. Few things are more troublesome in English than the proper use of the prepositions; and it is often very puzzling, even for natives, to select the right one, whether to say, *angry with* or *angry against*, *received from* or *received of*; and yet many verbs assume an almost endless variety of significations, according to the small word joined to them; as, To **BRING UP**, *to nourish*, *to educate*; To **BRING OVER**, *to gain*, *to convert*; To **BRING ABOUT**, *to effect*, etc. The same difficulty obtains in Spanish. Observation and diligent reference to the dictionary are the only guides that can be offered. The following examples will, however, show the more prominent features in this respect of the verbs already seen, and the rest will be explained as they occur in our text:

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Crecer de cuerpo</i> , | to grow in body. |
| <i>Crecer en virtudes</i> , | to grow in virtues. |
| <i>Despertar á alguno</i> , | to awake some one. |
| <i>Despertar del sueño</i> , | to awake from sleep. |

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Montar á caballo,</i> | to mount on horseback. |
| <i>Pensar en alguno or en alguna cosa,</i> | to think of some one or of some thing. |
| <i>Quedar de asiento,</i> | to live in a place, to reside there. |
| <i>Quedar de pies,</i> | to remain on foot. |
| <i>Quedar en casa,</i> | to remain in the house. |

Sin embargo.

123. Sin embargo, literally *without embargo, without embarrassment, without something to interfere*, is the exact equivalent of **HOWEVER**.

Produce, produces.

Produce is the third person singular of the indicative mood, present tense, of *producir*, to produce,—an irregular verb of the third and last conjugation.

MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Unir, to unite.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Uniendo, uniting.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Unido, united.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo uno,</i> | I unite, | or do unite. |
| <i>Tú unes,</i> | thou unitest, | or dost unite. |
| <i>El une,</i> | he unites, | or does unite. |
| <i>Nosotros unimos,</i> | we unite, | or do unite. |
| <i>Vosotros unís,</i> | you unite, | or do unite. |
| <i>Ellos unen,</i> | they unite, | or do unite. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo unia,</i> | I united, | or used to unite. |
| <i>Tú unías,</i> | thou unitedst, | or usedst to unite |
| <i>El unia,</i> | he united, | or used to unite. |
| <i>Nosotros uníamos,</i> | we united, | or used to unite. |
| <i>Vosotros uníais,</i> | you united, | or used to unite. |
| <i>Ellos unían,</i> | they unite-1, | or used to unite. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo uní,</i> | I united, | or did unite. |
| <i>Tú uniste,</i> | thou unitedst, | or didst unite. |
| <i>El unió,</i> | he united, | or did unite. |
| <i>Nosotros unimos,</i> | we united, | or did unite. |
| <i>Vosotros unisteis,</i> | you united, | or did unite. |
| <i>Ellos unieron,</i> | they united, | or did unite. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo uniré,</i> | I shall unite, | or will unite. |
| <i>Tú unirás,</i> | thou shalt unite, | or wilt unite. |
| <i>El unirá,</i> | he shall unite, | or will unite. |
| <i>Nosotros uniremos,</i> | we shall unite, | or will unite. |
| <i>Vosotros uniréis,</i> | you shall unite, | or will unite. |
| <i>Ellos unirán,</i> | they shall unite, | or will unite. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo uniría,</i> | I should unite, | or would unite. |
| <i>Tú unirías,</i> | thou shouldst unite, | or wouldst unite. |
| <i>El uniría,</i> | he should unite, | or would unite. |
| <i>Nosotros uniríamos,</i> | we should unite, | or would unite. |
| <i>Vosotros uniríais,</i> | you should unite, | or would unite. |
| <i>Ellos unirían,</i> | they should unite, | or would unite. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Uné, unite (thou).

Unid, unite (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo una,</i> | that I may unite. |
| <i>Que tú unas,</i> | that thou mayst unite. |
| <i>Que él una,</i> | that he may unite. |
| <i>Que nosotros unamos,</i> | that we may unite. |
| <i>Que vosotros unais,</i> | that you may unite. |
| <i>Que ellos unan,</i> | that they may unite. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Yo uniré,</i> | <i>tú unirás,</i> | <i>él unirá,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros uniremos,</i> | <i>vosotros uniréis</i> | <i>ellos unirán</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Que yo uniera,</i> | or <i>uniese,</i> | that I might unite. |
| <i>Que tu unieras,</i> | or <i>unieses,</i> | that thou mightst unite. |
| <i>Que él uniera,</i> | or <i>uniese,</i> | that he might unite. |
| <i>Que nosotros uniéramos,</i> | or <i>uniésemos,</i> | that we might unite. |
| <i>Que vosotros uniérais,</i> | or <i>uniéseis,</i> | that you might unite. |
| <i>Que ellos unieran,</i> | or <i>uniesen,</i> | that they might unite. |

124. Although most verbs ending with **ir** in the infinitive are conjugated like *unir*, to unite, we have met only one regular one in our text, so far,—*vivir*, to live.

Abrir, to open; *decir*, to tell; *dormir*, to sleep; *escribir*, to write; *ir*, to go; *preferir*, to prefer; *producir*, to produce; *seguir*, to follow; and *servir*, to serve, are irregular, and will be explained later.

El *del Obispo.*

125. There are two ways of saying this in English—*that of the bishop*, and *the bishop's*. In Spanish there is but one—*that of the bishop*; and all sentences of the kind have to be translated according to this model.

126. When **THAT** is not opposed to **THIS**, it literally means *the one*, and has to be replaced in Spanish by the article **THE**—**el, la, las, los**.

Que es el virey, who is the viceroy.

127. **Who** and **whom** are translated by **quien**, as an interrogative, and by **que**, as a relative (see Rule 103); but when preceded by a preposition, **whom** is generally translated by **quien** or **cual**, for the singular, and by **quienes** or **cuales**, for the plural.

Ex. *Del cual*, or *de quien*, of whom.

Flor, flower, is feminine by exception.

Visitar, to visit, and *contemplar*, to contemplate, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Rivalizar*, to rival; *recomendar*, to recommend; *parecer*, to appear; *poder*, to be able; *hacer* to make; and *crecer*, to grow, are irregular, and will be explained later.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I live, 124. | 16. I should live. |
| 2. He lives. | 17. He should live. |
| 3. We live. | 18. We should live. |
| 4. You live. | 19. You should live. |
| 5. They live. | 20. They should live. |
| 6. I lived. | 21. I have lived. |
| 7. He lived. | 22. He has lived. |
| 8. We lived. | 23. We have lived. |
| 9. You lived. | 24. You have lived. |
| 10. They lived. | 25. They have lived. |
| 11. I shall live. | 26. Let him live. |
| 12. He shall live. | 27. Let us live. |
| 13. We shall live. | 28. Let them live. |
| 14. You shall live. | 29. Live (you). |
| 15. They shall live. | 30. Living. |

31. My hat or that of my brother, 125.—32. My dress or that of my sister, 125.—33. Who is there? 127.—34. What have you there? 108.—35. Which books are these? 104.—36. Who has the finest garden near Havana? 127.—37. The Bishop has the largest.—38. Has the Captain-general of Cuba a son?—39. No, sir, he has no son, but he has four beautiful daughters.—40. Are they rich?—41. They are very rich.—42. He lives in the country, 119.—43. Cuba is a fine country, 119.—44. It produces much tobacco, and the best cigars are made there, 120.—45. My book or my father's, 125.—46. Your coat and your son's, 125.—47. Who is this? 127.—48. The brother of the gentleman of whom I spoke to you, 127.

* See notes on page 7.

ELEVENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.*

Leccion undécima.

Lesson eleventh.

La Aritmética.

The Arithmetic.

La Aritmética nos enseña la adición, la
The Arithmetic us teaches the addition, the
sustracción, la multiplicación y la división.
subtraction, the multiplication, and the division.

Diez y seis y uno son diez y siete. Deduciendo
Ten and six and one are ten and seven. Subtracting

diez y ocho de diez y nueve queda uno. Dos
ten and eight from ten and nine leaves one. Two

veces diez son veinte. Tres cabe siete
times ten are twenty. Three is contained seven

veces entre veintiuno. Los días de la
times in twenty-one. The days of the

semana se llaman: Lunes, Martes, Miér-
week themselves call: Monday, Tuesday, Wed-

coles, Jueves, Viernes, Sábado y Domingo
nesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, and Sunday.

Hay doce meses en el año: Enero
There are twelve months in the year: January,

Febrero, Marzo, Abril, Mayo, Junio, Julio,
February, March. April, May, June, July,

Agosto, Setiembre, Octubre, Noviembre y
August, September, October, November, and

* See notes on page 75.

Diciembre. Los números que no hemos
 December. The numbers which not we have
visto todavía son: treinta, cuarenta,
 seen yet are: thirty, forty,
cincuenta, sesenta, setenta, ochenta,
 fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty,
noventa, ciento, mil. Un medio y un
 ninety, hundred, thousand. A half and a
tresavo son cinco seisavos.
 third are five sixths.

The same in good English.

LA ARITMÉTICA.

La Aritmética nos enseña la adición, la sustracción, la multiplicación y la división. Diez y seis y uno son diez y siete. Deduciendo diez y ocho de diez y nueve queda uno. Dos veces diez son veinte. Tres cabe siete veces entre veintiuno. Los días de la semana se llaman: Lunes, Martes, Miércoles, Jueves, Viérnes, Sábado y Domingo. Hay doce meses en el año: Enero, Febrero, Marzo, Abril, Mayo, Junio, Julio, Agosto, Setiembre, Octubre, Noviembre y Diciembre. Los números que lo hemos visto todavía son: treinta, cuarenta, cincuenta, sesenta, setenta, ochenta, noventa, ciento, mil. Un medio y un tresavo son cinco seisavos.

ARITHMETIC.

Arithmetic teaches us to add, to subtract, to multiply, and to divide. Sixteen and one are seventeen. Take eighteen from nineteen, leaves one. Twice ten are twenty. Seven goes three times into twenty-one. The days of the week are: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, and Sunday. There are twelve months in the year: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, and December. The numbers which we have not yet seen, are thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety, hundred, thousand. A half and a third are five-sixths.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que lección es esta?
 ¿Que nos enseña la aritmética?

La undécima.
 La adición, la sustracción, la multiplicación y la división.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿Cuántos son diez y seis y uno? | Diez y siete. |
| ¿Deduciendo diez y ocho de diez y nueve cuanto queda? | Uno. |
| ¿Cuántos son dos veces diez? | Veinta. |
| ¿Cuántas veces cabe siete entre veintiuno? | Tres veces. |
| ¿Cuántos días hay en la semana? | Siete. |
| ¿Cómo se llaman? | Lunes, Martes, Miércoles, Jueves, Viernes, Sábado y Domingo. |
| ¿Cuántos meses hay en el año? | Doce. |
| ¿Cómo se llaman? | Enero, Febrero, Marzo, Abril, Mayo, Junio, Julio, Agosto, Setiembre, Octubre, Noviembre y Diciembre. |
| ¿Cuántos son quince y quince? | Treinta. |
| ¿Y veinte y veinte? | Cuarenta. |
| ¿Cuántos son cinco veces diez? | Cincuenta. |
| ¿Y seis veces diez? | Sesenta. |
| ¿Y siete veces diez? | Setenta. |
| ¿Y ocho veces diez? | Ochenta. |
| ¿Y nueve veces diez? | Noventa. |
| ¿Y diez veces diez? | Ciento. |
| ¿Y diez veces ciento? | Mil. |
| ¿Cuántos son un medio y un tresavo? | Cinco seisavos. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Mi aritmética.
 Una adición.
 Una sustracción.
 Un año.
 Un mes.
 Una semana.
 Un día.
 El primero.
 Lunes, el dos de Enero.
 Martes, el tres de Febrero.
 Miércoles, el cuarto de Marzo.
 Jueves, el cinco de Abril.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

My arithmetic.
 An addition.
 A subtraction.
 A year.
 A month.
 A week.
 A day.
 The first.
 Monday, the second of January.
 Tuesday, the third of February.
 Wednesday, the fourth of March.
 Thursday, the fifth of April.

Viernes, el seis de Mayo.
 Sábado, el siete de Junio.
 Domingo, el ocho de Julio.
 Tenemos el nueve de Agosto.
 Hay siete días en la semana.
 ¿Cuántos días tiene Setiembre?
 Setiembre tiene treinta días.
 ¿Y Octubre?
 Octubre tiene treinta y uno.
 ¿Que debemos estudiar para saber
 la aritmética?
 La adición, la sustracción, la
 multiplicación y la división.
 ¿Cuántos son cuatro y cinco?
 Cuatro y cinco son nueve.
 Ocho menos siete es uno.
 Dos veces tres son seis.
 Tres entre doce cabe cuatro veces.
 Veinte y diez son treinta.
 Treinta y diez son cuarenta.
 Cuarenta y diez son cincuenta.
 Dos veces cincuenta son ciento.

Friday, the sixth of May.
 Saturday, the seventh of June.
 Sunday, the eighth of July.
 We have the ninth of August.
 There are seven days in a week.
 How many days has September
 September has thirty days.
 And October?
 October has thirty-one.
 What must we study, to know
 arithmetic?
 Addition, subtraction, multipli-
 cation, and division.
 How many are four and five?
 Four and five are nine.
 Seven from eight, leaves one.
 Twice three are six.
 Three goes four times into twelve
 Twenty and ten are thirty.
 Thirty and ten are forty.
 Forty and ten are fifty.
 Twice fifty are a hundred.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Nos enseña, teaches us.

128. **Nos** corresponds usually to us and to us; but after *es*, it is, *que*, than, and *como*, as, to us has generally to be translated by **á nosotros**.

Ex. *Es á nosotros que habla*, it is to us he speaks.

Se llaman, are called;

literally,

call themselves.

129. The passive form is less frequently used in Spanish than in English; and verbs which should be passive according to the sense, often take the pronominal form in Spanish, as in

the above example. See Rule 9. This idiomatic construction will not surprise an English student, if he considers that in his own language there is an equivalent impropriety when we say, *The door opens*, for *the door is opened* ;—*The books never sold*, for *the books were never sold*. These phrases would be rendered in Spanish by, *La puerta se abre* ;—*Los libros nunca se han vendido*.

130. A pronominal verb is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, both placed before it, except in the imperative, infinitive, and participle present. See Rules 17, 101. The corresponding pronouns for each person are: **Yo me** (I myself), **Tú te** (thou thyself), **El se** (he himself), **Ella se** (she herself), **Nosotros nos** (we ourselves), **Vosotros os** (you yourselves), **Ellos** or **ellas se** (they themselves).

MODEL OF THE PRONOMINAL FORM OF CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Lavarse, to wash one's self.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Lavándose, washing one's self.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo me lavo,</i> | I wash myself, | or do wash myself. |
| <i>Tú te lavas,</i> | thou wastest thyself, | or dost wash thyself. |
| <i>El se lava,</i> | he washes himself, | or does wash himself. |
| <i>Nosotros nos lavamos,</i> | we wash ourselves, | or do wash ourselves. |
| <i>Vosotros os lavais,</i> | you wash yourselves, | or do wash yourselves. |
| <i>Ellos se lavan,</i> | they wash themselves, | or do wash themselves. |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Yo me lavaba,</i> | I washed myself. |
| <i>Tú te lavabas,</i> | thou wastedest thyself. |
| <i>El se lavaba,</i> | he washed himself. |
| <i>Nosotros nos lavábamos,</i> | we washed ourselves. |
| <i>Vosotros os lavábais,</i> | you washed yourselves. |
| <i>Ellos se lavaban,</i> | they washed themselves. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Yo me lavé,</i> | I washed or did wash myself. |
| <i>Tú te lavaste,</i> | thou washedest or didst wash thyself. |
| <i>El se lavó,</i> | he washed or did wash himself. |
| <i>Nosotros nos lavámos,</i> | we washed or did wash ourselves. |
| <i>Vosotros os lavásteis,</i> | you washed or did wash yourselves. |
| <i>Ellos se lavaron,</i> | they washed or did wash themselves. |

FUTURE.*

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Yo me lavaré,</i> | I shall or will wash myself. |
| <i>Tú te lavarás,</i> | thou shalt or wilt wash thyself. |
| <i>El se lavará,</i> | he shall or will wash himself. |
| <i>Nosotros nos lavaremos,</i> | we shall or will wash ourselves. |
| <i>Vosotros os lavaréis,</i> | you shall or will wash yourselves. |
| <i>Ellos se lavarán,</i> | they shall or will wash themselves. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <i>Yo me lavaría,</i> | I should or would wash myself. |
| <i>Tú te lavarías,</i> | thou shouldst or wouldst wash thyself. |
| <i>El se lavaría,</i> | he should or would wash himself. |
| <i>Nosotros nos lavaríamos,</i> | we should or would wash ourselves. |
| <i>Vosotros os lavaríais,</i> | you should or would wash yourselves. |
| <i>Ellos se lavarían,</i> | they should or would wash themselves. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>Lávate,</i> | wash thyself. |
| <i>Lavados,</i> | wash yourselves. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Que yo me lave,</i> | that I may wash myself. |
| <i>Que tú te laves,</i> | that thou mayst wash thyself. |
| <i>Que él se lave,</i> | that he may wash himself. |
| <i>Que nosotros nos lavemos,</i> | that we may wash ourselves. |
| <i>Que vosotros os laveis,</i> | that you may wash yourselves. |
| <i>Que ellos se laven,</i> | that they may wash themselves. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Yo me lavare,</i> | <i>tú te lavares,</i> | <i>él se lavare,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros nos laváremos,</i> | <i>vosotros os laváreis,</i> | <i>ellos se lavaren.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Que yo me lavara,</i> | or <i>lavase,</i> | that I might | } <i>WASH HIMSELF, ETC.</i> |
| <i>Que tú te lavarás,</i> | or <i>lavases,</i> | that thou mightst | |
| <i>Que él se lavara,</i> | or <i>lavase,</i> | that he might | |
| <i>Que nosotros nos laváramos,</i> | or <i>lavásemos,</i> | that we might | |
| <i>Que vosotros os lavarais,</i> | or <i>laváseis,</i> | that you might | |
| <i>Que ellos se lavaran,</i> | or <i>lavasen,</i> | that they might | |

131. Almost all transitive verbs may be conjugated pronominally. Some are, then, pronominal in both languages; as, *Ocuparse* to occupy one's self; *conservarse*, to preserve one's self; *unirse*, to unite one's self, etc. Others are pronominal in one and passive in the other; as, *Llamarse*, to be called, or to call one's self: and some are pronominal in Spanish and neuter in English, as, *llevarse*, to get up—literally, to get one's self up.

Ciento, hundred.

132. When placed before a noun or adjective, *ciento* becomes *cien* for both genders; but *cientos* becomes *cientas* in the following numbers, when joined to a feminine word.

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>Doscientos,</i> | two hundred. | <i>Seiscientos,</i> | six hundred. |
| <i>Trescientos,</i> | three hundred. | <i>Setecientos,</i> | seven hundred. |
| <i>Cuatrocientos,</i> | four hundred. | <i>Ochocientos,</i> | eight hundred. |
| <i>Quinientos,</i> | five hundred. | <i>Novcientos,</i> | nine hundred. |

It will be well to observe that *quinientos*, five hundred; *setecientos*, seven hundred; and *novecientos*, nine hundred, are formed irregularly.

Un tresavo, a third.

133. *Tresavo*, third, should not be confounded with *tercero*, third, already seen. In English, the fractional numbers are like the ordinal, but in Spanish they have a particular ending, the termination *avo* being added to the cardinal form, thus:

| | | | |
|--|-------|----------------------|-----------|
| <i>Cuatro,</i> | four. | <i>Un cuatroavo,</i> | a fourth. |
| <i>Cinco,</i> | five. | <i>Un cincoavo,</i> | a fifth. |
| <i>Dos cincoavos,</i> two-fifths, etc. | | | |

Take notice that *avo* is changed to *avos* in the plural.

Enseñar, to teach, is a regular verb of the first conjugation
Caber, to contain, or to be contained, and *deducir*, to deduct,
 are irregular, and will be explained later.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I occupy myself, 130. | 19. I am called, 129, 130. |
| 2. He occupies himself. | 20. He is called. |
| 3. She occupies herself. | 21. She is called. |
| 4. We occupy ourselves. | 22. We are called. |
| 5. You occupy yourselves. | 23. You are called. |
| 6. They occupy themselves. | 24. They are called. |
| 7. I have occupied myself. | 25. I get up. |
| 8. He has occupied himself. | 26. He gets up. |
| 9. She has occupied herself. | 27. She gets up. |
| 10. We have occupied ourselves. | 28. We get up. |
| 11. You have occupied yourselves. | 29. You get up. |
| 12. They have occupied themselves. | 30. They get up. |
| 13. I shall occupy myself. | 31. I unite myself. |
| 14. He shall occupy himself. | 32. He unites himself. |
| 15. She shall occupy herself. | 33. She unites herself. |
| 16. We shall occupy ourselves. | 34. We unite ourselves. |
| 17. You shall occupy yourselves. | 35. You unite yourselves. |
| 18. They shall occupy themselves. | 36. They unite themselves. |

37. He teaches us, 128.—38. You teach me.—39. They teach them.—40. Twenty-one and twenty-two are forty-three.—41. Thirty and fifty are eighty.—42. Here are twenty-five pencils and a hundred and forty-four pens, 132.—43. Many flowers.—44. Several trees.—45. Two hundred oxen and eight hundred cows, 132.—46. Five hundred boys and six hundred girls, 132.—47. Thursday, the fourth of July.—48. One-quarter and one-fifth are nine-twentieths, 133.—49. One-sixth from one-fifth leaves one-thirtieth, 133.—50. One-seventh, 133.

* See notes on page 7.

TWELFTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART

Literál Translation.*

Leccion duodécima.

Lesson twelfth.

La Geografía.

The Geography.

El globo consiste de tierra y de agua.

The globe consists of earth and of water.

Uno de los mas agradables paises del

One of the most agreeable countries of the

mundo es la España, con su dependencia

world is the Spain, with its dependency

muy importante de Cuba en las Antillas.

very important of Cuba in the Antilles.

La España está situada al sur de Europa :

The Spain is situated at the south of Europe :

sus límites son, al norte los Pirineos y la

its limits are, at the north the Pyrenees and the

Francia, al oriente el mar Mediterráneo,

France, at the east the sea Mediterranean,

al occidente el océano Atlántico y

at the west the ocean Atlantic and

Portugal, y al sur el estrecho de

Portugal, and at the south the strait of

Gibraltar. El agua es salada ó fresca

Gibraltar. The water is salt or fresh.

Un lago es un mar chico de agua fresca

A lake is a sea small of water fresh.

* See notes on page 75.

Los mas grandes lagos y rios estan
 The most large lakes and rivers are
en los Estados Unidos de América.
 in the States United of America.

Relampaguea. Truena. Llueve. Graniza.
 It lightens. It thunders. It rains. It hails.

Nieva. Hielo. Deshielo.
 It snows. It freezes. It thaws.

The same in good English.

LA GEOGRAFÍA.

El globo consiste de tierra y de agua. Uno de los mas agradables paises del mundo es la España, con su dependencia muy importante de Cuba en las Antillas. La España está situada al sur de Europa: sus límites son, al norte los Pirineos y la Francia, al oriente el mar Mediterráneo, al occidente el océano Atlántico y Portugal, y al sur el estrecho de Gibraltar. El agua es salada ó fresca. Un lago es un mar chico de agua fresca. Los mas grandes lagos y rios estan en los Estados Unidos de América. Relampaguea. Truena. Llueve. Graniza. Nieva. Hielo. Deshielo.

GEOGRAPHY.

The earth is divided into land and water. One of the most agreeable countries in the world is Spain, with its valuable dependency, the island of Cuba, in the West Indies. Spain is situated at the south of Europe. It is bounded on the north by the Pyrenean mountains and France, on the east by the Mediterranean sea, on the west by the Atlantic ocean and Portugal, and at the south by the straits of Gibraltar. A lake is a small sea of fresh water. The largest lakes and rivers are in the United States of America. It lightens. It thunders. It rains. It hails. It snows. It freezes. It thaws.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿ Que leccion es esta ?
 ¿ De que consiste el globo ?
 ¿ Que consiste de tierra y de agua ?
 ¿ Que clase de pais es la España ?

La duodécima.
 El globo consiste de tierra y de agua.
 El globo.
 Uno de los mas agradables del mundo.

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| ¿Que dependencia importante tiene la España? | La isla de Juba. |
| ¿Donde está la isla de Cuba? | En las Antillas. |
| ¿Donde está situada la España? | Al sur de Europa. |
| ¿Cuales son sus límites al norte? | Los Pirineos y la Francia. |
| ¿Y al oriente? | El mar Mediterráneo. |
| ¿Y al occidente? | El océano Atlántico y Portugal. |
| ¿Y al sur? | El estrecho de Gibraltar. |
| ¿Como es el agua? | El agua es salada o fresca. |
| ¿Que es un lago? | Un mar chico de agua fresca. |
| ¿Donde estan los mas grandes lagos y rios? | En los Estados Unidos de America. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El globo.
 La tierra.
 El país.
 El mundo.
 El norte.
 El sur.
 El oriente.
 El occidente.
 Un lago.
 Un estrecho.
 Un río.
 Los Estados Unidos.
 La Francia, la España y la América.
 El mar ó el océano.
 ¿Ha estudiado V. la geografía?
 No la he estudiado todavía.
 ¿Sabe V. algo de la España?
 Sé donde está situada.
 Dígame V. sus límites.
 ¿Donde está el estrecho de Gibraltar?
 Entre el océano Atlántico y el mar Mediterráneo.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The globe.
 The earth.
 The country.
 The world.
 The north.
 The south.
 The east.
 The west.
 A lake.
 A strait.
 A river.
 The United States.
 France, Spain, and America.
 The sea or the ocean.
 Have you studied geography?
 I have not yet studied it.
 Do you know any thing about Spain?
 I know where it is situated.
 Tell me its limits.
 Where are the straits of Gibraltar?
 Between the Atlantic ocean and the Mediterranean sea.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿Qual es la primera ciudad de Cuba? | Which is the principal city of Cuba? |
| La mas importante es la Habana. | The most important is Havana. |
| El Virey tiene una finca bonita cerca de esta ciudad. | The Viceroy has a nice country-seat near this city. |
| Y el Obispo tiene un jardin muy hermoso. | And the Bishop has a very fine garden. |
| ¿Quiere V. ir conmigo al jardin? | Will you go with me to the garden? |
| Hace demasiado calor. | It is too warm. |
| ¿Tiene V. miedo de ir? | Are you afraid to go? |
| Si, señor, tengo miedo del perro. | Yes, sir, I am afraid of the dog. |
| ¿Hay algunos pájaros en el jardin? | Are there any birds in the garden? |
| Hay papagayos y canarios. | There are parrots and canaries. |
| ¿Sabe V. su leccion? | Do you know your lesson? |
| La sé bastante bien. | I know it pretty well. |
| La he estudiado mucho. | I have studied it a great deal. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

El estrecho, the straits.

134. In English, certain words are used only in the singular, as *knowledge*, *progress*; and others only in the plural, as *axes*, *scissors*, etc. In Spanish, *estrecho* has a singular and a plural.

El agua, the water.

135. The determinatives *THE*, *A*, *AN*, etc., are often used in the masculine instead of the feminine before nouns beginning with an accented *a*, for the sake of euphony, and to avoid the too frequent recurrence of two *a*'s following each other.

Ex. *El ama*, the mistress of the house.

El alma, the soul.

El águila, the eagle, etc.

Relampaguea, it lightens.

136. Impersonal verbs are generally used only in the form of the third person singular, and without any pronoun.

MODEL OF CONJUGATION FOR THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Relampaguear, to lighten.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Relampagueando, lightening. *Relampagueado*, lightened.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Relampaguea, it lightens.

IMPERFECT.

Relampagueaba, it lightened, or used to lighten.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

Relampagueó, it lightened, or did lighten.

FUTURE.*

Relampagueará, it shall lighten, or will lighten.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Relampaguearía, it should lighten, or would lighten

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Relampaguee, that it may lighten.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Relampagueara, or *relampaguease*, that it might lighten.*Truena*, it thunders, from *tronar*, to thunder.

137. Many verbs ending with **ar**, and some ending with **er** in the infinitive, whose termination is preceded by a syllable containing an **o**, change this **o** into **ue** in the first, second, and third person singular, and third person plural, of the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, as in the following examples :

* The second future is (see : etc on page 25) : *Relampagueara*.

Mostrar, to show.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo muestro,</i> | I show, | or do show. |
| <i>Tú muestras,</i> | thou showest, | or dost show. |
| <i>El muestra,</i> | he shows, | or does show. |
| <i>Ellos muestran,</i> | they show, | or do show. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Muestra, show (thou).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo muestre,</i> | that I may show. |
| <i>Que tú muestres,</i> | that thou mayst show. |
| <i>Que él muestre,</i> | that he may show. |
| <i>Que ellos muestren,</i> | that they may show. |

Mover, to move.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo muevo,</i> | I move, | or do move. |
| <i>Tú mueves,</i> | thou movest, | or dost move. |
| <i>El mueve,</i> | he moves, | or does move. |
| <i>Ellos mueven,</i> | they move, | or do move. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mueve, move (thou).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo mueva,</i> | that I may move. |
| <i>Que tú muevas,</i> | that thou mayst move. |
| <i>Que él mueva,</i> | that he may move. |
| <i>Que ellos muevan,</i> | that they may move. |

In all other parts they are regular. Those of this class already seen are : *Llover*, to rain ; *encontrar*, to meet ; *almorzar*,

to breakfast; *acostar*, to go to bed; and *costar*, to cost. The rest will be explained as they occur in the text.

Nieva, it snows, from *nevar*, to snow.

128. Many verbs ending with *ar*, and some ending with *er* in the infinitive, whose termination is preceded by a syllable containing an *e*, take an *i* before that *e* in the first, second, and third person singular, and third person plural, of the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, as in the following examples :

Quebrar, to break.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo quiebro,</i> | I break, | or do break. |
| <i>Tú quiebras,</i> | thou breakest, | or dost break. |
| <i>El quiebra,</i> | he breaks, | or does break. |
| <i>Ellos quiebran,</i> | they break, | or do break. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Quiebra, break (thou).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo quiebre,</i> | that I may break. |
| <i>Que tú quiebres,</i> | that thou mayst break |
| <i>Que él quiebre,</i> | that he may break. |
| <i>Que ellos quiebren,</i> | that they may break. |

Perder, to lose.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo pierdo,</i> | I lose, | or do lose. |
| <i>Tú pierdes,</i> | thou lovest, | or dost lose |
| <i>El pierde,</i> | he loses, | or does lose |
| <i>Ellos pierden,</i> | they lose, | or do lose. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pierde, lose (thou).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que yo pierda, that I may lose.
Que tú pierdas, that thou mayst lose.
Que él pierda, that he may lose.
Que ellos pierdan, that they may lose.

In all other parts they are regular. Those of this class already seen are: *Helar*, to freeze; *deshelar*, to thaw; *despertar*, to awake; *pensar*, to think; and *recomendar*, to recommend. The rest will be explained as they occur in the text.

139. One of the most important impersonal verbs is *haber* in the sense of *there to be*, which is conjugated as follows:

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Haber, there to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Hay, there is, or there are.

IMPERFECT.

Habia, there was, or there were.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

Hubo, there was, or there were.

FUTURE.*

Habrá, there shall be, or will be.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Hubiera, there should be, or would be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Haya, that there may be.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Hubiera, or *hubiese*, that there might be.

* The second future is (see note on page 25): *Hubiere*.

Consistir, to consist, is a regular verb of the third conjugation.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. It hails, 136. | 19. It rains, 137. |
| 2. It hailed. | 20. It rained. |
| 3. It will hail. | 21. It will rain. |
| 4. It would hail. | 22. It would rain. |
| 5. Hailing. | 23. Raining. |
| 6. It has hailed. | 24. It has rained. |
| 7. It had hailed. | 25. It had rained. |
| 8. I breakfast, 137. | 26. I think, 138. |
| 9. He breakfasts. | 27. He thinks. |
| 10. We breakfast. | 28. We think. |
| 11. You breakfast. | 29. You think. |
| 12. They breakfast. | 30. They think. |
| 13. I breakfasted. | 31. I thought. |
| 14. I shall breakfast. | 32. I shall think. |
| 15. I should breakfast. | 33. I should think. |
| 16. Let him breakfast. | 34. Let him think. |
| 17. Breakfast. | 35. Think. |
| 18. I have breakfasted. | 36. I have thought. |
37. It will snow, 138.—38. It has thundered, 136.—39. It costs, 137.—40. It has cost, 137.—41. I go to bed, 137.—42. I awake, 138.—43. That he may awake, 138.—44. Go to bed, 138.—45. There are several islands near the city, 139.—46. Does it lighten much at the south? 136.—47. It lightens very frequently in all tropical countries, 136.—48. Does it hail there also? 136.—49. Sometimes.—50. Are there many children in the park? 139.—51. There are many boys and girls, 139.

* See notes on page 7.

† See note on page 85.

THIRTEENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion décimatercia.*

Lesson

thirteenth.

Anécdota.

Anecdote.

Encontrando un día un adulator, que
Meeting one day a flatterer, who
vivia de la adulacion, á un antiguo
lived of the adulation, † an old
condiscípulo suyo el cual habia tenido
comrade his the which had had
que dejar sus estudios y aplicarse á un
to quit his studies and to apply himself to a
trabajo mecánico para ganar su subsisten-
labor mechanic in order to gain his livelihood
cia, y compadecido de su suerte, le dijo:
and touched with his destiny, him said:
¿Porqué no aprendes á agradar, y entónces
Why not thou learnest to please, and then
no te verás precisado á ganar el pan
not thee thou shalt see obliged to gain the bread
con el trabajo de tus manos? ¿Porqué, le
with the work of thy hands? Why, him
replicó el otro, no aprendes tú á trabajar,
replied the other, not learnest thou to work,
y no tendrás necesidad de ser esclavo?
and not thou shalt have need to be slave?

* See notes on page 75.

† See Rule 140, on page 104.

The same in good English.

ANÉCDOTA.

Encontrando un día un adulador, que vivía de la adulación, á un antiguo condiscípulo suyo el cual había tenido que dejar sus estudios y aplicarse á un trabajo mecánico para ganar su subsistencia, y compadecido de su suerte, le dijo: ¿Porqué no aprendes á agradar, y entónces no te verás precisado á ganar el pan con el trabajo de tus manos? ¿Porqué, le replicó el otro, no aprendes tú á trabajar, y no tendrás necesidad de ser esclavo?

ANECOTE.

A flatterer who lived by flattery, meeting one day one of his old schoolmates who had been compelled to abandon his studies and to devote himself to mechanical pursuits in order to gain his livelihood—pitying his fate, asked him: "Why dost thou not learn to flatter? thou wouldst then no longer be compelled to earn thy bread by the labor of thy hands." The other replied, "Why dost thou not learn to work? thou wouldst then have no need to be a slave."

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ¿Que lección es esta? | La décimatercia. |
| ¿De quien habla esta anécdota? | De un adulador. |
| ¿De que vivía este adulador? | De la adulación. |
| ¿A quien encontró un día? | A un antiguo condiscípulo suyo. |
| ¿Que había tenido que dejar este condiscípulo? | Sus estudios. |
| ¿Y á que había tenido que aplicarse? | A un trabajo mecánico. |
| ¿Para que? | Para ganar su subsistencia. |
| ¿De que se compadeció el adulador? | De la suerte de su antiguo condiscípulo. |
| ¿Y que le dijo? | ¿Porqué no aprendes á agradar? |
| ¿Porqué? | No te verás entónces precisado á ganar el pan con el trabajo de tus manos. |
| ¿Que le replicó el otro? | ¿Porqué no aprendes tú á trabajar, y no tendrás necesidad de ser esclavo? |
| ¿Quien encontró un día á un antiguo condiscípulo suyo? | Un adulador. |
| ¿Que le dijo? | Aprende á agradar. |
| ¿Y que le replicó el otro? | Aprende á trabajar. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La anécdota.
 El adulador.
 El condiscípulo.
 El esclavo.
 Sus estudios de V.
 Nuestra subsistencia.
 Vuestra suerte.
 Tus manos.
 Tu adulación.
 La necesidad.
 El trabajo.
 ¿Ha leído V. la anécdota del adulador?
 La he leído.
 ¿Que piensa V. de ella?
 Pienso que es una anécdota muy bonita.
 ¿Que piensa V. del adulador?
 Es un hombre malo.
 ¿Prefiere V. el trabajo á los estudios?
 Prefiero el comercio.
 ¿Como gana su subsistencia un buhonero?
 Comprando y vendiendo.
 ¿Y como la ganan otros ciudadanos?
 Con el trabajo de sus manos.
 ¿Es el vivir caro aquí?
 Es muy barato.
 ¿Quiere V. darme algun trabajo?
 Quiero dar á V. bastante trabajo.
 ¿Cuanto quiere V. pagarme?
 Tres pesos todos los dias.
 Muchas gracias.
 ¿Sabe V. leer?
 Sé leer y escribir.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The anecdote.
 The flatterer.
 The schoolfellow.
 The slave.
 Your studies.
 Our livelihood.
 Your fate.
 Thy hands.
 Thy flattery.
 The necessity.
 The labor.
 Have you read the anecdote of the flatterer?
 I have read it.
 What do you think of it?
 I find it quite a pleasant story.
 What do you think of the flatterer?
 He is a bad man.
 Do you prefer labor to study?
 I prefer commerce.
 How does a pedler gain his livelihood?
 By buying and selling.
 And how do other citizens gain it?
 By the labor of their hands.
 Is living dear here?
 It is very cheap.
 Will you give me some work?
 I will give you work enough.
 How much will you pay me?
 Three dollars every day.
 Thank you.
 Can you read?
 I can read and write.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Encontrando á un condiscipulo,
meeting a schoolfellow.

140 Most active transitive verbs require the preposition *á* before their direct regimen when that regimen is a person; but no preposition is added when the direct regimen is not a person.

Ex. *Encontrar á alguno,* to meet some one.

Encontrar alguna cosa, to meet something.

The verbs of this class already seen are :

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>Amar,</i> | to love. | <i>Lavar,</i> | to wash. |
| <i>Buscar,</i> | to look for. | <i>Llamar,</i> | to call. |
| <i>Conocer,</i> | to know. | <i>Llevar,</i> | to bring. |
| <i>Creer,</i> | to believe. | <i>Meter,</i> | to put. |
| <i>Dejar,</i> | to quit, to leave. | <i>Ocupar,</i> | to occupy. |
| <i>Encontrar,</i> | to meet. | <i>Poner,</i> | to put. |
| <i>Enseñar,</i> | to teach. | <i>Precisar,</i> | to force. |
| <i>Entender,</i> | to hear. | <i>Recomendar,</i> | to recommend. |
| <i>Enviar,</i> | to send. | <i>Recibir,</i> | to receive. |
| <i>Examinar,</i> | to examine. | <i>Servir,</i> | to serve. |
| <i>Hallar,</i> | to find. | <i>Ver,</i> | to see. |

The rest will be explained as they occur in the text. They will also be found each in its alphabetical place in the Index.

Un antiguo condiscipulo,
an old schoolfellow.

141. *Antiguo* could not be replaced here by *viejo*, old, already seen. *Antiguo* means, of long standing, or ancient, while *viejo* answers more particularly to old in years, worn out, or decayed

Un antiguo condiscipulo suyo,
or *Uno de sus antiguos condiscipulos,*
one of his old schoolfellows.

142. The possessive adjective may be placed *the noun* which it determines; but when it is

mio, tuyo, and suyo, have to be used instead of *mi, tu, su*, already seen. The changes of **mio, tuyo, suyo**, are: **mia, tuya, suya**, for the feminine singular; **mios, tuyos, suyos**, for the masculine plural; and **mias, tuyas, suyas**, for the feminine plural.

Ex. *Mi niño*, or *niño mio*, my boy.
Mi niña, or *niña mia*, my girl.
Mis hermanos, or *hermanos mios*, my brothers.
Mis hermanas, or *hermanas mias*, my sisters.

143. This completes the study of the possessive adjectives.

| | Before a word Masc. sing. | Before a word Fem. sing. | Before a word Masc. plur. | Before a word Fem. plur. |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| My, | mi, | mi, | mis, | mis. |
| Thy, | tu, | tu, | tus, | tus. |
| His, her, its, su, | su, | su, | sus, | sus. |
| Our, | nuestro, nuestra, nuestros, nuestras. | | | |
| Your, | vuestro, vuestra, vuestros, vuestras. | | | |
| Their, | su, | su, | sus, | sus. |

See, also, Rule 142.

Habia tenido que dejar, had had to quit.

144. To, before an infinitive, is generally translated by **que** after **tener**.

Ex. *Tengo que salir*, I have to go out.
El tiene que trabajar, he has to work.
Tenemos que estudiar, we have to study.

But this verb enters into the composition of a number of idiomatic expressions which require **de** or **á**. They will be explained as they occur in the text.

Aplicarse, to apply himself.

145. Verbs ending with **car** in the infinitive, change **o** into **qu** before **e**, in order that the root may preserve the sound of **t** throughout their conjugation.

Ex. *Aplicar*, to apply. *Fabricar*, to manufacture.
Apliqué, I did apply. *Fabriqué*, I did manufacture.

Compadecido de su suerte,
pitying his fate.

146. *Compadeciendo su suerte* would be as well. The past participle, used as an adjective, is generally followed by the preposition *de*.

147. Verbs ending with *cer* and *cir* take a *z* before *c*, when followed by *a* or *o*, to preserve to their root the soft sound of *c* throughout their conjugation.

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| Ex. <i>Compadecer,</i> | to pity. |
| <i>Yo compadezco,</i> | I pity. |
| <i>Que yo compadezca,</i> | that he may pity. |
| <i>Conocer,</i> | to know. |
| <i>Yo conozco,</i> | I know. |
| <i>Que yo conozca,</i> | that he may know. |

The exceptions to this rule are: *hacer*, to make; *cocer*, to cook; and the verbs ending with *ucir*, which will be explained later.

Le dijo, said to him.

148. HIM is translated by *le*, and HER by *la*; but TO HIM or TO HER, or HIM or HER, used for TO HIM or TO HER, are rendered indifferently by *le*.

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Ex. <i>Le veo,</i> | I see him. |
| <i>La veo,</i> | I see her. |
| <i>Le doy,</i> | I give him or her. |

149. It would be, perhaps, well to remark here, that *lo* is used almost as often as *le* for HIM, and that *la* is frequently introduced instead of *le* for TO HER; the Spanish Academicians being themselves divided on the proper use of these small words. Without entering upon an inquiry into the merits of this dispute, we would recommend the strict observance of our rules on the subject, rather than endanger the progress of the scholar by an injudicious attempt to follow the distracting inconsistencies met with in this respect, even in the purest and most classical writers of Spain. We will therefore reserve *lo* for the cases indicated in Rule 96, and *la* for HER.

No te verás, thou shalt not see thyself.

150. We have already seen in the verbs, that **THOU** is translated by **tú**, and **THERE, TO THERE, OR THYSELF**, by **te**. **Tú**, *thou*, has an accent over the *u*, to distinguish it from **tu**, *thy*. (143.)

151. The second person singular is more used in Spanish than in English; but as it is applicable only in familiar conversation between very intimate persons, it would seem better to abstain from it until a sufficient facility in general speaking shall have been acquired.

152. This completes the study of the personal pronouns, which are for the nominative case: **Yo**, *I*; **tú**, *thou*; **él**, *he, it*; **ella**, *she, it*; **nosotros, nosotras**, *we*; **vosotros. vosotras**, *you*; and **ellos, ellas**, *they*.

The personal pronouns for the objective case are:

Me, *me*, or *to me*; **te**, *thee*, or *to thee*; **le**, *him*, *to him*, or *to her*; **la**, *her*; **nos**, *us*, or *to us*; **vos**, *you*, or *to you*; **los, las**, *them*; and **les**, *to them*: unless joined to a preposition which has to be expressed in Spanish, when these pronouns are translated as follows:

| | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ME , | by mí , | except in <i>conmigo</i> , with me. |
| THERE , | " ti , | " <i>contigo</i> , with thee. |
| HIM , | " él , | " <i>consigo</i> , with him. |
| HER , | " ella , | " <i>consigo</i> , with her. |
| US , | " nosotros, nosotras . | |
| YOU , | " vosotros, vosotras . | |
| THEM , | " ellos, ellas , | except in <i>consigo</i> , with them. |

In the pronominal form, **se** is used for *himself, herself, themselves, to himself, to herself, and to themselves*.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ex. <i>El se lava,</i> | he washes himself. |
| <i>Ella se lava,</i> | she washes herself. |
| <i>Ellos se lavan,</i> | they wash themselves. |
| <i>El se dice,</i> | he says to himself. |
| <i>Ella se dice,</i> | she says to herself. |
| <i>Ellos se dicen,</i> | they say to themselves. |

153. When two or more pronouns follow each other in a sentence, **me, te, se, nos, os**, are always placed before **le, la, los, las**.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Envia me le,</i> | send him to me. |
| <i>No me le envia,</i> | do not send him to me. |
| <i>El me le envia,</i> | he sends him to me. |
| <i>El no me le envia,</i> | he does not send him to me. |

154. To avoid the coming together of **le le, le la, le lo, le los, le las, or le les**, on account of euphony only, to HIM, TO HER, TO IT, OR TO THEM, when joined to *him, her, it, or them*, is translated indiscriminately by **se**, which is of both genders and numbers; adding *á él, á ella, á ello, á ellos, or á ellas*, whenever clearness requires it. See Rules from 90 to 96.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Envia se la á él,</i> | send her to him. |
| <i>Envia se le á él,</i> | send it to him. |
| <i>Envia se los á él,</i> | send them to him. |
| <i>Envia se'los á ella,</i> | send them to her. |
| <i>No se le envia á ellos,</i> | do not send it to them. |
| <i>Se la envia á él,</i> | he sends her to him. |

Tus manos, thy hands.

155. **Thy** is translated by **tu** before a word singular, and by **tus** before a plural one. See Rules 143, 150, 151, in this lesson.

Necesidad, necessity.

156. Words ending with **dad** in Spanish, generally end with *ty* in English, with little or no other difference of orthography; as: *Libertad*, liberty; *fidelidad*, fidelity; *ciudad*, city, etc.

Suerte is feminine by exception.

Dejar, to quit, to leave; *ganar*, to gain; *agradar*, to please; *precisar*, to oblige; and *trabajar*, to work, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *aprender*, to learn, is of the second.

Decir, to say, to tell, and *ver*, to see, are irregular, and will be explained later.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. My schoolfellow, 143. | 20. My work, 143. |
| 2. Thy livelihood. | 21. Thy fate. |
| 3. His mother. | 22. Her father. |
| 4. Our boy. | 23. Our girl. |
| 5. Your brother. | 24. Your sister. |
| 6. Their gloves. | 25. Their clothes. |
| 7. My hat. | 26. My handkerchief. |
| 8. Thy chair. | 27. Thy sofas. |
| 9. His carpets. | 28. His tables. |
| 10. Our cakes. | 29. Our biscuits. |
| 11. Your store. | 30. Your merchandise |
| 12. Their needles. | 31. Their thread. |
| 13. To reply. | 32. To appear. |
| 14. I did reply, 145. | 33. I did appear, 147. |
| 15. That I may reply. | 34. That I may appear. |
| 16. That he may reply. | 35. That he may appear. |
| 17. That we may reply. | 36. That we may appear. |
| 18. That you may reply. | 37. That you may appear. |
| 19. That they may reply. | 38. That they may appear. |
39. Hast thou any thing? 150, 151.—40. I have nothing.—
 41. Where art thou? 150, 151.—42. I am here.—43. Where
 are thy books? 155.—44. They are upon the table.—45. Have
 I paid thee? 150, 151.—46. Thou hast paid me, 150, 151.—
 47. Where is he?—48. He is with us.—49. An old coat, 141.—
 50. Where have you met my brother?—51. I met him in
 the street.—52. What have you to do? 144.—53. I have to
 work, 144.—54. I have to read, 144.—55. I have to write, 144
 —56. He washes the boys 140.—57. He washes his hands, 140
 —58. To see a man, 140.—59. To see a book, 140.—60. He
 left his brother, 140.—61. We leave school, 140.—62. To send
 a boy, 140.—63. To send something, 140.—64. Thy activity,
 155, 156.—65. Thy capacity, 155, 155.—66. Thy captivity.

* See notes on page 7.

FOURTEENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART

Literal Translation.*

Leccion décimacuarta.

Lesson fourteenth.

Presencia de Animo.

Presence of Mind.

Al principio de una batalla dada por el
At the beginning of a battle given by the
famoso Gonzalo de Córdoba á los Franceses
famous Gonzalo of Cordova to the French
en mil quinientos y tres, se voló el
in thousand five hundred and three, exploded the
almacen de pólvora de los Españoles.
magazine of powder of the Spaniards.
Esta casualidad podia tener funestas
This casualty could have unfavorable
resultas, pero la presencia de ánimo de
results, but the presence of mind of
Gonzalo sacó de ella las mayores ventajas.
Gonzalo drew from it the greatest advantages.
Animo, dice á sus soldados, la victoria
Courage, says he to his soldiers, the victory
es nuestra: el Cielo anuncia por esta
is ours: the Heaven announces through this
estrepitosa señal, que no necesitamos
loud signal that not we need
ya de artillería. Este breve discurso
now of artillery. This brief discourse

* See notes on page 75.

fortaleció de tal manera á la tropa, que
 strengthened in such way the troops, that
consiguieron una completa victoria.
 they obtained a complete victory.

The same in good English.

PRESENCIA DE ANIMO.

Al principio de una batalla dada por el famoso Gonzalo de Córdoba á los Franceses en mil quinientos y tres, se voló el almacén de pólvora de los Españoles. Esta casualidad podia tener funestas resultas, pero la presencia de ánimo de Gonzalo sacó de ella las mayores ventajas. Animo, dice á sus soldados, la victoria es nuestra: el Cielo anuncia por esta estrepitosa señal, que no necesitamos ya de artillería. Este breve discurso fortaleció de tal manera á la tropa, que consiguieron una completa victoria.

PRESENCE OF MIND.

The powder-magazine of the Spaniards having exploded at the beginning of a battle fought against the French in 1503, the famous Gonzalo de Cordova, their leader, knew how to turn this threatening misfortune to great advantage, by saying to his soldiers, "Courage—victory is ours: Heaven declares by this noisy signal that we have no need of artillery." This short speech encouraged his troops so much, that they completely routed the enemy.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| ¿ Que leccion es esta ? | La décimacuarta. |
| ¿ De que se habla en esta anécdota ? | De la presencia de ánimo de Gonzalo |
| ¿ Cuando mostró presencia de ánimo ? | Al principio de una batalla. |
| ¿ Por quien fué dada esta batalla ? | Por el famoso Gonzalo. |
| ¿ De que ciudad era Gonzalo ? | De Córdoba. |
| ¿ A quien fué dada la batalla ? | A los Franceses. |
| ¿ En que año ? | En el año mil quinientos y tres. |
| ¿ Que se voló en esta batalla ? | El almacén de pólvora de los Españoles. |
| ¿ Que podia tener esta casualidad ? | Funestas resultas. |
| ¿ Y que sacó Gonzalo de ella ? | Las mayores ventajas |

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿Que dijo á sus soldados? | Animo, la victoria es nuestra. |
| ¿Que nos anuncia el cielo? | Que no necesitamos ya de artillería. |
| ¿Por que señal? | Por esta estrepitosa señal. |
| ¿A quien fortaleció este discurso? | A la tropa. |
| De cua. manera? | De tal manera que consiguieron una completa victoria. |
| ¿Dígame V. que fortaleció á la tropa de tal manera? | El breve discurso de Gonzalo de Córdoba. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

| |
|---|
| El principio. |
| La batalla. |
| Una casualidad. |
| Una ventaja. |
| Un soldado. |
| La señal. |
| La artillería. |
| La resulta. |
| Un discurso. |
| Una victoria. |
| La presencia de ánimo. |
| El almacén de pólvora. |
| ¿Ha leído V. la anécdota? |
| Si, señor, la he leído. |
| ¿Quien fué Gonzalo? |
| Un famoso general español. |
| ¿De que ciudad era él? |
| De Córdoba. |
| ¿Dónde está situada Córdoba? |
| Al sur de España. |
| ¿Quiénes ganaron la batalla? |
| Los Españoles. |
| Los Americanos también han dado muchas batallas. |
| Los Franceses tienen la mejor artillería del mundo. |

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

| |
|--|
| The beginning. |
| The battle. |
| A casualty. |
| An advantage. |
| A soldier. |
| The signal. |
| The artillery. |
| The result. |
| A speech. |
| A victory. |
| The presence of mind. |
| The powder-magazine. |
| Have you read the anecdote? |
| Yes, sir, I have read it. |
| Who was Gonzalo? |
| A famous Spanish general. |
| Of what city was he? |
| Of Cordova. |
| Where is Cordova situated? |
| In the south of Spain. |
| Who won the battle? |
| The Spaniards. |
| The Americans have also fought many battles? |
| The French have the best artillery in the world. |

| | |
|---|--|
| Los Ingleses trafican mucho con los Estados Unidos. | The English trade a great deal with the United States. |
| ¿Oree V. que lloverá esta noche? | Do you think that it will rain this evening? |
| No lo sé. | I don't know. |
| El cielo está muy opaco. | The heavens are very black. |
| Oreo que tendremos un dia hermoso mañana. | I think we will have a fine day to-morrow. |
| ¿Que ventajas sacaré V. de esto? | What advantages will you derive from this? |
| Oreo que ganaré mucho dinero. | I think I shall gain much money. |
| El dinero es muy útil. | Money is very useful. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Por Gonzalo, by Gonzalo.

157. The preposition **por** is much used in Spanish. Corresponding to *pro* and *per* in Latin, it answers in turn to *per*, *by*, *through*, and *for*.

El famoso Gonzalo,
the famous Gonzalo.

158. The adjective is generally placed before the noun, whenever it is desirable to dwell upon it with emphasis.

Famoso, famous.

159. Words ending with *ous* in English, generally end with **oso** in Spanish, with little or no other difference of orthography; as, *Generoso*, generous; *numeroso*, numerous; *juicioso*, judicious, etc.

Mil quinientos y tres,
One thousand five hundred and three,
or, fifteen hundred and three.

160. *Quince cientos y tres* would not be correct. The Spaniards never say, *ten hundred*, *eleven hundred*, *twelve hundred*, etc., but always *thousand*, *thousand one hundred*, *thousand two hundred*, etc.

Los mayores, the greatest.

161. *Mayor* is the irregular comparative form of *grande*, large,

already seen. Its corresponding superlative is *máximo*, or *el mayor*, largest.

Fortaleció a la tropa,
encouraged the troops.

Fortalecer, to fortify, to encourage, is conjugated like *compacer*. See Rule 147. It requires to be followed by the preposition *a*. See Rule 140.

Consiguieron, they obtained.

162. *Consiguieron* is a form of *conseguir*, which is conjugated like *seguir*, to follow. Some verbs ending with *ir* in the infinitive, whose termination is preceded by a syllable containing an *e*, change that *e* into *i*, according to the following model :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Seguir, to follow.*

| PRESENT PARTICIPLE. | PAST PARTICIPLE |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Siguiendo</i> , following. | <i>Seguido</i> , followed |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo sigo</i> , | I follow, | or do follow. |
| <i>Tú sigues</i> , | thou followest, | or dost follow. |
| <i>El sigue</i> , | he follows, | or does follow. |
| <i>Nosotros seguimos</i> , | we follow, | or do follow. |
| <i>Vosotros seguís</i> , | you follow, | or do follow. |
| <i>Ellos siguen</i> , | they follow, | or do follow. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Yo seguía</i> , | I followed, | or used to follow. |
| <i>Tú seguías</i> , | thou followedst, | or usedst to follow. |
| <i>El seguía</i> , | he followed, | or used to follow. |
| <i>Nosotros seguíamos</i> , | we followed, | or used to follow. |
| <i>Vosotros seguíais</i> , | you followed, | or used to follow. |
| <i>Ellos seguían</i> , | they followed, | or used to follow. |

* It would be well to observe, that *seguir* has another peculiarity besides, inasmuch as it loses its *u*, like all verbs ending with *guir*, before *a* and *o*. This suppression is, however, common only to the verbs whose termination is *guir*, those ending with *guir* being conjugated like *arguir*. See Index.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo seguí,</i> | I followed, | or did follow. |
| <i>Tú seguiste,</i> | thou followedst, | or didst follow. |
| <i>El siguió,</i> | he followed, | or did follow. |
| <i>Nosotros seguimos,</i> | we followed, | or did follow. |
| <i>Vosotros seguisteis</i> | you followed, | or did follow. |
| <i>Ellos siguieron,</i> | they followed, | or did follow. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo seguiré,</i> | I shall follow, | or will follow. |
| <i>Tú seguirás,</i> | thou shalt follow, | or wilt follow. |
| <i>El seguirá,</i> | he shall follow, | or will follow. |
| <i>Nosotros seguiremos,</i> | we sha'll follow, | or will follow. |
| <i>Vosotros seguiréis,</i> | you shall follow, | or will follow. |
| <i>Ellos seguirán,</i> | they shall follow, | or will follow. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo seguiría,</i> | I should follow, | or would follow. |
| <i>Tú seguirías,</i> | thou shouldst follow, | or wouldst follow. |
| <i>El seguiría,</i> | he should follow, | or would follow. |
| <i>Nosotros seguiríamos,</i> | we should follow, | or would follow. |
| <i>Vosotros seguiríais,</i> | you should follow, | or would follow. |
| <i>Ellos seguirían,</i> | they should follow, | or would follow. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sigue, follow (thou).

Seguid, follow you.

SURJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo siga,</i> | that I may follow. |
| <i>Que tú sigas,</i> | that thou mayst follow. |
| <i>Que él siga,</i> | that he may follow. |
| <i>Que nosotros sigamos,</i> | that we may follow. |
| <i>Que vosotros sigais,</i> | that you may follow. |
| <i>Que ellos sigan,</i> | that they may follow. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

Yo seguiré, *tú seguirás,* *él seguirá,*
Nosotros seguiremos, *vosotros seguiréis,* *ellos seguirán.*

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Que yo siguiera,</i> | or <i>siguiere,</i> | that I might follow. |
| <i>Que tú siguieras,</i> | or <i>siguieres,</i> | that thou mightst follow. |
| <i>Que él siguiera,</i> | or <i>siguiere,</i> | that he might follow. |
| <i>Que nosotros siguiéramos,</i> | or <i>siguiésemos,</i> | that we might follow. |
| <i>Que vosotros siguiérais,</i> | or <i>siguiéseis,</i> | that you might follow. |
| <i>Que ellos siguieran,</i> | or <i>siguiesen,</i> | that they might follow. |

163. Are excepted, a few verbs ending with **entir, erir** and **extir** which are conjugated as follows (see Index):

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Sentir, to feel or to smell.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Sintiendo, feeling.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Sentido, felt.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo siento,</i> | I feel, | or do feel. |
| <i>Tú sientes,</i> | thou feelest, | or dost feel. |
| <i>El siente,</i> | he feels, | or does feel. |
| <i>Nosotros sentimos,</i> | we feel, | or do feel. |
| <i>Vosotros sentis,</i> | you feel, | or do feel. |
| <i>Ellos sienten,</i> | they feel, | or do feel. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo sentia,</i> | I felt, | or used to feel. |
| <i>Tú sentias,</i> | thou feltest, | or usedst to feel. |
| <i>El sentia,</i> | he felt, | or used to feel. |
| <i>Nosotros sentiamos,</i> | we felt, | or used to feel. |
| <i>Vosotros sentiais,</i> | you felt, | or used to feel. |
| <i>Ellos sentian,</i> | they felt, | or used to feel. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo sentí,</i> | I felt, | or did feel. |
| <i>Tú sentiste,</i> | thou feltest, | or didst feel. |
| <i>El sintió,</i> | he felt, | or did feel. |
| <i>Nosotros sentimos,</i> | we felt, | or did feel. |
| <i>Vosotros sentisteis,</i> | you felt, | or did feel. |
| <i>Ellos sintieron,</i> | they felt, | or did feel. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo sentiré,</i> | I shall feel, | or will feel. |
| <i>Tú sentirás,</i> | thou shalt feel, | or wilt feel. |
| <i>El sentirá,</i> | he shall feel, | or will feel. |
| <i>Nosotros sentiremos,</i> | we shall feel, | or will feel. |
| <i>Vosotros sentiréis,</i> | you shall feel, | or will feel. |
| <i>Ellos sentirán,</i> | they shall feel, | or will feel. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo sentiría,</i> | I should feel, | or would feel. |
| <i>Tú sentirías,</i> | thou shouldst feel, | or wouldst feel. |
| <i>El sentiría,</i> | he should feel, | or would feel. |
| <i>Nosotros sentiríamos,</i> | we should feel, | or would feel. |
| <i>Vosotros sentiríais,</i> | you should feel, | or would feel. |
| <i>Ellos sentirían,</i> | they should feel, | or would feel. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Siente, feel (thou).*Sentid,* feel (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo sienta,</i> | that I may feel. |
| <i>Que tú sientas,</i> | that thou mayst feel. |
| <i>Que él sienta,</i> | that he may feel. |
| <i>Que nosotros sintamos,</i> | that we may feel. |
| <i>Que vosotros sintáis,</i> | that you may feel. |
| <i>Que ellos sientan,</i> | that they may feel. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo sintiera,</i> | or sintiese, | that I might feel. |
| <i>Que tú sintieras,</i> | or sintieses, | that thou mightst feel. |
| <i>Que él sintiera,</i> | or sintiese, | that he might feel. |
| <i>Que nosotros sintiéramos,</i> | or sintiésemos, | that we might feel. |
| <i>Que vosotros sintierais,</i> | or sintiéseis, | that you might feel. |
| <i>Que ellos sintieran,</i> | or sintiesen, | that they might feel. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo sentiré,</i> | <i>tú sentirás,</i> | <i>él sentirá,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros sentiremos,</i> | <i>vosotros sentiréis,</i> | <i>ellos sentirán.</i> |

164. *Servir*, to serve, is conjugated like *seguir*, to follow, and *preferir*, to prefer, like *sentir*, to feel or to smell. The other verbs belonging to these classes will be pointed out later.

Anunciar, to announce, and *necesitar*, to need, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Volar*, to fly, goes like *mostrar* (137) *Dar*, to give; *poder*, to be able; and *decir*, to say, are irregular and will be explained later.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. To obtain, 162. | 20. To prefer, 164. |
| 2. I obtain. | 21. I prefer. |
| 3. He obtains. | 22. He prefers. |
| 4. She obtains. | 23. She prefers. |
| 5. We obtain. | 24. We prefer. |
| 6. You obtain. | 25. You prefer. |
| 7. They obtain. | 26. They prefer. |
| 8. I did obtain. | 27. I did prefer. |
| 9. He did obtain. | 28. He did prefer. |
| 10. We did obtain. | 29. We did prefer. |
| 11. You did obtain. | 30. You did prefer. |
| 12. They did obtain. | 31. They did prefer. |
| 13. I shall obtain. | 32. I shall prefer. |
| 14. I should obtain. | 33. I should prefer. |
| 15. Let him obtain. | 34. Let him prefer. |
| 16. That I may obtain. | 35. That I may prefer. |
| 17. That I might obtain. | 36. That I might prefer. |
| 18. I have obtained. | 37. I have preferred. |
| 19. Obtaining. | 38. Preferring. |

39. My exercise was good, but Paul's was better; and Joseph's was the best of all.—40. Who is the first of this class?—41. Virginia always knows her lessons.—42. These goods are the worst.—43. Do you feel the heat in this room?—44. I feel it.—45. Did the soldiers follow their general?—46. They followed him.—47. They obtained a complete victory.—48. Where is my copy-book?—49. Have the kindness to give me my dictionary, 99.—50. Show me your book, if you please, 99.—51. I serve, 164.

FIFTEENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.*

Leccion décimaquinta.

Lesson fifteenth.

Extracto de Saavedra.

Extract from Saavedra.

Es el hombre el mas inconstante de los
Is the man the most inconstant of the
animales. Con la edad, la fortuna, el
animals. With the age, the fortune, the
interes y la pasion, se va mudando.
interest, and the passion, himself he goes changing.

Sabe disimular y tener ocultos largo
He knows to dissimulate and to keep occult large
tiempo sus afectos: con las palabras, la
time his affections: with the words, the
risa y las lágrimas, encubre lo que tiene
laughter, and the tears, he conceals what he holds
en el corazon; con la religion disfraza sus
in the heart; with the religion he disguises his
designios, con el juramento los acredita,
designs, with the oath them he accredits,

* The mode of reviewing mentioned in first note on page 75 could now be made still shorter, by leaving out five of the earlier lessons, translating the 6th, 7th, and 8th from Spanish into English, the 9th, 10th, and 11th from the English into Spanish, and only the 12th, 13th, and 14th in the complete manner required in the first note on page 8. In all these attempts to gain time, however, due regard should be paid to the particular degree of proficiency attained, for a neglect of any portion of the text would of necessity cause much inconvenience, and tend to retard considerably all kinds of improvement.

y con la mentira los oculta. Obedece al
 and with the falsehood them he hides. He obeys to the
temor y á la esperanza; los favores le
 fear and to the hope; the favors him
hacen ingrato, el mando soberbio. En la
 make ungrateful, the power haughty. In the
necesidad es humilde y obediente; y fuera
 necessity he is humble and obedient; and out
de ella, arrogante y despreciador. Se
 of it, arrogant and proud. Himself he
juzga fino en la amistad, y no la sabe
 judges pure in the friendship, and not it he knows
guardar. Desprecia lo propio y ambiciona
 to keep. He despises the own, and covets
lo ageno. Cuanto mas alcanza, tanto
 the neighbor's. As much more he gets, as much
mas desea. Ama en los demas el rigor
 more he desires. He loves in the others the rigor
de la justicia, y en si la aborrece.
 of the justice, and in himself it he abhors.

The same in good English.

EXTRACTO DE SAAVEDRA.

Es el hombre el mas inconstante de los animales. Con la edad, la fortuna, el interes y la pasion, se va mudando. Sabe disimular y tener ocultos largo tiempo sus afectos: con las palabras, la risa y las lágrimas, encubre lo que tiene en el corazon; con la religion disfraza sus designios, con el juramento los acredita, y con la mentira los oculta. Obedece al temor y á

EXTRACT FROM SAAVEDRA.

Man is a most fickle being, alike affected by every change. He knows how to dissimulate his affections, and to hide the secrets of his heart, by word, laughter, and tears. Using religion as a cloak, he gives veight to his designs, and conceals their nature by false asseverations. Swayed by hope and fear, kindness makes him ungrateful, and power haughty. Humble and

la esperanza; los favores le hacen ingrato, el mando soberbio. En la necesidad es humilde y obediente; y fuera de ella, arrogante y despreciador. Se juzga fino en la amistad, y no la sabe guardar. Desprecia lo propio y ambiciona lo ageno. Quanto mas alcanza, tanto mas desea. Ama en los demas el rigor de la justicia, y en si la aborrece.

submissive in poverty, he is proud and arrogant when rich. He seeks friendship, though he does not know what it is to be a friend. He despises his own, and covets eagerly what is his neighbor's. The more he has, the more he wants. He loves justice in others, and is himself unjust.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ¿ Que leccion es esta ? | La décimaquinta. |
| ¿ De que se habla en esta leccion ? | De la inconstancia del hombre. |
| ¿ Con que se va mudando el hombre ? | Con la edad, la fortuna, el interes y la pasion. |
| ¿ Que sabe él ? | El sabe disimular y tener ocultos largo tiempo sus afectos. |
| ¿ Que encubre él con las palabras, la risa y las lágrimas ? | Lo que tiene en el corazon. |
| ¿ Que hace con la religion ? | Disfraza sus designios. |
| ¿ Y con el juramento ? | Los acredita. |
| ¿ Y con la mentira ? | Los oculta. |
| ¿ A que obedece ? | Al temor y á la esperanza. |
| ¿ Que hacen los favores y el mando ? | Le hacen ingrato y soberbio. |
| ¿ Que hacen al hombre ingrato y soberbio ? | Los favores y el mando. |
| ¿ Como es en la necesidad ? | Humilde y obediente. |
| ¿ Y fuera de ella ? | Arrogante y despreciador. |
| ¿ Cuando es el hombre humilde y obediente ? | En la necesidad. |
| ¿ En que se juzga fino ? | En la amistad. |
| ¿ Y que no sabe ? | Guardarla. |
| ¿ Que desprecia ? | Lo propio. |
| ¿ Que ambiciona ? | Lo ageno. |
| ¿ Que ama en los demas ? | El rigor de la justicia. |
| ¿ Y en quien la aborrece ? | En si. |
| ¿ Quien ha escrito este extracto ? | Saavedra. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Una fortuna.
 Una mentira.
 El designio.
 El mando.
 La religion.
 Un favor.
 Un juramento.
 Una lágrima.
 El interes.
 El afecto.
 El corazon.
 Las pasiones.
 Las palabras.
 La risa.

Quando es humilde y obediente
 el hombre ?

Quando está en la necesidad.

¿ Quando es arrogante ?

Quando es rico.

¿ Disimula él ?

Disimula frecuentemente.

Los gatos tambien disimulan.

¿ Quiere V. mudar sus vestidos ?

Quiero mudarlos.

¿ Quien es un mal soldado ?

El que tiene temor.

¿ Que hace ingrato al hombre ?

Los favores le hacen ingrato.

¿ Que le hace soberbio ?

El mando le hace soberbio.

¿ Desprecia algo el hombre ?

Desprecia lo propio.

¿ Con que disfraza sus designios ?

Con la religion.

No crea V. sus palabras.

Aborrece la justicia.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

A fortune.
 A falsehood.
 The design.
 The power.
 The religion.
 A favor.
 An oath.
 A tear.
 The interest.
 The affection.
 The heart.
 The passions.
 The words.
 The laughter.

When is man humble and sub-
 missive ?

When he is poor.

When is he arrogant ?

When he is rich.

Does he dissimulate ?

He often dissimulates.

Cats dissimulate also.

Will you change your clothes ?

I will change them.

Who is a bad soldier ?

He who is afraid.

What makes man ungrateful ?

Kindness makes him ungrateful.

What makes him proud ?

Power makes him proud.

Does man despise any thing ?

He despises his own.

With what does he disguise his
 designs ?

With religion.

Do not believe his words.

He abhors justice.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Se va mudando, goes on changing.

106. The verb *to go* is often used in the pronominal form, and joined to another verb to indicate that an action is actually going on. *Ir* is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD

Ir, to go.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Yendo, going.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Ido, gone.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>Yo voi</i> , | I go, | or do go. |
| <i>Tú vas</i> | thou goest, | or dost go. |
| <i>El va</i> , | he goes, | or does go. |
| <i>Nosotros vamos</i> , | we go, | or do go. |
| <i>Vosotros vais</i> , | you go, | or do go. |
| <i>Ellos van</i> , | they go, | or do go. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo iba</i> , | I went, | or used to go. |
| <i>Tú ibas</i> , | thou wentest, | or usedst to go. |
| <i>El iba</i> , | he went, | or used to go. |
| <i>Nosotros íbamos</i> , | we went, | or used to go. |
| <i>Vosotros íbais</i> , | you went, | or used to go. |
| <i>Ellos iban</i> , | they went, | or used to go. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.*

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo fui</i> , | I went, | or did go. |
| <i>Tú fuiste</i> , | thou wentest, | or didst go. |
| <i>El fué</i> , | he went, | or did go. |
| <i>Nosotros fuimos</i> , | we went, | or did go. |
| <i>Vosotros fuisteis</i> , | you went, | or did go. |
| <i>Ellos fueron</i> , | they went, | or did go. |

* The verb *Ir*, to go, is properly a defective verb, and the form of the past tense definite is borrowed from *Ser*, to be, which see, page 43

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|-------------|
| <i>Yo iré,</i> | I shall go, | or will go. |
| <i>Tú irás,</i> | thou shalt go, | or wilt go. |
| <i>El irá,</i> | he shall go, | or will go. |
| <i>Nosotros iremos,</i> | we shall go, | or will go. |
| <i>Vosotros iréis,</i> | you shall go, | or will go. |
| <i>Ellos irán,</i> | they shall go, | or will go. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo iría,</i> | I should go, | or would go. |
| <i>Tú irías,</i> | thou shouldst go, | or wouldst go. |
| <i>El iría,</i> | he should go, | or would go. |
| <i>Nosotros iríamos,</i> | we should go, | or would go. |
| <i>Vosotros iríais,</i> | you should go, | or would go. |
| <i>Ellos irían,</i> | they should go, | or would go. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ve, go (thou).

Id, go (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Que yo vaya,</i> | that I may go. |
| <i>Que tú vayas,</i> | that thou mayst go. |
| <i>Que él vaya,</i> | that he may go. |
| <i>Que nosotros váyamos,</i> | that we may go. |
| <i>Que vosotros váyais,</i> | that you may go. |
| <i>Que ellos vayan,</i> | that they may go. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo fuera,</i> | or <i>fuese,</i> | that I might go. |
| <i>Que tú fueras,</i> | or <i>fueses,</i> | that thou mightst go. |
| <i>Que él fuera,</i> | or <i>fuese,</i> | that he might go. |
| <i>Que nosotros fuéramos,</i> | or <i>fuésemos,</i> | that we might go. |
| <i>Que vosotros fuérais,</i> | or <i>fuéseis,</i> | that you might go. |
| <i>Que ellos fueran,</i> | or <i>fuesen,</i> | that they might go. |

* The second future (also borrowed from Ser) is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Yo fuera,</i> | <i>tú fueras,</i> | <i>él fuera,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros fuéramos</i> | <i>vosotros fuérais,</i> | <i>ellos fueran.</i> |

Sabe disimular,
he knows (how) to dissimulate.

166 The preposition *to*, before an infinitive, is sometimes left out, and sometimes expressed by *á* or *de*; but it is often difficult, even for Spaniards, to decide upon a proper selection in this respect; use, and the dictionary, being the only guides that can be offered. The following lists will, however, be of service as an appropriate introduction to this study.

| To, before an infinitive, | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| is translated by <i>á</i> , | is translated by <i>de</i> , | is left out |
| after <i>Aprender</i> , | after <i>Cesar</i> , | after <i>Deber</i> , |
| " <i>Empezar</i> , | " <i>Dejar</i> , | " <i>Poder</i> , |
| " <i>Enseñar</i> , | " <i>Quedar</i> , | " <i>Querer</i> , |
| " <i>Ensayar</i> . | " <i>Temer</i> . | " <i>Saber</i> . |

The rest will be explained as they occur in the text. They will also be found each in its alphabetical place in the Index.

167. The word *now*, often added redundantly to the verb *to know*, in English, is invariably left out in Spanish.

Encubre, he conceals.

168. Some verbs are irregular in the past participle only, and others have a regular and an irregular form for that tense. Those of that class already seen are :

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <i>Abrir</i> , to open. | <i>Abierto</i> , opened. |
| <i>Cubrir</i> , to cover. | <i>Cubierto</i> , covered. |
| <i>Encubrir</i> , to conceal. | <i>Encubierto</i> , concealed. |
| <i>Escribir</i> , to write. | <i>Escrito</i> , written. |
| <i>Despertar</i> , to awake. | <i>Despierto</i> , or <i>despertado</i> , awakened. |
| <i>Romper</i> , to break. | <i>Roto</i> , or <i>rompido</i> , broken. |

The others will be explained as they occur in the text, and in the Index.

169 While on this subject, it will be well to notice that the regular form of the past participle of these verbs is generally used with the auxiliary *haber*, and the irregular one with *ser* or *estar*.

Ex. *Ha rompido su reloj*, he has broken his watch.
Su reloj está roto, his watch is broken.

Lo propio y lo ajeno,

literally,

the own and the other's.

170. We have already seen that **lo** is a third form of the article **el**, and that some grammarians consider it as of the neuter gender. This view has, however, another inconvenience besides the apparent uselessness of an article of the neuter gender in a language in which there is no neuter noun to be determined. For if we attempt to parse the adjective accompanying it, we are led into the absurdity of saying that an article of the neuter gender can accompany an adjective of the masculine, inasmuch as the neuter gender is not ascribed to adjectives by any Spanish grammarian. It would seem better, therefore, to remember that **lo** is the old masculine form of **el**, used only when the noun to which the article refers is not expressed, and is liable to be supplied by words of different genders, as in the elliptical expression, **lo sublime**, *the sublime*, which may be completed with **estilo**, *style*, which is masculine, or **diccion**, *diction*, which is feminine. The article and adjective are then in the masculine, according to a rule which obtains throughout all modern languages, that whenever it is doubtful whether males or females are spoken of, and even when both are alluded to at the same time, the masculine is preferred to the feminine.

Cuanto mas alcanza, tanto mas desea,

the more he gets, the more he wants.

171. When two expressions in the comparative are compared together, the first must be preceded by **cuanto**, and the second by **tanto**, according to the above model sentence.

Amar, to love; *ambicionar*, to covet; *acreditar*, to accredit; *desear*, to wish; *despreciar*, to despise; *disimular*, to dissimulate; *guardar*, to guard; *mudar*, to change; and *ocultar*, to hide, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

Aborrecer, to abhor, and *obedecer*, to obey, go like *compadecer*. See Rule 147.

Alicanzar, to obtain; *disfrazar*, to disguise; and *juzgar*, to judge, are irregular and will be explained later.

Exercises,*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I learn to speak, 166. | 16. I wish to speak, 166. |
| 2. He learns to read. | 17. He wishes to read. |
| 3. We learn to write. | 18. We wish to write. |
| 4. You begin to work. | 19. You wish to work. |
| 5. They begin to study. | 20. They wish to study. |
| 6. I began to see. | 21. I take care to see. |
| 7. He ceases to do. | 22. He takes care to do. |
| 8. We cease to hear. | 23. We take care to hear. |
| 9. You ought to learn. | 24. You take care to learn. |
| 10. They ought to try. | 25. They take care to try. |
| 11. I am afraid to lose. | 26. I try to lose. |
| 12. She is afraid to come. | 27. He tries to come. |
| 13. We are afraid to drink. | 28. We try to drink. |
| 14. You are able to find. | 29. You try to find. |
| 15. They are able to go. | 30. They try to go. |

31. I shall teach him to read, 166.—32. I should teach him to write, 166.—33. Teach her to speak, 166.—34. Where are you going to? 165.—35. I am going to the store, 165.—36. Where is he going to? 165.—37. He is going to the garden, 165.—38. Did you go to your country-seat yesterday? 165.—39. I went there this morning, 165.—40. When will your son go to school? 165.—41. He will go to school in a few months, 165.—42. Have you opened the window? 168.—43. I have written an exercise, 168.—44. His watch is broken, 168, 169.—45. The less we work, the less we gain, 171.—46. The more we study, the more we learn, 171.—47. The more you lose, the less you have, 171.—48. I change, he changes, we change, you change, they change.—49. I obey, he obeys, we obey, you obey, they obey.

* See notes on page 7.

SIXTEENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literál Translation.

Leccion décimasesta.*

Lesson sixteenth.

Extracto de P. B. Gracian.

Extract from P. B. Gracian.

La divina Providencia se declaró
The Divine Providence itself did declare
admirable en disponer el órden de los
admirable in disposing the order of the
tiempos. En el invierno arraigan las
seasons. In the winter take root the
plantas, en la primavera florecen, en el
plants, in the spring they blossom, in the
estío fructifican, en el otoño se sazonan
summer they fructify, in the fall themselves they ripen
y se logran. Las aguas limpian y
and themselves they gather. The waters refresh and
secundan, los vientos purifican y vivifican
fertilize, the winds purify and vivify
la tierra estable, donde se sustentan
the earth firm, whence themselves they nourish
los cuerpos. Hacen el aire flexible para
the bodies. They make the air flexible in order
que se muevan, y diáfano para que
that themselves they may move, and transparent in order that
 puedan verse; de suerte que solo una
they may see themselves; sc that only an
Omnipotencia divina, una eterna Provi-
Omnipotence divine, an eternal Provi-

* See note on page 119.

dencia, una inmensa Bondad, pudieran
 dence, an immense Goodness, could

haber producido una tan gran máquina,
 have produced a so great machine,

nunca bastantemente admirada, alabada
 never enough admired, praised,

y aplaudida. ;Tanta multitud de criatu-
 and applauded. Such multitude of creatures,

ras, con tanta diferencia! ;O portentos,
 with such difference! O wonders,

para siempre dignos de aclamacion!
 for ever worthy of acclamation!

The same in good English.

EXTRACTO DE P. B. GRACIAN.

La divina Providencia se declaró admirable en disponer el orden de los tiempos. En el invierno arraigan las plantas, en la primavera florecen, en el estío fructifican, en el otoño se sazonan y se logran. Las aguas limpian y fecundan, los vientos purifican y vivifican la tierra estable, donde se sustentan los cuerpos. Hacen el aire flexible para que se muevan, y diáfano para que puedan verse; de suerte que solo una Omnipotencia divina, una eterna Providencia, una inmensa Bondad, pudieran haber producido una tan gran máquina, nunca bastantemente admirada, alabada y aplaudida. ;Tanta multitud de criaturas, con tanta diferencia! ;O portentos, para siempre dignos de aclamacion!

EXTRACT FROM P. B. GRACIAN.

God's providence is especially manifest in the arrangement of the seasons.

The plants take root in winter, they blossom in spring, bring forth fruit in summer, and ripen and are gathered in the fall.

The waters refresh and fertilize, while the winds purify and animate the earth, whence all things draw their nutriment.

They make the air flexible for motion, and transparent for sight.

Divine Goodness alone could have created a work so great, so admirable, and so varied in its many productions.

O wonders, forever worthy of acclamation!

Questions and Answers for Conversation

| | |
|--|---|
| Que leccion es esta? | La décimasesta. |
| De que se habla en esta leccion? | De la divina Providencia. |
| En que se declaró admirable la divina Providencia? | En disponer el orden de los tiempos. |
| Quando arraigan las plantas? | En el invierno. |
| Quando florecen? | En la primavera. |
| Quando fructifican? | En el estío. |
| Quando se sazonan y se logran? | En el otoño. |
| Que hacen las aguas? | Las aguas limpian y fecundan la tierra. |
| Y los vientos? | La purifican y la vivifican. |
| Que mas hacen las aguas y los vientos? | Hacen el aire flexible y diáfano. |
| Para que le hacen flexible? | Para que los cuerpos se muevan. |
| Y para que diáfano? | Para que pueden verse. |
| Que puede haber producido una tan gran máquina? | Solo una Omnipotencia divina, una eterna Providencia, <i>or</i> una inmensa Bondad. |
| Que piensa V. de esta máquina? | Que nunca es bastantemente admirada, alabada y aplaudida. |
| Que son estos portentos? | Son para siempre dignos de aclamacion. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La primavera.
 El estío.
 El otoño.
 El invierno.
 El orden.
 La providencia.
 Una planta.
 Una criatura.
 Un portento.
 Una multitud.
 El cuerpo.
 El aire.
 El viento.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The spring.
 The summer.
 The fall.
 The winter.
 The order.
 The providence.
 A plant.
 A creature.
 A wonder.
 A multitude.
 The body.
 The air.
 The wind.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿ Cual de los tiempos del año le gusta á V. mas ? | Which of the seasons do you like best ? |
| Prefero la primavera. | I prefer the spring. |
| ¿ Porqué prefiere V. aquel tiempo ? | Why do you prefer that season |
| Porque las mas hermosas plantas florecen en aquel tiempo. | Because the most beautiful plants bloom at that time. |
| ¿ Que hace V. en el estío ? | What do you do in summer ? |
| Me voy al campo. | I go into the country. |
| ¿ Tiene V. una finca ? | Have you a country-seat ? |
| Tengo una cerca de la ciudad. | I have one near the city. |
| ¿ Es grande ? | Is it large ? |
| Es muy agradable. | It is very comfortable. |
| ¿ Que produce el otoño ? | What does the fall produce ? |
| El otoño produce las mas sabrosas frutas. | The fall produces the most delicious fruit. |
| ¿ Que hace V. en el invierno ? | What do you do in winter ? |
| Me quedo en casa y leo. | I remain at home and read. |
| V. estudia el español, ¿ no es verdad ? | You study Spanish, do you not ? |
| Si, señor, el español y el ingles. | Yes, sir, Spanish and English. |
| ¿ Como se dice, Como está V. ? en español ? | How do you say, How do you do ? in Spanish ? |
| ¿ Como le va á V. ? ó ¿ Como está V. ? | How goes it with you ? or, How are you ? |
| ¿ Cual es la mejor expresion ? | Which is the better expression ? |
| ¿ Como está V. ? es la mas fácil. | How are you ? is the easier. |
| ¿ Quiere V. limpiarse las manos ? | Will you wash your hands ? |
| Quiero limpiarme las manos y la cara. | I will wash my hands and face. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

El orden, the order.

172. There are a few words which vary in meaning according to the gender in which they are used in Spanish. The most important are :

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>El canal</i> , the canal. | <i>La canal</i> , the gutter. |
| <i>El capital</i> the capital, stock in trade. | <i>La capital</i> , the capital city or town. |
| <i>El corte</i> , the edge (of a tool). | <i>La corte</i> , the court (royal). |

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>El frente</i> , the front. | <i>La frente</i> , the forehead |
| <i>El márgen</i> , the margin (of a book). | <i>La márgen</i> , the bank (of a river or lake). |
| <i>El órden</i> , the order, place, or command. | <i>La órden</i> , the rank, class, or fraternity. |

Hacen, they make.

173. *Hacen* is a form of the irregular verb *hacer*, to do or to make, which is conjugated as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Hacer, to make or to do.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Haciendo, making.

PAST PARTICIPLE

Hecho, made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo hago</i> , | I make, | or do make. |
| <i>Tú haces</i> , | thou makest, | or dost make |
| <i>El hace</i> , | he makes, | or does make. |
| <i>Nosotros hacemos</i> , | we make, | or do make. |
| <i>Vosotros haceis</i> , | you make, | or do make. |
| <i>Ellos hacen</i> , | they make, | or do make. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|----------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo hacía</i> , | I made, | or used to make. |
| <i>Tú hacías</i> , | thou madest, | or usedst to make. |
| <i>El hacía</i> , | he made, | or used to make. |
| <i>Nosotros hacíamos</i> , | we made, | or used to make. |
| <i>Vosotros hacíais</i> , | you made, | or used to make. |
| <i>Ellos hacían</i> , | they made, | or used to make. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo hice</i> , | I made, | or did make. |
| <i>Tú hiciste</i> , | thou madest, | or didst make. |
| <i>El hizo</i> , | he made, | or did make. |
| <i>Nosotros hicimos</i> , | we made, | or did make. |
| <i>Vosotros hicisteis</i> , | you made, | or did make. |
| <i>Ellos hicieron</i> , | they made, | or did make. |

FUTURA.*

| | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo haré,</i> | I shall make, | or will make. |
| <i>Tú harás,</i> | thou shalt make, | or wilt make. |
| <i>El hará,</i> | he shall make, | or will make. |
| <i>Nosotros haremos,</i> | we shall make, | or will make. |
| <i>Vosotros haréis,</i> | you shall make, | or will make. |
| <i>Ellos harán,</i> | they shall make, | or will make. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo haria,</i> | I should make, | or would make. |
| <i>Tú harias,</i> | thou shouldst make, | or wouldst make. |
| <i>El haria,</i> | he should make, | or would make. |
| <i>Nosotros haríamos,</i> | we should make, | or would make. |
| <i>Vosotros hariais,</i> | you should make, | or would make. |
| <i>Ellos harían,</i> | they should make, | or would make. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Has, make (thou).
Haced, make (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo haga,</i> | that I may make. |
| <i>Que tú hagas,</i> | that thou mayst make. |
| <i>Que él haga,</i> | that he may make. |
| <i>Que nosotros hagamos,</i> | that we may make. |
| <i>Que vosotros hagais,</i> | that you may make. |
| <i>Que ellos hagan,</i> | that they may make. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo hiciera,</i> | or <i>hiciese,</i> | that I might make. |
| <i>Que tú hicieras,</i> | or <i>hicieses,</i> | that thou mightst make. |
| <i>Que él hiciera,</i> | or <i>hiciese,</i> | that he might make. |
| <i>Que nosotros hiciéramos,</i> | or <i>hiciésemos,</i> | that we might make. |
| <i>Que vosotros hicierais,</i> | or <i>hiciéseis,</i> | that you might make. |
| <i>Que ellos hicieran,</i> | or <i>hiciesen,</i> | that they might make. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

Yo hiciera, *tú hicieras,* *él hiciera,*
Nosotros hiciéramos, *vosotros hicierais,* *ellos hicieran.*

174. *Contrahacer*, to counterfeit; *deshacer*, to undo; and *rehacer*, to do over again, are conjugated like *hacer*.

Producido, produced, from *producir*, to produce.

175. Verbs ending with *ucir*, in the infinitive, are conjugated like the following model:

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Traducir, to translate.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Traduciendo, translating.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Traducido, translated.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo traduzco,</i> | I translate, | or do translate. |
| <i>Tú traduces,</i> | thou translatest, | or dost translate. |
| <i>El traduce,</i> | he translates, | or does translate. |
| <i>Nosotros traducimos,</i> | we translate, | or do translate. |
| <i>Vosotros traducis,</i> | you translate, | or do translate. |
| <i>Ellos traducen,</i> | they translate, | or do translate. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Yo traducía,</i> | I translated, | or used to translate. |
| <i>Tú traducías,</i> | thou translatedst, | or usedst to translate. |
| <i>El traducía,</i> | he translated, | or used to translate. |
| <i>Nosotros traducíamos,</i> | we translated, | or used to translate. |
| <i>Vosotros traducíais,</i> | you translated, | or used to translate. |
| <i>Ellos traducían,</i> | they translated, | or used to translate. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Yo traduje,</i> | I translated, | or did translate. |
| <i>Tú tradujiste,</i> | thou translatedst, | or didst translate. |
| <i>El tradujo,</i> | he translated, | or did translate. |
| <i>Nosotros tradujimos,</i> | we translated, | or did translate. |
| <i>Vosotros tradujisteis,</i> | you translated, | or did translate. |
| <i>Ellos tradujéron,</i> | they translated, | or did translate. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo traduciré,</i> | I shall translate, | or will translate. |
| <i>Tú traducirás,</i> | thou shalt translate, | or wilt translate. |
| <i>El traducirá,</i> | he shall translate, | or will translate. |
| <i>Nosotros traduciremos,</i> | we shall translate, | or will translate. |
| <i>Vosotros traduciréis,</i> | you shall translate, | or will translate. |
| <i>Ellos traducirán,</i> | they shall translate, | or will translate. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Yo traduciría,</i> | I should or would translate. |
| <i>Tú traducirías,</i> | thou shouldst or wouldst translate. |
| <i>El traduciría,</i> | he should or would translate. |
| <i>Nosotros traduciríamos,</i> | we should or would translate. |
| <i>Vosotros traduciríais,</i> | you should or would translate. |
| <i>Ellos traducirían,</i> | they should or would translate. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Traduce, translate (thou).

Traducid, translate (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Que yo traduzca,</i> | that I may translate. |
| <i>Que tú traduzcas,</i> | that thou mayst translate. |
| <i>Que él traduzca,</i> | that he may translate. |
| <i>Que nosotros traduzcamos,</i> | that we may translate. |
| <i>Que vosotros traduzcais,</i> | that you may translate. |
| <i>Que ellos traduzcan,</i> | that they may translate. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Que yo tradujera,</i> | or tradujese, | that I might |
| <i>Que tú tradujeras,</i> | or tradujeses, | that thou mightst |
| <i>Que él tradujera,</i> | or tradujese, | that he might |
| <i>Que nosotros tradujiéramos,</i> | or tradujiésemos, | that we might |
| <i>Que vosotros tradujiérais,</i> | or tradujiéseis, | that you might |
| <i>Que ellos tradujeran,</i> | or tradujesen, | that they might |

TRANSLATE.

The only exception is *lucir*, to shine, which is conjugated like *conocer*, to know, to be acquainted with. See Rule 147.

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Yo tradujere,</i> | <i>tú tradujeres,</i> | <i>él tradujere,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros tradujiéremos,</i> | <i>vosotros tradujiéreis,</i> | <i>ellos tradujeren.</i> |

Bastantemente, enough.

176. *Bastante* and *BASTANTEMENTE* mean *enough*; but *bastantemente* is never joined to a noun.

Bastantemente admirada, enough admired.

177. The adverb is generally placed after the verb, and before every other kind of word.

Ex. *Habla bien*, he speaks well.
Bien hablado, well spoken.
He hablado bien, he has spoken well.

178. The principal adverbs are :

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Abajo</i> , below. | <i>Despues</i> , since, afterwards. |
| <i>Acá, aquí</i> , here. | <i>Donde</i> , where. |
| <i>Acaso</i> , perhaps. | <i>En frente</i> , opposite, in front. |
| <i>Adelante</i> , forward. | <i>Enteramente</i> , entirely, quite. |
| <i>Ademas</i> , moreover. | <i>Entónces</i> , then. |
| <i>Adentro</i> , inside. | <i>Jamas</i> , ever. |
| <i>Adonde</i> , whither, or whereto. | <i>Hoy</i> , to-day. |
| <i>Afuera</i> , outside. | <i>Lejos</i> , far. |
| <i>Ahora</i> , now. | <i>Lentamente</i> , slowly. |
| <i>Allá, allí</i> , there. | <i>Mal</i> , badly. |
| <i>Amenudo</i> , often. | <i>Mañana</i> , to-morrow. |
| <i>Antes</i> , formerly. | <i>Mejor</i> , better. |
| <i>Apenas</i> , hardly. | <i>Muy</i> , very. |
| <i>Arriba</i> , above. | <i>No</i> , no, not. |
| <i>Así</i> , thus. | <i>Nunca</i> , never. |
| <i>Atras</i> , behind, yonder. | <i>Otramente</i> , otherwise. |
| <i>Aun</i> , still, yet. | <i>Pronto</i> , quickly. |
| <i>Ayer</i> , yesterday. | <i>Si</i> , yes. |
| <i>Bastante</i> , enough. | <i>Siempre</i> , always. |
| <i>Bien</i> , well. | <i>Subitamente</i> , suddenly. |
| <i>Como</i> , as, like. | <i>Tarde</i> , late. |
| <i>De donde</i> , whence, or from where. | <i>Temprano</i> , early. |
| | <i>Ya</i> , already. |

See, also, Rule for the formation of adverbs of quality, No. 20.

Admirar, to admire; *alabar*, to praise; *declarar*, to declare;
fecundar, to fecundate; *limpiar*, to clean; *lograr*, to gather;

sazonar, to ripen ; and *sustentar*, to sustain, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Aplaudir*, to applaud, is of the third.

Floreecer, to blossom, goes like *acompadecer* (147). *Mover*, to move, has already been seen. *Disponer*, to dispose ; *poder*, to be able ; and *ver*, to see, are irregular, and will be explained later.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. To produce, 175. | 19. To undo, 173. |
| 2. I produce. | 20. I undo. |
| 3. He produces. | 21. He undoes. |
| 4. We produce. | 22. We undo. |
| 5. You produce. | 23. You undo. |
| 6. They produce. | 24. They undo. |
| 7. I did produce. | 25. I did undo. |
| 8. He did produce. | 26. He did undo. |
| 9. We did produce. | 27. We did undo. |
| 10. You did produce. | 28. You did undo. |
| 11. They did produce | 29. They did undo. |
| 12. I shall produce. | 30. I shall undo. |
| 13. I should produce. | 31. He shall undo. |
| 14. Let him produce. | 32. We shall undo. |
| 15. That I may produce | 33. You shall undo. |
| 16. That I might produce. | 34. They shall undo. |
| 17. I have produced. | 35. I have undone. |
| 18. Producing. | 36. Undoing. |

37. What are you doing ? 173.—38. I am working.—39. Are you going on taking lessons ? 165.—40. I take a lesson twice a week.—41. How many times do you go to the country during the season ?—42. Once a week.—43. Is there any river near your house ? 33.—44. There is a river and a lake.—45. Which bird is the strongest ? 52.—46. The eagle.—47. Will you take a little cake ?—48. No, sir, I thank you, 30.—49. Where do the fishes live ?—50. They live in the water.—51. And the birds ?—52. They fly in the air.—53. Will you do me the favor to tell me what o'clock it is ?—54. It is one o'clock.—55. It is early yet.

SEVENTEENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART

Literal Translation.*

Leccion décimaséptima.

Lesson

seventeenth.

Extracto de la Historia de la Conquista

Extract from the History of the Conquest

de Méjico de Solís

of Mexico, by Solís.

Era el Emperador Guatimozín un mozo

Was the Emperor Guatimozín a youth

bien valeroso de veintitres años, de bien

very brave of twenty-three years, of well-

ordenada proporcion, alto sin descaeci-

regulated proportion, tall without debility,

miento, y robusto sin deformidad. El

and robust without deformity. The

color tan inclinado á la blancura, ó tan

color so inclined to the whiteness, or so

lejos de la obscuridad, que parecia

far from the darkness, that he appeared

extranjero entre los de su nacion. El

strange among those of his nation. The

rostro, sin faccion que hiciese disonancia

face, without feature which might make a discord

entre las demas, daba señas de la fuerza

among the rest, gave signs of the strength

interior tan enseñado á la estimacion

interior so taught to the estimation

* See note on page 119.

agena, que aun estando afligido, no
of others, that however being afflicted, not
acababa de perder la majestad. La
ended by to lose the majesty. The
emperatriz, su esposa, que seria de la
empress, his wife, who might be of the
misma edad, se hacia reparar por el
same age, herself made distinguish by the
garbo y el espíritu con que mandaba el
grace and the spirit with which she managed the
movimiento y las acciones; pero su
movement and the actions; but her
hermosura, mas varonil que delicada,
beauty, more manly than delicate,
pareciendo bien á la primera vista,
appearing well at the first sight,
influa ménos en el agrado que en el
influenced less on the liking than on the
respeto de los ojos. Era sobrina del gran
respect of the eyes. She was niece of the great
Montezuma, ó, segun otros, su hija.
Montezuma, or, according to others, his daughter.

The same in good English.

**EXTRACTO DE LA HISTORIA DE
LA CONQUISTA DE MÉJICO
DE SOLIS.**

Era el Emperador Guatimozin un mozo bien valeroso de veintitres años, de bien ordenada proporcion, alto sin descaecimiento, y robusto sin deformidad. El color tan inclinado á la blancura, ó tan lejos de la obscuridad, que

**EXTRACT FROM THE HISTORY
OF THE CONQUEST OF MEXICO, BY SOLIS.**

The Emperor Guatimozin was a brave youth, twenty-three years of age, well formed, tall, robust, and strong. His complexion was so fair, that among his own people he looked like a stranger; and his face, whose

parecia extranjero entre los de su nacion. El rostro, sin facion que hiciese disonancia entre las demas, daba señas de la fuerza interior tan enseñado á la estimacion agena, que aun estando afligido, no acababa de perder la majestad. La emperatriz, su esposa, que seria de la misma edad, se hacia reparar por el garbo y el espíritu con que mandaba el movimiento y las acciones; pero su hermosura, mas varonil que delicada, pareciendo bien á la primera vista, influia menos en el agrado que en el respeto de los ojos. Era sobrina del gran Montezuma, ó, segun otros, su hija.

every feature harmonized with the rest, was highly indicative of that majesty which never forsook him, even under the most trying circumstances.

The empress, who was nearly as old as her husband, distinguished herself by her graceful and animated deportment but her beauty, which was perhaps too masculine, commanded, at first sight, respect rather than love.

She was the niece, or, according to some, the daughter, of the great Montezuma.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿ Que leccion es esta ?

¿ De que se habla en esta leccion ?

¿ Quien era Guatimozin ?

¿ Cuantos años tenia ?

¿ Que talle tenia ?

¿ Era alto ?

¿ Y robusto ?

¿ Cual era su color ?

¿ Que parecia ?

¿ Que daba el rostro ?

A que era enseñado el rostro ?

¿ De que manera ?

¿ Que edad tenia la emperatriz ?

Por que se hacia reparar ?

Como era su hermosura ?

La décimaséptima.

De Guatimozin y de su esposa.

El Emperador de Méjico, *or* Un mozo bien valeroso.

Veintitres años.

Un talle de bien ordenada proporcion.

Era alto sin descaecimiento.

Robusto sin deformidad.

Inclinado á la blancura.

Estranjero entre los de su nacion.

Señas de la fuerza interior.

A la estimacion agena.

Que aun estando afligido, no acababa de perder la majestad.

La misma del Emperador Guatimozin su esposo.

Por el garbo y espíritu con que mandaba el movimiento y las acciones.

Mas varonil que delicada.

¿ Cuando parecia bien ?
 ¿ En que influa su hermosura ?
 ¿ Quien era ?

A la primera vista.
 Méenos en el agrado que en el
 respeto de los ojos.
 La sobrina del gran Montezuma,
 ó, segun otros, su hija.

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La historia.
 La conquista.
 El mozo.
 El color.
 La deformidad.
 La blancura.
 La obscuridad.
 La cara, *or* el rostro.
 La facion.
 La fuerza.
 El emperador.
 La emperatriz.
 La sobrina.

¿ Ha leído V. la historia de Mé-
 jico ?

He leído algunos extractos de
 ella.

¿ De que parte ?

De la conquista por los Españó-
 les.

¿ Quien era el Emperador de Mé-
 jico en aquel tiempo ?

El gran Montezuma.

Guatimozin fué su sucesor.

La esposa de Guatimozin era su
 sobrina ó su hija.

¿ Sabe V. algo de Montezuma ?

Sé que era un hombre valeroso.

¿ Cual es el mas importante pro-
 ducto de Méjico ?

El oro es el mas lucrativo.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The history.
 The conquest.
 The youth.
 The color.
 The deformity.
 The whiteness.
 The darkness.
 The face.
 The feature.
 The strength.
 The emperor.
 The empress.
 The niece.

Have you read the History of
 Mexico ?

I have read some extracts from
 it.

From which part ?

From the conquest by the Span-
 iards.

Who was the Emperor of Mexico
 at that time ?

The great Montezuma.

Guatimozin was his successor.

The wife of Guatimozin was his
 niece or his daughter.

Do you know any thing about
 Montezuma ?

I know that he was a brave man.

Which is the most important
 product of Mexico ?

Gold is the most profitable.

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿Hay muchos extranjeros en aquel país? | Are there many foreigners in that country? |
| Hay algunos Ingleses y algunos Franceses. | There are some Englishmen and some Frenchmen. |
| ¿Donde está situada la capital? | Where is the capital situated? |
| En una isla. | On an island. |
| ¿Gustaría V. de saber mas de Méjico? | Would you like to know more about Mexico? |
| Me gustaria estudiar su historia antigua. | I would like to study its ancient history. |
| Solis es un famoso autor español. | Solis is a famous Spanish author. |
| Ha escrito muchos libros. | He has written many books. |
| Su mejor historia es la Conquista de Méjico. | His best is the History of the Conquest of Mexico. |
| Me gustaria leerla. | I should like to read it. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART

Color, color.

179. Words ending with **or** are generally alike, or nearly so, in both languages; as, *Favor*, favor; *valor*, valor; *autor*, author, etc.

Afligido, afflicted; from *afligir*, to afflict.

180. As it is desirable to preserve the root of a verb alike in sound throughout its conjugation, verbs ending with **gar** take a silent **u** after **g** before **e**, and those ending with **ger** and **gir** change **g** into **j** before **a** and **o**.

Ex. *Pagar*, to pay. *Pagué*, I did pay.

Afligir, to afflict. *Aflijo*, I afflict.

The verbs of this class already seen are: *Pagar*, to pay; *llegar*, to arrive; *arraigar*, to take root; and *afligir*, to afflict.

No acababa de perder,
did not end in losing.

181. The verb *acabar* is used here in its literal meaning, *to finish or end*; but *acabar de*, joined to an infinitive, forms more

often with it a particular past tense, generally expressed in English by *to have just*, and a past participle.

Ex. *Acabo de hablar*, I have just spoken.
Acaba de venir, he has just come.
Acabamos de salir, we have just gone out.

Influir, influenced. *Influir*, to influence.

182 The letter *i*, when placed between two vowels, is frequently changed into *y* in Spanish. This occurs most often in the verbs ending with *aer*, as *raer*, to erase; *eer*, as *leer* to read; *oer*, as *roer*, to gnaw; *uir*, as *influir*, to influence; or *guir*, as *arguir*, to argue, before those terminations of inflexion which begin with *ia* (except in the imperfect), *ie*, or *io*. See the following model.

This observation does not apply, however, to the verbs like *seguir*, to follow, in which the *u* is silent, and which have been explained in Rule 162.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Instruir, to instruct.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Instruyendo, instructing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Instruido, instructed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo instruyo</i> , | I instruct, | or do instruct. |
| <i>Tú instruyes</i> , | thou instructest, | or dost instruct. |
| <i>El instruye</i> , | he instructs, | or does instruct. |
| <i>Nosotros instruimos</i> , | we instruct, | or do instruct. |
| <i>Vosotros instruis</i> , | you instruct, | or do instruct. |
| <i>Ellos instruyen</i> , | they instruct, | or do instruct. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo instruía</i> , | I instructed, | or used to instruct. |
| <i>Tú instruías</i> , | thou instructedst, | or usedst to instruct. |
| <i>El instruía</i> , | he instructed, | or used to instruct. |
| <i>Nosotros instruíamos</i> , | we instructed, | or used to instruct. |
| <i>Vosotros instruiais</i> , | you instructed, | or used to instruct. |
| <i>Ellos instruían</i> , | they instructed, | or used to instruct. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo instruí,</i> | I instructed, | or did instruct. |
| <i>Tú instruiste,</i> | thou instructedst, | or didst instruct. |
| <i>El instruyó,</i> | he instructed, | or did instruct. |
| <i>Nosotros instruimos,</i> | we instructed, | or did instruct. |
| <i>Vosotros instruisteis,</i> | you instructed, | or did instruct. |
| <i>Ellos instruyéron,</i> | they instructed, | or did instruct. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo instruiré,</i> | I shall instruct, | or will instruct. |
| <i>Tú instruirás,</i> | thou shalt instruct, | or wilt instruct. |
| <i>El instruirá,</i> | he shall instruct, | or will instruct. |
| <i>Nosotros instruiremos,</i> | we shall instruct, | or will instruct. |
| <i>Vosotros instruiréis,</i> | you shall instruct, | or will instruct. |
| <i>Ellos instruirán,</i> | they shall instruct, | or will instruct. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Yo instruiria,</i> | I should or would instruct. |
| <i>Tú instruirias,</i> | thou shouldst or wouldst instruct. |
| <i>El instruiria,</i> | he should or would instruct. |
| <i>Nosotros instruiríamos,</i> | we should or would instruct. |
| <i>Vosotros instruiríais,</i> | you should or would instruct. |
| <i>Ellos instruirían,</i> | they should or would instruct. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Instruye, instruct (thou).

Instruid, instruct (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Que yo instruya,</i> | that I may instruct. |
| <i>Que tú instruyas,</i> | that thou mayst instruct. |
| <i>Que él instruya,</i> | that he may instruct. |
| <i>Que nosotros instruyamos,</i> | that we may instruct. |
| <i>Que vosotros instruyais,</i> | that you may instruct. |
| <i>Que ellos instruyan,</i> | that they may instruct. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Yo instruyere,</i> | <i>tú instruyeres,</i> | <i>él instruyere.</i> |
| <i>Nosotros instruyéremos</i> | <i>vosotros instruyéreis,</i> | <i>ellos instruyeren.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| <i>Que yo instruyera,</i> | or <i>instruyese,</i> | that I might | } instruct. |
| <i>Que tú instruyeras</i> | or <i>instruyeses</i> | that thou mightst | |
| <i>Que él instruyera,</i> | or <i>instruyese,</i> | that he might | |
| <i>Que nosotros instruyéramos,</i> | or <i>instruyésemos,</i> | that we might | |
| <i>Que vosotros instruyerais,</i> | or <i>instruyéseis,</i> | that you might | |
| <i>Que ellos instruyeran,</i> | or <i>instruyesen,</i> | that they might | |

Thus are conjugated *influir*, to influence; *atribuir*, to attribute, etc. See Index.

Segun, according to.

183. The following list comprises the principal prepositions :

| | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>A,</i> | to, at. |
| <i>Ante,</i> | before. |
| <i>Cerca (de),</i> | near. |
| <i>Con,</i> | with. |
| <i>Contra,</i> | against. |
| <i>De,</i> | of, from. |
| <i>Desde,</i> | since. |
| <i>En,</i> | in. |
| <i>Entre,</i> | between. |
| <i>Hacia,</i> | towards. |
| <i>Hasta,</i> | until. |
| <i>Para,</i> | in order to. |
| <i>Por,</i> | for. |
| <i>Segun,</i> | according to. |
| <i>Sin,</i> | without. |
| <i>Sobre,</i> | over. |
| <i>Tras,</i> | behind. |

See Rule 78.

Acabar, to finish; *enseñar*, to teach; *inclinarse*, to incline; *mandar*, to manage; *ordenar*, to order, to put in order, to ordain; and *reparar*, to repair, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

Parecer, to appear, to seem, belongs to the class explained in Rule 147; and *perder*, to lose, to that of No. 138.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. To afflict, 180. | 19. To influence, 182. |
| 2. I afflict. | 20. I influence. |
| 3. He afflicts. | 21. He influences. |
| 4. We afflict. | 22. We influence. |
| 5. You afflict. | 23. You influence. |
| 6. They afflict. | 24. They influence. |
| 7. I afflicted. | 25. I did influence. |
| 8. He afflicted. | 26. He did influence. |
| 9. We afflicted. | 27. We did influence. |
| 10. You afflicted. | 28. You did influence. |
| 11. They afflicted. | 29. They did influence. |
| 12. I shall afflict. | 30. I shall influence. |
| 13. He shall afflict. | 31. He shall influence. |
| 14. We shall afflict. | 32. We shall influence. |
| 15. You shall afflict. | 33. You shall influence. |
| 16. They shall afflict. | 34. They shall influence. |
| 17. I should afflict. | 35. I should influence. |
| 18. Let him afflict. | 36. Let him influence. |

37. I did pay, 180.—38. He did arrive, 180.—39. Let him pay, 180.—40. Let him arrive, 180.—41. Before paying, 78, 183.—42. In selling, 78.—43. In order to buy, 78.—44. Without seeing, 78.—45. Without money, 183.—46. Between us, 183.—47. According to them, 183.—48. Until this morning, 183.—49. Have you learned your lesson?—50. Not yet.—51. When will you know it?—52. Very soon.—53. What are you going to do this afternoon?—54. I will take a ride.—55. Where to?—56. To the park.—57. If I have time, I will go with you, 183.—58. I have just written a letter, 181.—59. He has just taken a ride, 181.—60. We have just dined, 181.—61. What have you just done? 181.—62. They have just breakfasted, 181.—63. Before me, 183.—64. Against you, 183.—65. Near us, 183.—66. Since that, 183.—67. Until to-morrow, 183.

EIGHTEENTA LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Lateral Translation.*

Leccion décimaoctava.

Lesson eighteenth.

La Valiente Española.

The brave Spanishwoman.

Extracto de la Historia de España

Extract from the History of Spain,

del Padre Isla.

by the Father Isla.

La derrota que la soberbia armada,
The rout which the superb armada,
llamada la Invencible, experimentó en el
called the Invincible, experienced at the
cabo de Finisterre en consecuencia de los
cape of Finisterre in consequence of the
recios temporales, puso tan orgullosa á
strong storms, put so proud to
Isabel de Inglaterra, que expedió contra
Elizabeth of England, that she sent against
las costas de Galicia y Portugal una
the coasts of Galicia and Portugal a
escuadra de setenta naves, al mando del
squadron of seventy ships, at the command of the
temible Drake, quien con efecto desembarcó
feared Drake, who indeed disembarked
en el puerto de la Coruña; pero fué
in the port of Corunna; but he was

* See note on page 119.

rechazado por el paisanage, los muchachos

driven back by the peasantry, the boys

y las mujeres tambien peleando con el

and the women as well fighting with the

mayor denuedo. Una de estas, despues de

greatest courage. One of these, after

haber hecho prodigios de valor al lado

having made prodigies of valor at the side

de su marido, lejos de acobardarse al

of her husband, far from becoming terrified at the

verle caer muerto de un bote de lanza,

seeing him fall dead from a thrust of lance,

arremetió con la suya á un alférez ingles,

attacked with hers an ensign English

que subia por la muralla, y arrancandole

who ascended by the wall, and taking away from him

la bandera, le tendió á sus piés.

the standard, him she stretched at her feet.

The same in good English.

LA VALIENTE ESPAÑOLA.

Extracto de la Historia de España del Padre Isla.

La derrota que la soberbia armada, llamada la Invencible, experimentó en el cabo de Finisterre en consecuencia de los recios temporales, puso tan orgullosa á Isabel de Inglaterra, que expidió contra las costas de Galicia y Portugal una escuadra de setenta naves, al mando del temible Drake, quien con efecto desembarcó en el puerto de la Coruña; pero fué rechazado por el paisanage, los muchachos y

THE BRAVE SPANISHWOMAN.

Extract from the History of Spain, by Father Isla.

The defeat of the famous Spanish Armada, called "the Invincible," through the result of severe storms off Cape Finisterre, sc elated Queen Elizabeth of England, that she immediately sent a squadron of seventy sail, under the command of the much-dreaded Drake, to the coasts of Galicia and Portugal, where he indeed effected a landing at Coruña; but he was soon repulsed by the peasantry of the place, the

las mujeres tambien peleando con el mayor denuedo.

Una de estas, despues de haber hecho prodigios de valor al lado de su marido, lejos de acobardarse al verle caer muerto de un bote de lanza, arremetió con la suya á un alferéz ingles, que subia por la muralla, y arrancandole la bandera, le tendió á sus piés.

boys and women fighting with equal valor. One of the latter, in particular, after having displayed great courage alongside of her husband, seeing him run through with a lance and fall dead at her feet, instead of being terrified at the sight, resolutely attacked an English ensign who was in the act of scaling the wall, took his colors, and killed him on the spot.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿ Que leccion es esta ? | La décimaoctava. |
| ¿ De que se habla en esta leccion ? | De una valiente Española. |
| ¿ Como se llamó la soberbia armada ? | La Invencible. |
| ¿ Donde experimentó una derrota ? | En el cabo de Finisterre. |
| ¿ En consecuencia de que ? | En consecuencia de los reveses temporales. |
| ¿ A quien puso orgullosa esta derrota ? | A Isabel de Inglaterra. |
| ¿ Que expedió ? | Una escuadra de setenta naves. |
| ¿ Al mando de quien ? | Al mando del temible Drake. |
| ¿ Contra cuales costas ? | Contra las de Galicia y Portugal. |
| ¿ En que puerto desembarcó con efecto ? | En el puerto de la Coruña. |
| ¿ Fué rechazado ? | Fué rechazado por el paisanage. |
| ¿ Quienes pelearon tambien con el mayor denuedo ? | Los muchachos y las mujeres. |
| ¿ Que habia hecho una de estas mujeres ? | Prodigios de valor al lado de su marido. |
| ¿ De que estuvo lejos al verle caer muerto ? | De acobardarse. |
| ¿ De que cayó muerto ? | De un bote de lanza. |
| ¿ Que hizo ella con la suya ? | Arremetió á un alferéz ingles. |
| ¿ Por donde subia ? | Por la muralla. |
| ¿ De que manera le tendió á sus piés. | Arrancandole la bandera le tendió á sus piés. |
| ¿ De que historia es este extracto ? | De la Historia de España de Padre Isla. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La derrota.
 La armada.
 El cabo.
 Los temporales.
 La costa.
 La escuadra.
 La nave.
 El mando.
 El puerto.
 El paisanage.
 El denuedo.
 El muchacho.
 La mujer.
 El prodigio.
 La muralla.

La costa de América.

Los hombres y las mujeres.

La Historia de los Estados Unidos.

¿Cuántas naves expidió Isabel?

Expidió setenta.

¿Dónde está situada Portugal?

Al occidente de España.

Hágame el favor V. de decirme los límites de aquel país.

Portugal está limitado al norte y oriente por la España, y al occidente y sur por el océano atlántico.

¿Dónde está Galicia?

En la parte del norte de España.

¿Dónde está la Coruña?

En Galicia, cerca del cabo de Finisterre.

¿Cuál armada experimentó allí un recio temporal?

La famosa armada española, la *Invencible*.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The rout.
 The navy.
 The cape.
 The storms.
 The coast.
 The squadron.
 The ship.
 The command.
 The port.
 The peasantry.
 The courage.
 The boy.
 The woman, or the wife.
 The prodigy.
 The wall.

The coast of America.

The men and women.

The History of the United States.

How many ships did Elizabeth send?

She sent seventy.

Where is Portugal situated?

West of Spain.

Tell me the limits of that country, if you please.

Portugal is bounded on the north and east by Spain, and on the west and south by the Atlantic ocean.

Where is Galicia?

In the northern part of Spain.

Where is Corunna?

In Galicia, near Cape Finisterre.

Which navy experienced a severe storm there?

The famous Spanish armada, the *Invincible*.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿ Hay muchos buenos puertos en Inglaterra ? | Are there many good seaports in England ? |
| Hay muchísimos. | There are a great many. |
| ¿ Ha visitado V. algunos ? | Have you visited some of them ? |
| He visitado algunos. | I have visited several. |
| ¿ Quien ha escrito la Historia de España ? | Who has written the History of Spain ? |
| El Padre Isla. | Father Isla. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

La valiente Española, the brave Spanishwoman.

184. The names denoting the natives of a country, and words ending with **an**, **on**, or **or**, form their feminine by the addition of an **a**.

Ex. *El Ingles*, the Englishman. *El gigante*, the giant.
La Inglesa, the Englishwoman. *La gigantea*, the giantess.

185. This completes the study of the formation of the feminine in Spanish :

Adjectives ending with **o** in the masculine, change **o** into **a** in the feminine ; but those ending otherwise are alike in both genders.

Nouns denoting titles, qualities, professions, or degrees of relationship which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives by means of the same terminations as the adjectives.

The names denoting the natives of a country, and words ending with **an**, **on**, or **or**, form their feminine by the addition of an **a**.

Invencible, invincible.

186. Many words ending with **ible** are alike, or nearly so, in both languages, with little or no other difference of orthography ; as, *Flexible*, flexible ; *sensible*, sensible ; *posible*, possible, etc.

Puso tan orgullosa á Isabel, made Elizabeth so proud.

The preposition **á** is introduced here in accordance with

Rule 140. This observation applies also to *arremetió á un alfercz*, attacked an ensign.

Rechazada, chased back;
from *Rechazar*, to chase back.

187. Verbs ending with **zar**, change **z** into **c** before **e**.

Ex. *Rechazar*, to chase back. *Rechacé*, I did chase back
The verbs of this class already seen are :

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Alcanzar</i> , to desire. | <i>Familiarizar</i> , to familiarize. |
| <i>Almorzar</i> , to breakfast. | <i>Rechazar</i> , to chase back. |
| <i>Disfrazar</i> , to disguise. | <i>Rivalizar</i> , to rival. |

Depues de haber, after having.

188. *Depues*, as a preposition, is always followed by **de** (78).

At verle, at seeing him.

189. Only the infinitive of verbs can be used as substantive in Spanish. It is then invariably accompanied by an article, or some determinative word, like any other noun.

Muerto.

190. **Muerto** answers in turn to *dead* and *died*, in English; it is the participle past of the irregular verb **morir**, to die, whose conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Morir, to die.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Muriendo, dying.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Muerto, died.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo muero</i> , | I die, | or do die. |
| <i>Tú mueres</i> , | thou diest, | or dost die. |
| <i>El muere</i> , | he dies, | or does die. |
| <i>Nosotros morimos</i> , | we die, | or do die. |
| <i>Vosotros moris</i> , | you die, | or do die. |
| <i>Ellos mueren</i> , | they die, | or do die. |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo moria,</i> | I died. |
| <i>Tú morias,</i> | thou diedst. |
| <i>El moria,</i> | he died. |
| <i>Nosotros moríamos,</i> | we died. |
| <i>Vosotros moriais,</i> | you died. |
| <i>Ellos morian,</i> | they died. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo morí,</i> | I died, | or did die. |
| <i>Tú moriste,</i> | thou diedst, | or didst die. |
| <i>El murió,</i> | he died, | or did die. |
| <i>Nosotros morimos,</i> | we died, | or did die. |
| <i>Vosotros moristeis,</i> | you died, | or did die. |
| <i>Ellos murieron,</i> | they died, | or did die. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo moriré,</i> | I shall die, | or will die. |
| <i>Tú morirás,</i> | thou shalt die, | or wilt die. |
| <i>El morirá,</i> | he shall die, | or will die. |
| <i>Nosotros moriremos,</i> | we shall die, | or will die. |
| <i>Vosotros moriréis,</i> | you shall die, | or will die. |
| <i>Ellos morirán,</i> | they shall die, | or will die. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo moriría,</i> | I should die, | or would die. |
| <i>Tú morirías,</i> | thou shouldst die, | or wouldst die. |
| <i>El moriría,</i> | he should die, | or would die. |
| <i>Nosotros moriríamos,</i> | we should die, | or would die. |
| <i>Vosotros moriríais,</i> | you should die, | or would die. |
| <i>Ellos morirían,</i> | they should die, | or would die. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Muere, die (thou).
Morid, die (you).

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo muriera,</i> | <i>tú murieras,</i> | <i>si muriera,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros muriéramos,</i> | <i>vosotros murierais,</i> | <i>ellos murieran.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Que yo muera,</i> | that I may die. |
| <i>Que tú mueras,</i> | that thou mayst die. |
| <i>Que él muera,</i> | that he may die. |
| <i>Que nosotros muramos,</i> | that we may die. |
| <i>Que vosotros murais,</i> | that you may die. |
| <i>Que ellos mueran,</i> | that they may die. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo muriera,</i> | or <i>muriese,</i> | that I might die. |
| <i>Que tú murieras,</i> | or <i>murieses,</i> | that thou mightst die. |
| <i>Que él muriera,</i> | or <i>muriese,</i> | that he might die. |
| <i>Que nosotros muriéramos,</i> | or <i>muriésemos,</i> | that we might die. |
| <i>Que vosotros muriérais,</i> | or <i>muriéseis,</i> | that you might die. |
| <i>Que ellos murieran,</i> | or <i>muriesen,</i> | that they might die. |

This verb is, however, more used in the reflective form, *morirse*. See Rule 9.

191. *Dormir*, to sleep, is conjugated like *morir*, to die, except in the participle past, which is *dormido*, slept.

La suya, hers.

192. **La suya** is the feminine form of **el suyo**; the possessive pronoun corresponding to the possessive adjective **su**, **sus**, already seen. Its plural masculine is **los suyos**, and its plural feminine **las suyas**, all of which answer in turn to HIS, HERS, ITS, and THEIRS, according to the gender and number of the object possessed. See Rule 57.

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Mi hermano y el suyo,</i> | my brother and his or hers. |
| <i>Mi hermana y la suya,</i> | my sister and his or hers. |
| <i>Mis hermanos y los suyos,</i> | my brothers and his or hers. |
| <i>Mis hermanas y las suyas,</i> | my sisters and his or hers. |

193. In English, **his** is alike as an adjective and as a pronoun, but it is not so in Spanish. When joined to the name of a

person or thing, it is translated by **su** for the singular, and by **sus** for the plural; but when not so placed, **el suyo, la suya, los suyos, or las suyas**, is the proper equivalent, according to Rule 192 of this lesson. See also Rule 28.

194. The possessive pronouns complete are :

| Masc. sing. | Fem. sing. | Masc. plur. | Fem. plur. |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| El mio, | la mia, | los mios, | las mias. |
| El tuyo, | la tuya, | los tuyos, | las tuyas. |
| El suyo, | la suya, | los suyos, | las suyas. |
| El nuestro, | la nuestra, | los nuestros, | las nuestras. |
| El vuestro, | la vuestra, | los vuestros, | las vuestras. |
| El suyo, | la suya, | los suyos, | las suyas. |

These pronouns, like their corresponding adjectives, agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor.

Ex. *Este sombrero es el suyo*, this hat is his, hers, or theirs.

195. **El suyo**, and its several forms, corresponding in turn to **HIS, HERS, ITS, THEIRS**, and even to **YOURS** (see Rule 7), it is often necessary to add after it, **de él, de ella, de ellos, de ellas, de V., or de Vs.**, to indicate more clearly in what particular sense it is used.

Ex. *Este sombrero es el suyo de él*, this hat is his.
Este sombrero es el suyo de ella, this hat is hers.
Este sombrero es el suyo de V., this hat is yours.

Lance, lance, and *nave*, ship, are feminine by exception.

Acobardar, to become frightened; *experimentar*, to experiment; and *pelear*, to fight, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Arremeter*, to assail, and *tender*, to stretch, are of the second; and *subir*, to ascend, of the third.

Arraxcar, to pull down, and *desembarcar*, to disembark, go like Rule 145; *expedir*, like Rule 162; and *caer*, like Rule 182.

Haber, to have; *hacer*, to make; and *morir*, to die, are irregular verbs, which have already been seen.

Poner, to put, and *ver*, to see, will be explained later.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. To breakfast, 187 | 21. To sleep, 191. |
| 2. I breakfast. | 22. I sleep. |
| 3. He breakfasts. | 23. He sleeps. |
| 4. We breakfast. | 24. We sleep. |
| 5. You breakfast. | 25. You sleep. |
| 6. They breakfast. | 26. They sleep. |
| 7. I breakfasted. | 27. I slept. |
| 8. I did breakfast. | 28. He slept. |
| 9. He did breakfast. | 29. We slept. |
| 10. We did breakfast. | 30. You slept. |
| 11. You did breakfast. | 31. They slept. |
| 12. They did breakfast. | 32. I did sleep. |
| 13. I shall breakfast. | 33. I shall sleep. |
| 14. I should breakfast. | 34. I should sleep. |
| 15. Breakfast. | 35. Sleep. |
| 16. That I may breakfast. | 36. That I may sleep. |
| 17. That he may breakfast. | 37. That I might sleep. |
| 18. That we may breakfast. | 38. I have slept. |
| 19. That you may breakfast. | 39. I had slept. |
| 20. That they may breakfast. | 40. I shall have slept. |

41. The Frenchman—the Frenchwoman, 184.—42. After having spoken, 188.—43. After having slept, 188.—44. After having breakfasted, 188.—45. A dead man, 190.—46. A dead woman, 190.—47. He died last year.—48. Have you my sister's books?—49. I have hers, 192, 193, 195.—50. Have you my brother's pens?—51. I have his, 192, 193, 195.—52. My grammar or his, 192, 193, 195.—53. My dictionary or hers, 192, 193, 195.—54. Your gloves and hers, 192, 193, 195.—55. Your keys and his, 192, 193, 195.—56. This horse is yours, 195.—57. That mule is his, 195.—58. These animals are theirs, 195.—59. This exercise is his, 195.—60. Those things are yours, 195.

NINEIIEENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion décimanona.*

Lesson nineteenth.

Extracto de un Bosquejo del Carácter de la

Extract from a sketch of the Character of the

Reina Isabel, de Hume.

Queen Elizabeth, by Hume.

Traducido del Inglés por Salvá.

Translated from the English by Salvá.

Ocurren pocos personajes en la historia,

Occur few personages in the history

que hayan estado mas espuestos á la

who may have been more exposed to the

calumnia de los enemigos y á la adulacion

calumny of the enemies and to the flattery

de los partidarios que la reina Isabel; y

of the partisans than the Queen Elizabeth; and

con todo apenas habrá ninguno, cuya

with all hardly there will be any whose

reputacion haya fijado de un modo mas

reputation may have fixed in a manner more

positivo el unánime consentimiento de

positive the unanimous consent of

la posteridad. Por la extraordinaria

the posterity. By the extraordinary

duracion de su reinado, y por ser tan

duration of her reign, and by to be so

* See note on page 119.

particularmente señaladas, sus buenas y
 particularly marked, her good and
sus malas calidades, llegaron á acallarse
 her bad qualities did arrive to silence themselves
todas las pasiones; y rebajando los
 all the passions; and abating the
calumniadores mucho de sus invectivas,
 calumniators much of their invectives,
y los admiradores algo de sus panegíri-
 and the admirers something of their panegyrics,
cos, se obtuvo finalmente, á despecho de
 itself it did obtain finally, in spite of
las facciones políticas, y lo que mas es,
 the factious political, and what more is,
de las desavenencias religiosas, un juicio
 of the animosities religious, a judgment
uniforme respecto de su conducta.
 uniform respecting of her conduct.

The same in good English.

EXTRACTO DE UN BOSQUEJO
 DEL CARÁCTER DE LA REINA
 ISABEL, DE HUME.

Traducido del Inglés por SALVÁ.

Ocurren pocos personajes en la historia que hayan estado mas espuestos á la calumnia de los enemigos y á la adulacion de los partidarios que la reina Isabel; y con todo apenas habrá ninguno, cuya reputacion haya fijado de un modo mas positivo el unánime consentimiento de la posteridad. Por la extraordinaria duracion de su reinado, y por ser tan parti-

EXTRACT FROM A SKETCH OF
 QUEEN ELIZABETH'S CHAR-
 ACTER, BY HUME.

Translated from the English by SALVÁ.

There are few personages in history who have been more exposed to the calumny of enemies and the adulation of friends than Queen Elizabeth: and yet there is scarcely any whose reputation has been more certainly determined by the unanimous consent of posterity.

The unusual length of her administration, and the strong

oularmente señaladas, sus buenas y sus malas calidades, llegaron á acallarse todas las pasiones; y rebajando los calumniadores mucho de sus invectivas, y los admiradores algo de sus panegíricos, se obtuvo finalmente, á despecho de las facciones políticas, y lo que mas es, de las desavenencias religiosas, un juicio uniforme respecto de su conducta.

features of her character, were able to overcome all prejudices; and obliging her detractors to abate much of their invectives, and her admirers somewhat of their panegyrics, have at last, in spite of political factions, and, what is more, of religious animosities, produced uniform judgment with regard to her conduct.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ¿ Que leccion es esta ? | La décimanona. |
| ¿ De que se habla en esta leccion ? | Del carácter de la reina Isabel. |
| ¿ A que ha estado espuesta Isabel en la historia ? | A la calumnia de sus enemigos. |
| ¿ Y á que mas ? | A la adulacion de sus partidarios. |
| ¿ Que ha fijado su reputacion ? | El unánime consentimiento de la posteridad. |
| ¿ De que modo ? | De un modo mas positivo. |
| ¿ Como llegaron á acallarse todas las pasiones ? | Por la extraordinaria duracion de su reinado. |
| ¿ Y por que mas ? | Por ser tan particularmente señaladas sus buenas y sus malas calidades. |
| ¿ Quienes rebajaron mucho de sus invectivas ? | Los calumniadores. |
| ¿ Que rebajaron los calumniadores ? | Mucho de sus invectivas. |
| ¿ Quienes rebajaron algo de sus panegíricos ? | Los admiradores. |
| ¿ Que rebajaron los admiradores ? | Algo de sus panegíricos. |
| ¿ Que se obtuvo finalmente ? | Un juicio uniforme. |
| ¿ Respecto de que ? | Respecto de su conducta. |
| ¿ A despecho de que ? | A despecho de las facciones políticas. |
| ¿ Y de que mas ? | De las desavenencias religiosas. |
| ¿ Quien ha escrito este bosquejo ? | El famoso autor ingles Hume. |
| ¿ Y quien le ha traducido ? | El ilustre escritor español Salvá |

Sentences for Oral Translation

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

- El bosquejo.
 El carácter.
 La reina.
 La calumnia.
 El enemigo.
 Un partidario.
 La posteridad.
 Un calumniador.
 Un admirador.
 El panegírico.
 La desavenencia.
 La invectiva.
 El reinado.
 El consentimiento unánime.
 El juicio uniforme.
 Una conducta extraordinaria.
 Isabel era una de las mas famosas
 reinas de Inglaterra.
 ¿Que clase de pais es Inglaterra?
 Es uno de los paises mas comer-
 ciales del mundo.
 ¿Que puso tan orgullosa á la reina
 Isabel?
 La derrota de la armada española.
 ¿En que lugar se experimentó
 esta derrota?
 En el cabo de Finisterre.
 ¿Donde está situado este cabo?
 En el parte mas del norte de
 España.
 ¿Tenia muchas naves en este
 tiempo la España?
 Tenia mas que jamas ha tenido
 despues.
 ¿Donde se dió en este tiempo
 una batalla famosa?
 En el puerto de la Coruña.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- The sketch.
 The character.
 The queen.
 The calumny.
 The enemy.
 A partisan.
 Posterity.
 A slanderer.
 An admirer.
 The panegyric.
 The animosity.
 The invective.
 The reign.
 The unanimous consent.
 The uniform judgment.
 An extraordinary conduct.
 Elizabeth was one of the most
 famous queens of England.
 What kind of a country is Eng-
 land?
 It is one of the most commercial
 countries in the world.
 What made Queen Elizabeth
 proud?
 The defeat of the Spanish armada
 Where did this defeat take place.
 Off Cape Finisterre.
 Where is this cape situated?
 In the most northern part of
 Spain.
 Had Spain many vessels at that
 time?
 It had more than it has ever had
 since.
 Where did a famous battle take
 place then?
 In the port of Corunna.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿Porqué es tan famosa esta batalla? | Why is this battle so famous? |
| Porque los muchachos y las mujeres pelearon con mucho denuedo. | Because boys and women fought with great courage |
| Quien hizo prodigios en este tiempo? | Who did wonders then? |
| Una valiente Española. | A valiant Spanish woman. |
| ¿Quien cayó muerto en esta batalla? | Who was killed in this battle? |
| Su marido cayó muerto a su lado. | Her husband was killed at her side. |
| ¿Que hizo ella entónces? | What did she do then? |
| Arremetió á un alférez inglés con su lanza, y le tendió á sus piés. | She assailed an English ensign with her lance, and killed him. |
| ¿Cual es el juicio de la posteridad respecto de la reina Isabel? | What is the judgment of posterity about Queen Elizabeth? |
| Que era una mujer soberbia y arrogante. | That she was a proud and arrogant woman. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Personajes, personages.

196. Words ending with *age*, in English, generally end with *je* in Spanish, with little or no other difference of orthography; as, *Paje*, page; *equipaje*, equipage; *carruaje*, carriage, etc.

Espuestos, exposed; from esponer, to expose.

197. The irregular verbs, though numerous, are for the most part only derivatives or compounds of about forty radical ones, the knowledge of which will suffice to conjugate any exceptional one. In the present work, therefore, the radical irregular verbs will alone be given with any degree of completeness; and *absolver*, to absolve; *dissolver*, to dissolve, will be conjugated like *solver*, to solve: and *esponer*, to expose; *oponer*, to oppose; *suponer*, to suppose; *deponer*, to depose; *disponer*, to dispose, etc., like *poner*, to put.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Poner, to put.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Poniendo, putting.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Puesto, put.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo pongo,</i> | I put, | or do put. |
| <i>Tú pones,</i> | thou puttest, | or dost put. |
| <i>El pone,</i> | he puts, | or does put. |
| <i>Nosotros ponemos,</i> | we put, | or do put. |
| <i>Vosotros poneis,</i> | you put, | or do put. |
| <i>Ellos ponen,</i> | they put, | or do put. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo ponía,</i> | I put, | or used to put. |
| <i>Tú ponías,</i> | thou puttest, | or usedst to put. |
| <i>El ponía,</i> | he put, | or used to put. |
| <i>Nosotros poníamos,</i> | we put, | or used to put. |
| <i>Vosotros poníais,</i> | you put, | or used to put. |
| <i>Ellos ponían,</i> | they put, | or used to put. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo puse,</i> | I put, | or did put. |
| <i>Tú pusiste,</i> | thou puttest, | or didst put. |
| <i>El puso,</i> | he put, | or did put. |
| <i>Nosotros pusimos,</i> | we put, | or did put. |
| <i>Vosotros pusisteis,</i> | you put, | or did put. |
| <i>Ellos pusieron,</i> | they put, | or did put. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo pondré,</i> | I shall put, | or will put. |
| <i>Tú pondrás,</i> | thou shalt put, | or wilt put. |
| <i>El pondrá,</i> | he shall put, | or will put. |
| <i>Nosotros pondremos,</i> | we shall put, | or will put. |
| <i>Vosotros pondréis,</i> | you shall put, | or will put. |
| <i>Ellos pondrán,</i> | they shall put, | or will put. |

The second future is (see note on page 25) :

Yo pusiere, tú pusieres, él pusiere,
Nosotros pusiéremos, vosotros pusieréis, ellos pusieran.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo pondría,</i> | I should put, | or would put. |
| <i>Tú pondrías,</i> | thou shouldst put, | or wouldst put. |
| <i>El pondría,</i> | he should put, | or would put. |
| <i>Nosotros pondríamos,</i> | we should put, | or would put. |
| <i>Vosotros pondríais,</i> | you should put, | or would put. |
| <i>Ellos pondrían,</i> | they should put, | or would put. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pon, put (thou).

Poned, put (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Que yo ponga,</i> | that I may put. |
| <i>Que tú pongas,</i> | that thou mayst put. |
| <i>Que él ponga,</i> | that he may put. |
| <i>Que nosotros pongamos,</i> | that we may put. |
| <i>Que vosotros pongais,</i> | that you may put. |
| <i>Que ellos pongan,</i> | that they may put. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo pusiera,</i> | or <i>pusiese,</i> | that I might put. |
| <i>Que tú pusieras,</i> | or <i>pusieses,</i> | that thou mightst put. |
| <i>Que él pusiera,</i> | or <i>pusiese,</i> | that he might put. |
| <i>Que nosotros pusiéramos,</i> | or <i>pusiésemos,</i> | that we might put. |
| <i>Que vosotros pusierais,</i> | or <i>pusiéseis,</i> | that you might put. |
| <i>Que ellos pusieran,</i> | or <i>pusiesen,</i> | that they might put. |

Ninguno, none.

198. **Ninguno** answers to NOBODY, NONE, NOT ANY, and so. Its feminine singular is **ninguna**; its masculine plural, **ningunos**; and its feminine plural, **ningunas**. **Ningun** is used instead of *ninguno* before a noun masculine.

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Ex. <i>Ningun árbol,</i> | no tree. |
| <i>Ninguna planta,</i> | no plant. |
| <i>Ningunos insectos,</i> | no insects. |
| <i>Ningunas mariposas,</i> | no butterflies. |

Cuya reputacion, whose reputation.

199. **Cuyo** is another equivalent of **whose**; but it differs from **de quien** and **del cual**, already seen, inasmuch as it cannot be used without a noun, and that it agrees in gender and number with the word before which it is placed. Its feminine singular is **cuya**; its plural masculine, **cuyos**; and its feminine plural, **cuyas**.

Ex. Whose hat? *¿cuyo sombrero?*
 Whose hats? *¿cuyos sombreros?*
 Whose pen? *¿cuya pluma?*
 Whose pens? *¿cuyas plumas?*

Cuyo is, however, less used as an interrogative than as a relative, and **whose**, at the beginning of a sentence, is most often translated by **de quien**.

Ex. Whose hat is this? *¿De quien es este sombrero?*
 The man whose brother I saw, *El hombre cuyo hermano yo he visto*

Positivo, positive.

200. Words ending with **ivo**, in Spanish, generally end with *ive* in English, with little or no other difference of orthography as, *Activo*, active; *atentivo*, attentive; *adjetivo*, adjective, etc.

Llegaran á acallarse,
 they succeed in silencing.

201. *Llegar* is generally followed by the preposition **á**.

Ex. *Llegar á la casa*, to reach the house.
Llegar á la calle, to reach the street.
Llegar á saber, to succeed in knowing.

Respecto de su conducta,
 respecting her conduct.

202. *Respecto* is generally followed by the preposition **de**.

Acallar, to silence; *fixar*, to fix; *rebajar*, to diminish; *señalar*, to signalize, are regular verbs of the first conjugation, *ocurrir*, to occur, is of the third.

Obtener goes like *tener*. See page 33.

Llegar, to arrive, goes like *pagar* (see Rule 180); and *traducir*, to translate, has already been explained on page 134.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I suppose, 197. | 16. I should suppose, 197. |
| 2. He supposes. | 17. He should suppose. |
| 3. We suppose. | 18. We should suppose. |
| 4. You suppose. | 19. You should suppose. |
| 5. They suppose. | 20. They should suppose. |
| 6. I supposed. | 21. I have supposed. |
| 7. He supposed. | 22. He has supposed. |
| 8. We supposed. | 23. We have supposed. |
| 9. You supposed. | 24. You have supposed. |
| 10. They supposed. | 25. They have supposed. |
| 11. I shall suppose. | 26. Let him suppose. |
| 12. He shall suppose. | 27. Let us suppose. |
| 13. We shall suppose. | 28. Let them suppose. |
| 14. You shall suppose. | 29. Suppose. |
| 15. They shall suppose. | 30. Supposing. |

31. No money, 198.—32. No flower, 198.—33. No horses, 198.—34. No mules, 198.—35. Whose book is this? 199.—36. Whose pencils are these? 199.—37. Whose cloak is this? 199.—38. Whose gloves are those? 199.—39. Whose pen is that? 199.—40. Whose flowers are those? 199.—41. Whose waistcoat is this? 199.—42. Whose boots are these? 199.—43. The boy whose mother I met yesterday, 199.—44. The house whose windows are broken, 199.—45. When did you reach the house? 201.—46. I arrived at six o'clock, 201.—47. Have you succeeded in learning Spanish? 201.—48. I begin to speak it, 201.—49. At what o'clock did you reach town? 201.—50. At a quarter-past nine.—51. Did you succeed in obtaining your money? 201.—52. Not all, but a part of it.—53. Respecting this, 202.—54. Respecting that, 202.

TWENTIETH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.*

Leccion vigésima.

Lesson twentieth.

Diversidad de Carácter de las Provincias

Diversity of Character of the Provinces

Españolas, de Cadalso.

Spanish, by Cadalso.

Los Cántabros, entendiendo por este

The Cantabrians, meaning by this

nombre todos los que hablan el idioma

name all those who speak the idiom

vizcaino, son unos pueblos sencillos y de

Biscayan, are a people simple and of

notoria probidad. Fuéron los primeros

notorious probity. They were the first

marineros de Europa, y han mantenido

mariners of Europe, and they have maintained

siempre la fama de excelentes hombres de

always the reputation of excellent men of

mar. Su país, aunque sumamente áspero,

sea. Their country, though very rough,

tiene una poblacion numerosísima, que

has a population very numerous, which

no parece disminuirse con las continuas

not appears to diminish itself with the continuous

colonias que envía á la América. Aunque

colonies which it sends to the America. Although

* See note on page 119.

un Vizcaino se ausente de su patria,
 a Biscayan himself absents from his fatherland,
siempre se halla en ella como se
 always himself he finds in it whenever himself
encuentre un paisano suyo. Tienen entre
 he meets a countryman his, They have among
si tal union, que la mayor recomenda-
 themselves such union, that the greatest recommendation
cion que puede uno tener para con otro,
 which can one have for with other,
es el mero hecho de ser Vizcaino, sin mas
 is the mere fact of to be Biscayan, without more
diferencia entre varios de ellos, para
 difference among the various of them, for
alcanzar el favor del poderoso, que la
 to obtain the favor of the powerful, than the
mayor ó menor inmediacion de los lugares
 greater or less proximity of the places
respectivos. El Señorío de Vizcaya, Gui-
 respective. The Seignory of Biscay, Gui-
puzcoa, Alaba y el reino de Navarra, tienen
 puscoa, Alaba, and the kingdom of Navarre, have
tal pacto entre si, que algunos llaman
 such pact among themselves, that some call
estos paises las Provincias Unidas de España.
 these countries the Provinces United of Spain.

The same in good English.

DIVERSIDAD DE CARÁCTER DE
 LAS PROVINCIAS ESPAÑOLAS,
 DE CADALSO.

Los Cantabros, entendiendo
 por este nombre todos los que
 hablan el idioma vizcaino, son

DIVERSITY OF CHARACTER OF
 THE SPANISH PROVINCES, BY
 CADALSO.

The Cantabrians, comprising
 under that name all such as
 speak the Biscayan language,

unos pueblos sencillos y de notoria probidad. Fuéron los primeros marineros de Europa, y han mantenido siempre la fama de excelentes hombres de mar. Su país, aunque sumamente áspero, tiene una poblacion numerosísima, que no parece disminuirse con las continuas colonias que envia á la América. Aunque un Viscaino se ausente de su patria, siempre se halla en ella como se encuentre un paisano suyo. Tienen entre sí tal union, que la mayor recomendacion que puede uno tener para con otro, es el mero hecho de ser Vizcaino, sin mas diferencia entre varios de ellos, para alcanzar el favor del poderoso, que la mayor ó menor inmediacion de los lugares respectivos. El Señorío de Vizcaya, Guipuzcoa, Alaba y el reino de Navarra, tienen tal pacto entre sí, que algunos llaman estos países las Provincias Unidas de España.

are a simple and honest people. First among the sailors of Europe, they have always sustained a high reputation as sea men; and their country, though very rough, continues well populated, in spite of the many colonies it furnishes to America. Be he never so far from his native land, the Biscayan always feels at home whenever he meets one of his own countrymen; and they are so warmly attached to each other, that they know of no better recommendation among them than the mere fact of being a Biscayan; the degree of their favor being regulated only by the greater or less proximity of their respective birthplaces. This is so specially the case with the territories of Biscay, Guipuzcoa, Alaba, and the kingdom of Navarre, that they are often called the United Provinces of Spain.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que leccion es esta?

La vigésima.

¿De que se habla en esta leccion?

De la diversidad de carácter de las provincias españolas.

¿Quienes se entienden por el nombre de los Cántabros?

Todos los que hablan el idioma vizcaino.

Que clase de pueblos son?

Son pueblos sencillos y de notoria probidad.

¿Que fuéron los Cántabros?

Los primeros marineros de Europa.

¿Que han mantenido siempre?

La fama de excelentes hombres de mar.

¿Como es su país?

Sumamente áspero.

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿ Y que tiene este país ? | Una poblacion numerosísima. |
| ¿ Con que no parece disminuirse esta poblacion ? | Con las continuas colonias que envia á la América. |
| ¿ Aunque un Vizcaino se ausente de su país cuando se halla siempre en é. ? | Como se encuentre un paisano suyo. |
| Que tienen entre si ? | Una grande union. |
| ¿ Cual es la mayor recomendacion que puede uno tener con otro ? | El mero hecho de ser Vizcaino. |
| Sin mas que cual diferencia entre varios de ellos ? | La mayor ó menor inmediacion de los lugares respectivos. |
| ¿ Que tienen el Señorío de Vizcaya, Guipuzcoa, Alaba y el reino de Navarra ? | Un tal pacto entre si que algunos llaman á estos países las Provincias Unidas de España. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

| |
|--|
| El nombre. |
| El idioma. |
| El pueblo. |
| El marinero. |
| La probidad. |
| La poblacion. |
| La patria. |
| El paisano. |
| El reino. |
| El mero hecho. |
| El lugar respectivo. |
| Sencillo y áspero. |
| ¿ Puede V. decirme quienes son los mejores marineros de España ? |
| Si, señor; los Cántabros. |
| ¿ Donde viven los Cántabros ? |
| En las provincias de Vizcaya, Guipuzcoa, Alaba y Navarra. |
| ¿ Como se llaman los habitantes de Vizcaya ? |
| Vizcainos. |
| ¿ Que carácter tienen ellos ? |

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH

| |
|--|
| The name. |
| The language. |
| The people. |
| The sailor. |
| Honesty. |
| The population. |
| The native country. |
| The countryman. |
| The kingdom. |
| The mere fact. |
| The respective place. |
| Simple and rough. |
| Can you tell me who are the best sailors of Spain ? |
| Yes, sir; the Cantabrians. |
| Where do the Cantabrians live ? |
| In the provinces of Biscay, Guipuzcoa, Alaba, and Navarre. |
| How are the inhabitants of Biscay called ? |
| Biscayans. |
| What is their character ? |

| | |
|---|--|
| Son pueblos sencillos y de notoria probidad. | They are a simple and honest people. |
| ¿Hay otros estados en Europa que tienen buenos marineros? | Are there other states in Europe which have good sailors? |
| Inglaterra y Francia tienen también excelentes. | England and France have also excellent ones. |
| ¿Quiénes han enviado las primeras colonias á la América? | By whom were the first colonists sent to America? |
| Los Españoles. | By the Spaniards. |
| ¿Puede V. decirme en que año? | Could you tell me in what year? |
| En el año mil cuatrocientos noventa y dos. | In the year 1492. |
| ¿Cuyo cuaderno es este? | Whose copy-book is this? |
| Es el de mi hermano. | It is my brother's. |
| ¿Y cuya pizarra es esta? | And whose slate is that? |
| Es la de mi hermana. | It is my sister's. |
| De quien son estas cosas? | Whose things are these? |
| Son las mías. | They are mine. |
| ¿Ha visto V. al señor cuya hija murió ayer? | Have you seen the gentleman whose daughter died yesterday? |
| La señora cuyo hermano se fué á Inglaterra. | The lady whose brother has gone to England. |
| ¿Que piensa V. respecto de estas mercancías? | What do you think of these goods? |
| Creo que son muy ventajosas para vender. | I think them quite salable. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Entendiendo, meaning.

203. All verbs ending with **ar** in the infinitive, end with **ando** in the present participle; and those ending with **er** and **ir**, end with **iendo**.

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------|--------------------|-----------|
| Ex. <i>Hablar</i> | to speak | <i>Hablando</i> , | speaking. |
| <i>Vender</i> | to sell | <i>Vendiendo</i> , | selling. |
| <i>Unir</i> , | to unite | <i>Uniendo</i> , | uniting. |

Unos pueblos,
literally
some tribes.

204. *Unos, unas*, is often used instead of *algunos, algunas*, for SOME or ANY, in Spanish.

Numerosísima, very numerous.

205. The superlative absolute is also formed by adding the following endings to the positive: *ísimo* for adjectives, and *ísimamente* for adverbs. The termination *ísimo* changes to *ísima*, for the feminine singular; to *ísimos*, for the plural masculine; and to *ísimas*, for the feminine plural; but *ísimamente* is, of course, invariable. In forming these superlatives, care should be had that words ending with a vowel drop their final letter before these inflections, and that those ending with *ble*, *oo*, and *go*, change these syllables into *bil*, *qu*, and *gu*.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| Ex. <i>Fácil</i> , easy. | <i>Facilísimo</i> , very easy. | <i>Facilísimamente</i> , very easily. |
| <i>Hermoso</i> , beautiful. | <i>Hermosísimo</i> , very beautiful. | <i>Hermosísimamente</i> , very beautifully. |
| <i>Noble</i> , noble. | <i>Nobilísimo</i> , very noble. | <i>Nobilísimamente</i> , very nobly. |
| <i>Rico</i> , rich. | <i>Riquísimo</i> , very rich. | <i>Riquísimamente</i> , very richly. |
| <i>Largo</i> , large. | <i>Larguísimo</i> , very large. | <i>Larguísimo</i> , very largely. |

Puede, can; from *poder*, to be able.

206. *Poder*, to be able, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows:

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Poder, to be able.

| PRESENT PARTICIPLE. | PAST PARTICIPLE. |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Pudiendo</i> , being able, | <i>Podido</i> , been able. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo puedo,</i> | I can, | or am able. |
| <i>Tú puedes,</i> | thou canst, | or art able. |
| <i>El puede,</i> | he can, | or is able. |
| <i>Nosotros podemos,</i> | we can, | or are able. |
| <i>Vosotros podeis,</i> | you can, | or are able. |
| <i>Ellos pueden,</i> | they can, | or are able. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Yo podía,</i> | I could, | or used to be able. |
| <i>Tú podías,</i> | thou couldst, | or usedst to be able. |
| <i>El podía,</i> | he could, | or used to be able. |
| <i>Nosotros podíamos,</i> | we could, | or used to be able. |
| <i>Vosotros podíais,</i> | you could, | or used to be able. |
| <i>Ellos podían,</i> | they could, | or used to be able. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo pude,</i> | I could, | or was able. |
| <i>Tú pudiste,</i> | thou couldst, | or wast able. |
| <i>El pudo,</i> | he could, | or was able. |
| <i>Nosotros pudimos,</i> | we could, | or were able. |
| <i>Vosotros pudisteis,</i> | you could, | or were able. |
| <i>Ellos pudieron,</i> | they could, | or were able |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo podré,</i> | I shall be able, | or will be able. |
| <i>Tú podrás,</i> | thou shalt be able, | or wilt be able. |
| <i>El podrá,</i> | he shall be able, | or will be able. |
| <i>Nosotros podremos,</i> | we shall be able, | or will be able |
| <i>Vosotros podréis,</i> | you shall be able, | or will be able. |
| <i>Ellos podrán,</i> | they shall be able, | or will be able. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo pudiere,</i> | <i>tú pudieres,</i> | <i>él pudiere,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros pudiéremos,</i> | <i>vosotros pudiéreis,</i> | <i>ellos pudieren.</i> |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Yo podría,</i> | I should be able, | or would be able. |
| <i>Tú podrías,</i> | thou shouldst be able, | or wouldst be able. |
| <i>El podría,</i> | he should be able, | or would be able. |
| <i>Nosotros podríamos,</i> | we should be able, | or would be able. |
| <i>Vosotros podríais,</i> | you should be able, | or would be able. |
| <i>Ellos podrían,</i> | they should be able, | or would be able. |

No Imperative Mood.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Que yo pueda,</i> | that I may be able. |
| <i>Que tú puedas,</i> | that thou mayst be able. |
| <i>Que él pueda,</i> | that he may be able. |
| <i>Que nosotros podamos,</i> | that we may be able. |
| <i>Que vosotros podáis,</i> | that you may be able. |
| <i>Que ellos puedan,</i> | that they may be able. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Que yo pudiera,</i> | or <i>pudiese,</i> | that I might be able. |
| <i>Que tú pudieras,</i> | or <i>pudieses,</i> | that thou mightst be able. |
| <i>Que él pudiera,</i> | or <i>pudiese,</i> | that he might be able. |
| <i>Que nosotros pudiéramos,</i> | or <i>pudiésemos,</i> | that we might be able. |
| <i>Que vosotros pudiérais,</i> | or <i>pudiéseis,</i> | that you might be able. |
| <i>Que ellos pudieran,</i> | or <i>pudiesen,</i> | that they might be able. |

Entre si, among themselves.

207. After a preposition, **mi, ti, si, él, ella, ello, nosotros, vosotros, ellos,** and **ellas,** are used instead of **me, te, se, le, la, lo, nos, os, les,** and **las.** See Table of personal pronouns, page 107, line 15.

Para con, with.

208. The preposition **para** is often added to **con,** in Spanish, without any apparent necessity.

Menor, less.

209. *Menor* is the irregular comparative form of *pequeño*, little. Its superlative is *mínimo*, least.

Idioma, language, is masculine by exception.

Ausentar, to absent, and *enviar*, to send, are of the first conj
Alcanzar, to obtain, goes like *rechazar* (187); *disminuir*, to diminish, like *instruir* (page 143); *entender*, to hear, like *perder* (page 98); and *mantener*, to maintain, like *tener* (page 33).

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. I cannot, 50, 206. | 22. I should not be able, 50, 206 |
| 2. He cannot. | 23. He should not be able. |
| 3. We cannot. | 24. We should not be able. |
| 4. You cannot. | 25. You should not be able. |
| 5. They cannot. | 26. They should not be able. |
| 6. I could not. | 27. I have not been able. |
| 7. He could not. | 28. He has not been able. |
| 8. We could not. | 29. We have not been able. |
| 9. You could not. | 30. You have not been able. |
| 10. They could not. | 31. They have not been able. |
| 11. I shall not be able. | 32. I had not been able. |
| 12. He shall not be able. | 33. I shall not have been able. |
| 13. We shall not be able. | 34. I should not have been able. |
| 14. You shall not be able. | 35. That I may not be able. |
| 15. They shall not be able. | 36. That I might not be able. |
| 16. Very simple, 52, 205. | 37. Very simply, 52, 205. |
| 17. Very numerous. | 38. Very useful. |
| 18. Very magnificently. | 39. Very fresh. |
| 19. Very agreeable. | 40. Very agreeably. |
| 20. Without me, 207. | 41. For him, 207. |
| 21. With us. | 42. Against them. |
43. Can you come to-morrow? 206 —44. What are you doing? 203.—45. I am studying.—46. Which lesson are you learning now? 203.—47. The twentieth —48. Do you know all the lessons from the first to the twentieth?—49. I know them pretty well.—50. Who teaches you?—51. A Spanish gentleman.—52. What is his name?—53. M. Cadalso.—54. When do you take your lesson?—55. From eight to nine o'clock in the morning.—56. That is very early — 57. I prefer to study in the morning.

TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART

Literal Translation.*

Leccion vigésima primera.

Lesson twenty first.

Extracto de Cadalso, continuado.

Extract from Cadalso, continued.

Segunda parte.

Second part.

Los de Asturias y las montañas hacen
Those of Asturias. and the mountains make
sumo aprecio de genealogia y de la memo-
high appreciation of genealogy and of the memory
ria de haber sido aquel pais el que produjo
of to have been that country the which produced
la reconquista de España, con la expulsion
the reconquest of Spain, with the expulsion
de los Moros, nuestros abuelos. Su pobla-
of the Moors, our ancestors. Its population,
cion, demasiada para la miseria y estrechez
too great for the poverty and sterility
de la tierra, hace que un número conside-
of the earth, makes that a number considerable
rable de ellos se emplee continuamente
of them themselves employ continually
en Madrid en la librea, que es la clase
in Madrid in the livery, which is the class
inferior de criados, de modo que si yo
inferior of servants, so that if I

*See note on page 119.

fuese natural de este pais, examinaria
 were natural of this country, I would examine
con mucha madurez los papeles de mis
 with much care the papers of my
cocheros y lacayos, por no tener algun
 coachmen and lackeys, for not to have some
lia la mortificacion de ver á un primo
 day the mortification of to see a cousin
mio echar cebada á mis mulas, ó á uno
 mine to throw barley to my mules, or one
de mis tíos limpiarme los zapatos. Sin
 of my uncles to clean me the shoes. Never-
embargo de todo esto, muchas familias
 theless of all this, many families
respetables de esta provincia se
 respectable of this province themselves
mantienen con el debido lustre, son
 maintain with the due luxury, are
acreedoras á la mayor consideracion, y
 entitled to the greatest consideration, and
producen continuamente oficiales del mas
 produce continually officers of the most
alto mérito en el ejército y la marina.
 high merit in the army and the marine.

The same in good English.

**EXTRACTO DE CADALSO, CONTI-
 NADO.**

SEGUNDA PARTE.

Los de Asturias y las montañas hacen sumo aprecio de genealogia y de la memoria de haber sido aquel pais el que produjo la reconquista de España, con la ex-

**EXTRACT FROM CADALSO, CON-
 TINUED.**

SECOND PART.

The natives of Asturias, and of the mountains, have much family pride and glory in having been instrumental in restoring Spain to freedom by the expul-

pulsion de los Moros, nuestros abuelos. Su poblacion, demasiada para la miseria y estrechez de la tierra, hace que un número considerable de ellos se emplee continuamente en Madrid en la librea, que es la clase inferior de criados, de modo que si yo fuese natural de este pais, examinaria con mucha madurez los papeles de mis cocheros y lacayos, por no tener algun dia la mortificacion de ver á un primo mio echar cebada á mis mulas, ó á uno de mis tíos limpiarme los zapatos. Sin embargo de todo esto, muchas familias respetables de esta provincia se mantienen con el debido ustre, son acreedoras á la mayor consideracion, y producen continuamente oficiales del mas alto mérito en el ejército y la marina.

sion of the Moors, our forefathers; but the poverty of the country compel many to repair to Madrid, where they generally engage as liveried servants; so that were I from that district, and about to select a coachman or lackey, I would indeed examine with care the papers of those offering, not to have one day the mortification of seeing a cousin of mine feeding my mules, or one of my uncles blacking my boots.

There are, however, some highly respectable families in this province who live with sufficient luxury, and who furnish regularly a number of very distinguished officers to the army and navy.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

- ¿ Que leccion es esta ?
- ¿ De que pueblos se habla en esta leccion ?
- ¿ De que hacen sumo aprecio estos pueblos ?
- ¿ Y de que mas ?
- ¿ Con que se hizo la reconquista de España ?
- Quienes eran los Moros ?
Para que es demasiada su poblacion ?
- ¿ Que hace esto ?
- ¿ Que es la librea ?

- La vigésima primera.
- De los de Asturias y las montañas.
- De la genealogia.
- De la memoria de haber sido aquel pais el que produjo la reconquista de España.
- Con la expulsion de los Moros.
- Eran nuestros abuelos.
- Para la miseria y estrechez de la tierra.
- Que un número considerable de ellos se emplee continuamente en Madrid en la librea.
- La clase inferior de los criados.

| | |
|--|---|
| ¿Que haria V. si fuese natural de este pais? | Examinaria con mucha madurez los papeles de mis cocheros y lacayos. |
| ¿Porqué? | Por no tener un dia la mortificacion de ver á un primo mio echar cebada á mis mulas, ó á uno de mis tios limpiarse los zapatos. |
| ¿Que hacen sin embargo de tolo esto muchas familias respetables de esta provincia? | Se mantienen con el debido lustre. |
| ¿Que producen continuamente? | Oficiales del mas alto mérito en el ejército y la marina. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El aprecio.
 Los abuelos.
 La librea.
 El natural.
 La madurez.
 El cochero.
 El lacayo.
 Mi primo.
 Vuestro tio.
 La cebada.
 El lustre.
 La marina.
 El ejército.
 El alto oficial.
 El criado inferior.

¿Que sabe V. de las Asturias?

Han dado muchas famosas batallas.

¿A quienes?

A los Moros, nuestros abuelos.

¿Porqué han peleado contra ellos?

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The appreciation.
 The forefathers.
 The livery.
 The native.
 The care.
 The coachman.
 The lackey.
 My cousin.
 Your uncle.
 The barley.
 The splendor.
 The navy.
 The army.
 The high officer.
 The inferior servant.

What do you know about the Asturians?

They have fought many celebrated battles.

Against whom?

Against the Moors, our ancestors.

Why did they fight against them?

| | |
|--|--|
| Para rechazarlos fuera de la España. | In order to chase them from Spain. |
| ¿Que hacen los habitantes de estas provincias hoy? | What are the inhabitants of these provinces doing now? |
| Trabajan en todas las partes del reino. | They work in all parts of the kingdom. |
| Muchos se van á Madrid. | Many go to Madrid. |
| ¿Que clase de trabajo hacen allí? | What do they do there? |
| Se emplean como criados de librea. | They engage as liveried servants. |
| ¿Quienes son los criados de librea? | Who are the liveried servants? |
| Los cocheros y lacayos. | The coachmen and lackeys. |
| No pueden ganar bastante dinero en su propio país. | They cannot gain money enough in their own country. |
| ¿No hay hombres ricos allá? | Are there no rich men there? |
| Hay algunas familias ricas y respetables. | There are some rich and respectable families there. |
| ¿Como viven? | How do these live? |
| Viven con el debido lustre. | They live with due splendor. |
| ¿Producen hombres de mérito? | Do they produce men of merit? |
| Producen unos soldados excelentes. | They produce some excellent soldiers. |
| Unos oficiales de distincion. | Some officers of distinction. |
| En el ejército y la marina. | In the army and navy. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Continuado, continued.

210. Most verbs ending with **ar** in the infinitive, end with **ado** in the past participle; and those in **er** and **ir**, end with **ido**.

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Hablar</i> , to speak. | <i>Hablado</i> , spoken. |
| <i>Vender</i> , to sell. | <i>Vendido</i> , sold. |
| <i>Unir</i> , to unite. | <i>Unido</i> , united. |

Sumo, very high.

211. *Sumo* is an irregular superlative form of *alto*, high, whose comparative is *superior* higher or superior, and *wh-aa*

superlative is either *supremo* or *sumo*, very high, highest, or supreme.

Inferior, inferior.

212. *Inferior* is the irregular comparative form of *bajo*, low. Its corresponding superlative is *infimo*, lowest.

Ver, to see.

213. *Ver*, to see, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Ver, to see.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Viendo, seeing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Visto, seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo veo,</i> | I see, | or do see. |
| <i>Tú ves,</i> | thou seest, | or dost see. |
| <i>El ve,</i> | he sees, | or does see. |
| <i>Nosotros vemos,</i> | we see, | or do see. |
| <i>Vosotros veis,</i> | you see, | or do see. |
| <i>Ellos ven,</i> | they see, | or do see. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo veía,</i> | I saw, | or used to see. |
| <i>Tú veías,</i> | thou sawest, | or usedst to see. |
| <i>El veía,</i> | he saw, | or used to see. |
| <i>Nosotros veíamos,</i> | we saw, | or used to see. |
| <i>Vosotros veíais,</i> | you saw, | or used to see. |
| <i>Ellos veían,</i> | they saw, | or used to see. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo ví,</i> | I saw, | or did see. |
| <i>Tú viste,</i> | thou sawest, | or didst see. |
| <i>El vió,</i> | he saw, | or did see. |
| <i>Nosotros vimos,</i> | we saw, | or did see. |
| <i>Vosotros visteis,</i> | you saw, | or did see. |
| <i>Ellos vieron,</i> | they saw, | or did see. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo verá,</i> | I shall see, | or will see. |
| <i>Tú verás,</i> | thou shalt see, | or wilt see. |
| <i>El verá,</i> | he shall see, | or will see. |
| <i>Nosotros veremos,</i> | we shall see, | or will see. |
| <i>Vosotros veréis,</i> | you shall see, | or will see. |
| <i>Ellos verán,</i> | they shall see, | or will see. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo vería,</i> | I should see, | or would see. |
| <i>Tú verías,</i> | thou shouldst see, | or wouldst see. |
| <i>El vería,</i> | he should see, | or would see. |
| <i>Nosotros veríamos,</i> | we should see, | or would see. |
| <i>Vosotros veríais,</i> | you should see, | or would see. |
| <i>Ellos verían,</i> | they should see, | or would see. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ve, see (thou).

Ved, see (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Que yo vea,</i> | that I may see. |
| <i>Que tú veas,</i> | that thou mayst see. |
| <i>Que él vea,</i> | that he may see. |
| <i>Que nosotros veamos,</i> | that we may see. |
| <i>Que vosotros veáis,</i> | that you may see. |
| <i>Que ellos vean,</i> | that they may see. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo viera,</i> | or <i>viese,</i> | that I might see. |
| <i>Que tú vieras,</i> | or <i>vieses,</i> | that thou mightst see. |
| <i>Que él viera,</i> | or <i>viese,</i> | that he might see. |
| <i>Que nosotros viéramos,</i> | or <i>viésemos,</i> | that we might see. |
| <i>Que vosotros viérais,</i> | or <i>viéseis,</i> | that you might see. |
| <i>Que ellos vieran,</i> | or <i>viesen,</i> | that they might see. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Yo viere,</i> | <i>tú vieras,</i> | <i>él viere.</i> |
| <i>Nosotros viéramos,</i> | <i>vosotros viérais,</i> | <i>ellos vieran.</i> |

Un primo, a cousin.

214. *Primo* means a male cousin ; and *prima*, a female one
See Rule 118.

Uno de mis tios, one of my uncles.

Tio means an uncle ; and *tia*, an aunt. See, as above,
Rule 118.

Sin embargo de todo esto, in spite of all this.

215. *Sin** *embargo*, when not a conjunction, is always followed by *de*.

The principal conjunctions are :

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| <i>A menos que</i> , | unless. |
| <i>Aunque</i> , | although. |
| <i>Durante que</i> , | while. |
| <i>Ni</i> , | neither, nor. |
| <i>O</i> , | or. |
| <i>Para que</i> , | in order that. |
| <i>Pero</i> , | but. |
| <i>Porqué</i> , | why. |
| <i>Porque</i> , | because. |
| <i>Por tanto</i> , | therefore. |
| <i>Pues</i> , | since, because. |
| <i>Que</i> , | that. |
| <i>Si</i> , | if. |
| <i>Sin embargo</i> , | nevertheless. |
| <i>Sino</i> , | if not. |
| <i>Tambien</i> , | as well as. |
| <i>Y</i> , | and. |

En el ejército y la marina,
in the army and navy.

216. The article, and all determinative words, are generally repeated before each noun in Spanish, especially when these are of different genders.

* *Sino* is often used in the sense of *but* ; this can, however, be done *only* when there is a negative sentence immediately before.

Ex. He is not young, but old, *No es joven sino viejo*.

Parte, part; *estrechez*, straitness; and *madurez*, care, are feminine by exception.

Continuar, to continue; *echar*, to throw; *emplear*, to employ and *examinar*, to examine, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *deber* is of the second.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Do I see ? 213. | 16. Should I see ? 213. |
| 2. Does he see ? | 17. Should he see ? |
| 3. Do we see ? | 18. Should we see ? |
| 4. Do you see ? | 19. Should you see ? |
| 5. Do they see ? | 20. Should they see ? |
| 6. Did I see ? | 21. Have I seen ? |
| 7. Did he see ? | 22. Has he seen ? |
| 8. Did we see ? | 23. Have we seen ? |
| 9. Did you see ? | 24. Have you seen ? |
| 10. Did they see ? | 25. Have they seen ? |
| 11. Shall I see ? | 26. Had I seen ? |
| 12. Shall he see ? | 27. Shall I have seen ? |
| 13. Shall we see ? | 28. Should I have seen ? |
| 14. Shall you see ? | 29. I do not see. |
| 15. Shall they see ? | 30. I have not seen. |

31. In spite of these things, 215.—32. In spite of our work, 215.—33. My cousin Virginia, 214.—34. My uncle Joseph, —35. My aunt.—36. Unless he studies.—37. Although we write.—38. While they read.—39. To call.—40. Calling, 203.—41. Called, 210.—42. To drink.—43. Drinking, 203.—44. Drunk, 210.—45. To live.—46. Living, 203.—47. Lived, 210.—48. Do you find these exercises difficult ?—49. I do not find them easy.—50. They are very instructive.—51. Let us go on.—52. I like to study.—53. I do not like to lose my time.—54. My pen and ink, 216.—55. His boots and shoes, 216.—56. Our boys and girls, 216.—57. The men and women, 216.—58. The officers and soldiers, 216.—59. My father and mother are here, 216.

TWENTY-SECOND LESSON

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.*

Leccion vigésima segunda.

Lesson twenty second.

Extracto de Cadalso, continuado.

Extract from Cadalso, continued.

Tercera parte.

Third part.

Los Gallegos, en medio de la pobreza
The Galicians, in middle of the poorness
de su tierra, son robustos. Se esparcen
of their country, are robust. Themselves they scatter
por toda España, á emprender los
through all Spain, to undertake the
trabajos mas duros, para llevar á sus casas
labors most hard, in order to bring to their homes
algun dinero, á costa de tan penosa
some money, at cost of so much painful
industria. Sus soldados, aunque carecen
industry. Their soldiers, though they want
de aquel lucido exterior de otras
of that brilliant exterior of other
naciones, son excelentes para la
nations, are excellent for the
infantería, por su subordinacion, dureza
infantry, for their subordination, hardness

* See note on page 119.

de cuerpo y hábito de sufrir incomodidades de hambre, sed y cansancio.
 of body, and habit of to suffer inconveniences
 of hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

Los Castellanos son, de todos los pueblos del mundo, los que merecen la primacía en línea de lealtad. Cuando el ejército del primer rey de España, de la casa de Francia, quedó arruinado en la batalla de Zaragoza, la sola provincia de Soria dió á su soberano un nuevo y numeroso ejército con que salir á campaña, y fué el que ganó las victorias de que resultó la destruccion del ejército y bando austriaco. Esta provincia aun conserva cierto orgullo nacido de su antigua grandeza, que hoy no se conserva, sino en las ruinas de las ciudades y en la honradez de sus habitantes.
 The Castilians are, of all the people
 of the world, those who merit the first place
 in line of loyalty. When the army
 of the first king of Spain, of the house of
 France, remained ruined in the battle
 of Saragossa, the single province of Soria
 gave to her sovereign a new and numerous
 army with which to start the campaign, and it was
 it which gained the victories from which resulted the
 destruction of the army and party Austrian.
 This province still preserves certain pride
 born in her ancient grandeur, which now
 not itself preserves, except in the ruins of the
 cities and in the honesty of her inhabitants.

The same in good English.

EXTRACTO DE CADALSO, CONTINUADO.**TERCERA PARTE.**

Los Gallegos, en medio de la pobreza de su tierra, son robustos. Se esparcen por toda España, á emprender los trabajos mas duros, para llevar á sus casas algun dinero, á costa de tan penosa industria. Sus soldados, aunque carecen de aquel lucido exterior de otras naciones, son excelentes para la infantería, por su subordinacion, dureza de cuerpo y hábito de sufrir incomodidades de hambre, sed y cansancio.

Los Castellanos son, de todos los pueblos del mundo, los que merecen la primacía en línea de lealtad. Quando el ejército del primer rey de España, de la casa de Francia, quedó arruinado en la batalla de Zaragoza, la sola provincia de Soria dió á su soberano un nuevo y numeroso ejército con que salir á campaña, y fué el que ganó las victorias de que resultó la destruccion del ejército y bando austriaco. Esta provincia aun conserva cierto orgullo nacido de su antigua grandeza, que hoy no se conserva, sino en las ruinas de las ciudades y en la honradez de sus habitantes.

EXTRACT FROM CADALSO, CONTINUED.**THIRD PART.**

The Galicians live in a barren country, but are quite robust. They are found throughout Spain, engaged in the hardest manual labors, endeavoring to gain money to bring home in return. Their soldiers, though not as showy as those of other nations, make excellent infantry, remarkable for subordination and their power of enduring hunger, thirst, and all kinds of privations.

The Castilians are the most loyal people in the world. When the forces of the first Spanish king of the house of France were destroyed at Saragossa, the province of Soria alone furnished him an entirely new and adequate army with which to resume the campaign, and it was they who won the victories which did away with the Austrian rule.

Castile still looks back with pride to her former grandeur, which, though past, may still be discovered in the ruins of her cities and the noble traits of her inhabitants.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que leccion es esta?

¿De que pueblos de España se habla en esta leccion?

La vigésima segunda.

De los Gallegos y de los Castellanos.

| | |
|--|---|
| ¿Por donde se esparcen los Gallegos? | Por toda España. |
| ¿Para que? | Para emprender los trabajos mas duros. |
| Con que objeto? | Para llevar á sus casas algun dinero á costa de tan penosa industria. |
| De que carecen los soldados Gallegos? | De aquel lucido exterior de otras naciones. |
| ¿Para que son estos soldados excelentes? | Para la infantería. |
| ¿Porqué? | Por su subordinacion, dureza de cuerpo y hábito de sufrir incomodidades de hambre, sed y cansancio. |
| ¿Que merecen los Castellanos? | La primacia en línea de lealtad. |
| ¿Que ejército quedó arruinado en la batalla de Zaragoza? | El ejército del primer rey de España de la casa de Francia. |
| ¿Que dió á su soberano la sola provincia de Soria? | Un nuevo y numeroso ejército con que salir á campaña. |
| ¿Que hizo este ejército? | Ganó victorias. |
| ¿Que resultó de estas victorias? | La destruccion del ejército y bando austriaco. |
| ¿Que conserva aun esta provincia? | Un cierto orgullo nacido de su antigua grandeza. |
| ¿En donde se conserva este orgullo hoy? | En las ruinas de las ciudades y en la honradez de sus habitantes. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

La pobreza.
El orgullo.
El trabajo.
La sed.
El cansancio.
La lealtad.
La honradez.
La grandeza.
El cuerpo.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

Poverty.
Pride.
The labor.
Thirst.
Fatigue.
The loyalty.
The honesty.
The greatness.
The body.

El lucido exterior.

El hábito excelente.

Penoso y duro.

Los Gallegos son hombres robustos.

¿Qual es su ocupacion principal?

Se hacen soldados en los ejércitos del rey.

¿Que puede V. decirme de los Castellanos?

Son tambien muy buenos soldados.

Son pueblos de mucha lealtad.

¿Ha estado V. jamas en la ciudad de Madrid?

Estaba allá en el año pasado.

¿Donde está Madrid?

Al lado del Manzanares.

¿Cuantos habitantes tiene?

Tiene una poblacion de doscientos cincuenta mil hombres.

¿Que clase de ciudad es?

Una de las mas hermosas de Europa.

Hay muchas casas espléndidas allá.

Y unos jardines magníficos.

Las plazas son grandes y las calles largas.

¿En que provincia está Madrid?

Es la capital de Castilla la Nueva.

¿Como se llama la mas hermosa plaza?

La Plaza Mayor.

¿Que grande establecimiento de ciencias se encuentra allí?

La Academia.

¿Cuales son las mercancías principales que se venden en Madrid?

Seda, cueros, tabaco y tabacos.

The glittering exterior.

The excellent custom.

Painful and hard.

The Galicians are robust men.

What is their principal occupation?

They enlist as soldiers in the armies of the king.

What can you tell me about the Castilians?

They are also very good soldiers.

They are a very loyal people.

Have you ever been in the city of Madrid?

I was there last year.

Where is Madrid?

On the banks of the Manzanares.

How many inhabitants has it?

It has a population of 250,000 souls.

What kind of a city is it?

One of the finest in Europe.

There are many splendid houses there.

And some magnificent gardens.

The squares are large, and the streets wide.

In which province is Madrid?

It is the capital of New Castile.

How is the most beautiful square called?

The *Plaza Mayor*.

What great institution of learning is there?

The Academy.

What is the principal merchandise sold in Madrid?

Silk, leather, tobacco, and *segara*.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Carecen de aquel lucido exterior,
lack that brilliant exterior.

217. The verb *carecer*, to lack, to want, requires to be followed by the preposition *de*.

Ex. *Carecer de alguna cosa*, to be in want of something

Hábito de sufrir, the habit of suffering.

218. *Sufrir* is here in the infinitive, according to Rule 2.

Del mundo,
in the world ;
literally,
of the world.

219. The preposition *en*, required in English after a superlative and before the name of a place, is rendered by *de*, and not by *en*, in Spanish.

Ex. *La mas hermosa ciudad de España*,
the most beautiful city in Spain.

Del primer rey, of the first king.

220. *Primer* is used instead of *primero*, when immediately followed by a noun.

Dió, gave ; from *dar*, to give.

221. *Dar* is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Dar, to give.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Dando, giving.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Dado, given.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo doy</i> , | I give, | or do give. |
| <i>Tú das</i> , | thou givest, | or dost give. |
| <i>El da</i> , | he gives, | or does give. |
| <i>Nosotros damos</i> | we give, | or do give. |
| <i>Vosotros dais</i> , | you give, | or do give. |
| <i>Ellos dan</i> , | they give, | or do give. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo daba,</i> | I gave, | or used to give. |
| <i>Tú dabas,</i> | thou gavest, | or usedst to give. |
| <i>El daba,</i> | he gave, | or used to give. |
| <i>Nosotros dábamos,</i> | we gave, | or used to give. |
| <i>Vosotros dabais,</i> | you gave, | or used to give. |
| <i>Ellos daban,</i> | they gave, | or used to give. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo di,</i> | I gave, | or did give. |
| <i>Tú diste,</i> | thou gavest, | or didst give. |
| <i>El dió,</i> | he gave, | or did give. |
| <i>Nosotros dimos,</i> | we gave, | or did give. |
| <i>Vosotros disteis,</i> | you gave, | or did give. |
| <i>Ellos dieron,</i> | they gave, | or did give. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo daré,</i> | I shall give, | or will give. |
| <i>Tú darás,</i> | thou shalt give, | or wilt give. |
| <i>El dará,</i> | he shall give, | or will give. |
| <i>Nosotros daremos,</i> | we shall give, | or will give. |
| <i>Vosotros daréis,</i> | you shall give, | or will give. |
| <i>Ellos darán,</i> | they shall give, | or will give. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo daría,</i> | I should give, | or would give. |
| <i>Tú darías,</i> | thou shouldst give, | or wouldst give. |
| <i>El daría,</i> | he should give, | or would give. |
| <i>Nosotros daríamos,</i> | we should give, | or would give. |
| <i>Vosotros daríais,</i> | you should give, | or would give. |
| <i>Ellos darían,</i> | they should give, | or would give. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Dé, give (thou).
Dad, give (you).

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

Yo diere, *tú dieres,* *él diere,*
Nosotros diéramos, *vosotros diérais,* *ellos diéran.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo dé,</i> | that I may give. |
| <i>Que tú des,</i> | that thou mayst give. |
| <i>Que él dé,</i> | that he may give. |
| <i>Que nosotros demos,</i> | that we may give. |
| <i>Que vosotros deis,</i> | that you may give. |
| <i>Que ellos den,</i> | that they may give. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo diera,</i> | or <i>diese,</i> | that I might give. |
| <i>Que tú dieras,</i> | or <i>dieses,</i> | that thou mightst give. |
| <i>Que él diera,</i> | or <i>diese,</i> | that he might give. |
| <i>Que nosotros diéramos,</i> | or <i>diésemos,</i> | that we might give. |
| <i>Que vosotros diérais,</i> | or <i>diéseis,</i> | that you might give. |
| <i>Que ellos dieran,</i> | or <i>diesen,</i> | that they might give. |

Salir á campaña, to start the campaign.

222. Verbs of motion require the preposition *á*, and verbs of rest are generally followed by *en*.

Ex. *Estar en casa,* to be in the house.

Ir á casa, to go to the house.

Conserva, preserves.

223. The regular terminations of the indicative present are

For the verbs in *ar*, *o*, *as*, *a*, *amos*, *ais*, *an*.

" " in *er*, *o*, *es*, *e*, *emos*, *eis*, *en*.

" " in *ir*, *o*, *es*, *e*, *imos*, *is*, *en*.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Hablo,</i> I speak. | <i>Vendo,</i> I sell. | <i>Uno,</i> I unite. |
| <i>Hablas,</i> thou speakest. | <i>Vendes,</i> thou sellest. | <i>Unes,</i> thou unitest. |
| <i>Habla,</i> he speaks. | <i>Vende,</i> he sells. | <i>Une,</i> he unites. |
| <i>Hablamos,</i> we speak. | <i>Vendemos,</i> we sell. | <i>Unimos,</i> we unite. |
| <i>Hablais,</i> you speak. | <i>Vendeis,</i> you sell. | <i>Unis,</i> you unite. |
| <i>Hablan,</i> they speak. | <i>Venden,</i> they sell. | <i>Unen,</i> they unite. |

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

Hambre, hunger; and *honradez*, honesty, are feminine by exception.

Arruinar, to ruin; *conservar*, to preserve; and *llevar*, to carry to bring, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *emprender*, to undertake, is of the second. *Carecer*, to want; *esparcir*, to scatter; *merecer*, to deserve; and *nacer*, to be born, go like *compadecer* (147). *Salir* is irregular, and will be explained later.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|------|------------------------------|------|
| 1. Do I not give? | 221. | 16. Should I not give? | 221. |
| 2. Does he not give? | | 17. Should he not give? | |
| 3. Do we not give? | | 18. Should we not give? | |
| 4. Do you not give? | | 19. Should you not give? | |
| 5. Do they not give? | | 20. Should they not give? | |
| 6. Did I not give? | | 21. Have I not given? | |
| 7. Did he not give? | | 22. Has he not given? | |
| 8. Did we not give? | | 23. Have we not given? | |
| 9. Did you not give? | | 24. Have you not given? | |
| 10. Did they not give? | | 25. Have they not given? | |
| 11. Shall I not give? | | 26. Had I not given? | |
| 12. Shall he not give? | | 27. Shall I not have given? | |
| 13. Shall we not give? | | 28. Should I not have given? | |
| 14. Shall you not give? | | 29. Had he not? | |
| 15. Shall they not give? | | 30. Had I not? | |

31. I call, 223.—32. He calls.—33. We call.—34. You call.—
 35. They call.—36. I drink.—37. He drinks.—38. We drink.—
 39. You drink.—40. They drink.—41. I live.—42. He lives.—
 43. We live.—44. You live.—45. They live.—46. Are you in
 want of any thing? 217.—47. I want several things, 217.—
 48. What are you in want of? 217.—49. I want a grammar
 and a dictionary, 217.—50. Which is the largest city in the
 world? 219.—51. The smallest country in Europe, 219.—52. The
 finest farm in Cuba, 219.—53. Are you the first of the class? 220.—
 54. Who was the first President of the United States? 220.—
 55. The first book of this work, 220.—56. I preserve.—57. He
 preserves.—58. We preserve.—59. I want.—60. We want.—
 61. You want.—62. I scatter.—63. He scatters.—64. They scatter

TWENTY-THIRD LESSON

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion vigésima tercera.

Lesson twenty third.

Extracto de Cadalso, continuado.

Extract from Cadalso, continued.

Cuarta parte.

Fourth part.

Estremadura produjo los conquistadores

Estremadura produced the conquerors

del Nuevo Mundo, y ha continuado
of the New World, and has continued

siendo madre de insignes guerreros. Sus
being mother of remarkable warriors. Its

pueblos son poco afectos á las letras;
people are little affected to the letters;

pero los que entre ellos las han
but those who among them them have

cultivado, no han tenido ménos sucesos
cultivated, not have had less success

que sus patriotas en las armas.
than their patriots in the arms.

Los Andaluces, nacidos y criados en

The Andalusians, born and brought up in

un pais abundante, delicioso y ardiente,
a country abundant, delicious, and ardent,

tienen fama de ser algo arrogantes; pero
have fame of to be somewhat arrogant; but

si este defecto es verdadero, debe atribuirse
if this defect is true, it must attribute itself

á su clima, siendo tan notorio el influjo
 to its climate, being so notorious the influence
de lo físico sobre lo moral. Las ventajas
 of the physical over the moral. The advantages
con que la naturaleza dotó aquellas provin-
 with which the nature endowed those provinces,
cias, hacen que miren con desprecio la
 make that they may see with depreciation the
pobreza de Galicia, la aspereza de Viscaya,
 poverty of Galicia, the asperity of Biscay,
y la sencillez de Castilla; pero como
 and the monotony of Castile; but as
quiera que todo esto sea, entre ellos ha
 it may like that all this may be, among them there
habido hombres insignes que han dado
 have been men remarkable who have given
mucho honor á toda España, y en tiempos
 much honor to all Spain, and in times
antiguos los Trajanos, Sénecas, y otros
 ancient the Trajans, Senecas, and others
semejantes, que pueden envanecer el país
 similar, who can make vain the country
en que nacióron. La viveza y el atractivo
 in which they were born. The vivacity and the attractiveness
de las Andaluzas las hacen incomparables.
 of the Andalusian women them make incomparable.

The same in good English.

EXTRACTO DE CADALSO, CONTINUADO.

CUARTA PARTE.

Estremadura produjo los conquistadores del Nuevo Mundo, y ha continuado siendo madre de

EXTRACT FROM CADALSO, CONTINUED.

FOURTH PART.

The conquerors of the New World were born in Estremadura, a province which has been

insignes guerreros. Sus pueblos son poco afectos á las letras; pero los que entre ellos las han cultivado, no han tenido ménos sucesos que sus patriotas en las armas.

Los Andaluces, nacidos y criados en un país abundante, delicioso y ardiente, tienen fama de ser algo arrogantes; pero si este defecto es verdadero, debe atribuirse á su clima, siendo tan notorio el influjo de lo físico sobre lo moral. Las ventajas con que la naturaleza dotó aquellas provincias, hacen que miren con desprecio la pobreza de Galicia, la aspereza de Viscaya, y la sencillez de Castilla; pero como quiera que todo esto sea, entre ellos ha habido hombres insignes que han dado mucho honor á toda España, y en tiempos antiguos los Trajanos, Sénecas y otros semejantes, que pueden envanecer el país en que nació. La viveza y el atractivo de las Andaluzas las hacen incomparables.

ever since prolific of great warriors. Though little given to the study of letters, those of the Estremadurians who have turned their attention to them have become no less distinguished than their compatriots in arms.

The natives of Andalusia, land of plenty, most delightful and warm, are said to be somewhat arrogant; but if this be so, it could only originate in the climate they live in, physical and moral development being so dependent on each other. The advantages with which nature has gifted their country lead them to look down upon the poverty of Galicia, the sterility of Biscay, and the monotony of Castile. They have, however, produced men who have reflected much honor upon Spain, in ancient times: the Trajans, Senecas, and others of like fame, of whom any nation might well be proud. The vivacity and captivating manners of their women make them the most attractive in the world.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

Que lección es esta?
De que provincias se habla en esta lección?
Que produjo Estremadura?
Que ha continuado siendo este país?
Son sus pueblos afectos á las letras?

La vigésima tercera.
De Estremadura y de Castilla.
Los conquistadores del Nuev Mundo.
Madre de insignes guerreros.
Son poco afectos á las letras.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿Que han tenido los que entre ellos las han cultivado? | No ménos sucesos que sus patriotas en las armas. |
| ¿Donde son nacidos y criados los Andaluces? | En un pais abundante, delicioso y ardiente. |
| ¿Que fama tienen? | De ser algo arrogantes. |
| ¿A que debe atribuirse este defecto? | A su clima. |
| ¿Que es tan notorio? | El influjo de lo físico sobre lo moral. |
| ¿Que hacen las ventajas con que la naturaleza dotó aquellas provincias? | Que miren con desprecio la pobreza de Galicia, la aspereza de Viscaya, y la sencillez de Castilla. |
| ¿Que ha habido entre ellos? | Hombres insignes. |
| ¿Que han dado estos hombres? | Mucho honor á toda España. |
| ¿Como se llaman estos hombres de los tiempos antiguos? | Los Trajanos, Sénecas y otros semejantes. |
| ¿Que pueden hacer estos hombres? | Envanecer el pais en que nacieron. |
| ¿Que hace incomparables á las Andaluzas? | La viveza y el atractivo. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

* BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El conquistador.
 El guerrero.
 El influjo.
 La ventaja.
 Lo físico.
 Lo moral.
 La naturaleza.
 La aspereza.
 La sencillez.
 La viveza.
 El general insigne.
 Un pais delicioso.
 Una cosa semejante.
 Un hombre arrogante.
 Una historia verdadera.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH

The conqueror.
 The warrior.
 The influence.
 The advantage.
 The physical.
 The moral.
 Nature.
 The ruggedness.
 The monotony.
 The vivacity.
 The eminent general.
 A delicious country.
 A similar thing.
 An arrogant man.
 A true story.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿Qual ciudad de España es la mas hermosa despues de Madrid? | Which is the next finest city to Madrid, in Spain? |
| La ciudad de Cádiz. | The city of Cadiz. |
| ¿Donde está situado Cádiz? | Where is Cadiz situated? |
| Cerca del mar Mediterráneo. | Near the borders of the Mediterranean sea. |
| ¿Que puede V. decirme de esta ciudad? | What can you tell me about that city? |
| Es una de las mas ricas. | It is one of the wealthiest. |
| Es muy limpia. | It is very clean. |
| Hay muchos jardines allá. | There are many gardens there. |
| Los habitantes viven con gran lustre. | The inhabitants live in great luxury. |
| ¿Cuales son sus principales edificios? | Which are its principal edifices? |
| La catedral, el colegio del comercio y el teatro. | The cathedral, the commercial college, and the theatre. |
| ¿Qual es la mas hermosa plaza de Cádiz? | Which is the finest square in Cadiz? |
| La bella plaza de San Antonio. | The beautiful square called San Antonio. |
| ¿Cuantos habitantes tiene Cádiz? | How many inhabitants has Cadiz? |
| Sesenta á sesenta y cinco mil. | From 60 to 65 thousand. |
| ¿En que provincia está situado? | In which province is it situated? |
| En Andalucía. | In Andalusia. |
| ¿Que puede V. decirme de las Andaluzas? | What can you tell me about the Andalusian women? |
| Que son incomparables por su viveza y su atractivo. | That they are incomparably lively and attractive. |
| ¿Ha estado V. mucho tiempo en Andalucía? | Have you been a long time in Andalusia? |
| Estuve allí poco mas ó ménos dos años. | I was there about two years. |
| ¿Donde vive V. ahora? | Where are you staying now? |
| Vivo ahora en Galicia. | I am now living in Galicia. |

SECOND DIVISION —THEORETICAL PART.

Produjo, produced, or did produce.

224. The imperfect, *producia*, could not be introduced here instead of *produjo*, which is the past tense definite of *producir*,

to produce, the *c* being changed into *j*, in accordance with Rule 175.

225. It is often difficult to decide between the use of the past tense definite and the imperfect, whether to say **tenia** or **tuve**. The better plan to be pursued, is to change the English into **WAS HAVING, USED TO HAVE, OR DID HAVE**; rendering **WAS HAVING AND USED TO HAVE** by **tenia**, and **DID HAVE** by **tuve**. In case of doubt, however, it will be best to use the perfect, **Yo he tenido, I HAVE HAD**.

226. The regular terminations of the past tense definite are
For the verbs in **ar, é, aste, ó, ámos, ásteis, áron**.
For those in **er** and **ir, ... í, iste, íó, ímos, ísteis, íeron**

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| Ex. <i>Hablé,</i> | } I spoke, or did speak. | <i>Vendí,</i> | } I sold, or did sell. | <i>Uní,</i> | } I united, or did unite. |
| <i>Hablaste,</i> | | <i>Vendiste,</i> | | <i>Uniste,</i> | |
| <i>Habló,</i> | | <i>Vendió,</i> | | <i>Unió,</i> | |
| <i>Hablámos,</i> | | <i>Vendimos,</i> | | <i>Unimos,</i> | |
| <i>Hablásteis,</i> | | <i>Vendisteis,</i> | | <i>Unisteis,</i> | |
| <i>Habláron,</i> | | <i>Vendieron,</i> | | <i>Unieron,</i> | |

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

Debe atribuirse,
must be attributed;
literally,
must attribute itself.

227. The reflective form is used here instead of the passive, in accordance with Rule 9.

Debe comes from *deber*, one of the most important regular verbs in Spanish, meaning in turn, *to owe, ought, must, to be obliged*, and even *to be*, but the latter only when joined to an infinitive, in which case it forms with it a particular future tense expressive of duty, necessity, or purpose, as in the following examples. To, before an infinitive, is left out after *deber*.

Ex. *¿Que debo hacer?* what am I to do?
V. debe trabajar, you must work.
V. debería estudiar, you ought to study
¿Debe V. dinero? do you owe any money?

Como quiera que todo esto sea.

228. This is an idiomatic locution which answers to, *Let al. this be as it may.* The imperative has properly but one person in the singular and plural; and the expressions, *Let him be, Let us be, Let them be,* etc., are supplied by means of the subjunctive present, or of the verb *dejar*, to let or leave.

EXAMPLES :

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------------|
| Let him be, | déjale ser, | or sea, | that he may be. |
| Let us be, | déjanos ser, | or seamos, | that we may be. |
| Let them be, | déjales ser, | or sean, | that they may be. |
| Let him have, | déjale tener, | or tenga, | that he may have. |
| Let us have, | déjanos tener, | or tengamos, | that we may have. |
| Let them have, | déjales tener, | or tengan, | that they may have. |
| Let him speak, | déjale hablar, | or hable, | that he may speak. |
| Let us speak, | déjanos hablar, | or hablemos, | that we may speak. |
| Let them speak, | déjales hablar, | or hablen, | that they may speak. |
| Let him sell, | déjale vender, | or venda, | that he may sell. |
| Let us sell, | déjanos vender, | or vendamos, | that we may sell. |
| Let them sell, | déjales vender, | or vendan, | that they may sell. |
| Let him unite, | déjale unir, | or una, | that he may unite. |
| Let us unite, | déjanos unir, | or unamos, | that we may unite. |
| Let them unite, | déjales unir, | or unan, | that they may unite. |

229. It is, moreover, to be observed that the subjunctive form is always used instead of the imperative in all negative sentences, and that the pronoun is then invariably placed before the verb. See note on page 35.

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Ex. Be (thou) not, | no seas. |
| Let him not be, | no le deje ser, or no sea. |
| Let us not be, | no nos deje ser, or no seamos. |
| Be (you) not, | no seáis. |
| Let them not be, | no les deje ser, or no sean. |

Quiera.

230. *Quiera* comes from *querer*, one of the most important irregular verbs in Spanish, being used in turn for *to will, to wish, to like,* and *to cherish.* Its conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Querer, to wish or to will.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Queriendo wishing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Querido, wished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo quiero</i> , | I wish, | or do wish. |
| <i>Tú quieres</i> , | thou wishest, | or dost wish. |
| <i>El quiere</i> , | he wishes, | or does wish. |
| <i>Nosotros queremos</i> , | we wish, | or do wish. |
| <i>Vosotros quereis</i> , | you wish, | or do wish. |
| <i>Ellos quieren</i> , | they wish, | or do wish. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo queria</i> , | I wished, | or used to wish. |
| <i>Tú querias</i> , | thou wishedst, | or usedst to wish. |
| <i>El queria</i> , | he wished, | or used to wish. |
| <i>Nosotros queriamos</i> , | we wished, | or used to wish. |
| <i>Vosotros queriais</i> , | you wished, | or used to wish. |
| <i>Ellos querian</i> , | they wished, | or used to wish. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo quise</i> , | I wished, | or did wish. |
| <i>Tú quisiste</i> , | thou wishedst, | or didst wish. |
| <i>El quiso</i> , | he wished, | or did wish. |
| <i>Nosotros quistmos</i> , | we wished, | or did wish. |
| <i>Vosotros quiststeis</i> , | you wished, | or did wish. |
| <i>Ellos quisieron</i> , | they wished, | or did wish. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo querré</i> , | I shall wish, | or will wish. |
| <i>Tú querrás</i> , | thou shalt wish, | or wilt wish. |
| <i>El querrá</i> , | he shall wish, | or will wish. |
| <i>Nosotros querrémos</i> , | we shall wish, | or will wish. |
| <i>Vosotros querréis</i> , | you shall wish, | or will wish. |
| <i>Ellos querrán</i> , | they shall wish, | or will wish. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Yo quisiera</i> , | <i>tú quisieras</i> , | <i>él quisiera</i> , |
| <i>Nosotros quisiéramos</i> , | <i>vosotros quisiérais</i> , | <i>ellos quisieran</i> . |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo querria,</i> | I should wish, | or would wish. |
| <i>Tú querrias,</i> | thou shouldst wish, | or wouldst wish. |
| <i>El querria,</i> | he should wish, | or would wish. |
| <i>Nosotros querriamos,</i> | we should wish, | or would wish. |
| <i>Vosotros querriais,</i> | you should wish, | or would wish. |
| <i>Ellos querrian,</i> | they should wish, | or would wish. |

No Imperative Mood.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo quiera,</i> | that I may wish. |
| <i>Que tú quieras,</i> | that thou mayst wish. |
| <i>Que él quiera,</i> | that he may wish. |
| <i>Que nosotros querámos,</i> | that we may wish. |
| <i>Que vosotros queráis,</i> | that you may wish. |
| <i>Que ellos quieran,</i> | that they may wish. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo quisiera,</i> | or <i>quisiese,</i> | that I might wish. |
| <i>Que tú quisieras,</i> | or <i>quisieses,</i> | that thou mightst wish. |
| <i>Que él quisiera,</i> | or <i>quisiese,</i> | that he might wish. |
| <i>Que nosotros quisiéramos,</i> | or <i>quisiésemos,</i> | that we might wish. |
| <i>Que vosotros quisiérais,</i> | or <i>quisiéseis,</i> | that you might wish. |
| <i>Que ellos quisieran,</i> | or <i>quisiesen,</i> | that they might wish. |

231. *Querer* should not be confounded with *gustar*, to please, which in the pronominal form is often used in the sense of to like. *Querer* is more particularly applied to persons, and *gustar* to things.

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Ex. <i>¿M: quiere V.?</i> | Do you like me? |
| <i>Le quiero mas,</i> | I like him more, or I prefer him. |
| <i>Me gustan las peras,</i> | I like pears; <i>literally</i> , pears please me. |
| <i>Me gustan mas los duraznos,</i> | I prefer peaches; <i>literally</i> , peaches please me more. |

232. To, before an infinitive, is left out after *querer*.

Ex. *Quiero hablar*, I wish to speak.

Clima, climate, is masculine, and *sencillez*, simplicity, is feminine, by exception.

Criar, to bring up, to nourish; *cultivar*, to cultivate; *mirar* to see, to look at, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; and *vivir*, to live, is of the third. *Atribuir*, to attribute, goes like *instruir*, Rule 182; *envanecer*, to make vain, like *compadecer* Rule 147; and *producir*, to produce, like *traducir*, Rule 175.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I wish to see, 232. | 16. I must write, 227. |
| 2. He wishes to cultivate. | 17. He must learn. |
| 3. We wish to produce. | 18. We must lose. |
| 4. You wish to carry. | 19. You must finish. |
| 5. They wish to throw. | 20. They must instruct. |
| 6. I wished to examine. | 21. I was obliged to drink. |
| 7. He wished to employ. | 22. He was obliged to meet. |
| 8. We wished to continue. | 23. We were obliged to think |
| 9. You wished to begin. | 24. You were obliged to pay. |
| 10. They wished to send. | 25. They were obliged to buy. |
| 11. I should like to understand. | 26. I should be obliged to use. |
| 12. He should like to diminish. | 27. He should be obliged to give. |
| 13. We should like to arrive. | 28. We should be obliged to sleep. |
| 14. You should like to translate. | 29. You should be obliged to eat. |
| 15. They should like to read. | 30. They should be obliged to sell. |

31. I did call, 225.—32. He did call.—33. We did call.—
 34. You did call.—35. They did call.—36. I did drink, 225.—
 37. He did drink.—38. We did drink.—39. You did drink.—
 40. They did drink.—41. I did live, 225.—42. He did live.—
 43. We did live.—44. You did live.—45. They did live.—46. Let
 him live, 228.—47. Let us live.—48. Let them live.—49. Let
 him drink, 228.—50. Let us drink.—51. Let them drink.—
 —52. Have you seen my brother?—53. I saw him, and spoke
 to him, 225.—54. Where have you seen him?—55. He called
 on me last evening, 225.—56. What were you doing?—57. I
 was writing a letter, 225.—58. How much does this gentleman
 owe you?—59. He owes me about fifty dollars, 227.—60. Which
 wines do you like best? 231.—61. The Spanish wines.

TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART

Literal Translation.

Leccion vigésima cuarta.

Lesson twenty fourth.

Extracto de Cadalso, continuado.

Extract from Cadalso, continued.

Quinta parte.

Fifth part.

Los Murcianos participan del carácter

The Murcians participate of the character

de los Andaluces y Valencianos. Estos

of the Andalusians and Valencians. These

últimos estan tenidos por hombres de

latter are held for men of

sobrada ligereza ; atribuyendose este

excessive frivolity ; attributing itself this

defecto al clima y suelo, pretendiendo

defect to the climate and soil, pretending

algunos, que hasta en los mismos alimentos

some, that even in the very victuals

falta aquel jugo que se halla en los de

is wanting that juice which itself finds in those of

otros paises. Mi imparcialidad no me

other countries. My impartiality not me

permite someterme á esta preocupacion,

permits to submit myself to this prejudice,

por general que sea. Antes debo observar
 however general that it may be. Before I must observe

que los Valencianos de este siglo son los
 that the Valencians of this century are the

Espanoles que mas progresos hacen en la
 Spaniards who most progress make in the
iencias positivas y lenguas muertas.
 sciences positive and languages dead.

Los Catalanes son los pueblos mas
 The Catalanians are the people most
industriosos de España. Manufacturas,
 industrious of Spain. Manufactories,

pescas, navegacion, comercio, son cosas
 fisheries, navigation, commerce, are things

apenas conocidas en otras provincias de
 scarcely known in other provinces of

la Península respecto de los Catalanes.
 the Peninsula respecting the Catalanians.

No solo son útiles en la paz, sino del
 Not only they are useful in the peace, but of the

mayor servicio en la guerra. Fundición
 greatest service in the war. Foundry

de cañones, fábricas de armas, vestuario
 of cannons, factories of arms, clothing

y monturas para ejércitos, municiones y
 and accoutrements for armies, munitions and

víveres, formacion de tropas ligeras de ex-
 victuals, formation of troops light of ex-

celente calidad, todo esto sale de Catalaña
 excellent quality, all this goes out from Catalonia

The same in good English.

EXTRACTO DE CADALSO, CONTINUADO.

QUINTA PARTE.

Los Murcianos participan del carácter de los Andaluces y Valencianos. Estos últimos están tenidos por hombres de sobrada ligereza; atribuyéndose este defecto al clima y suelo, pretendiendo algunos, que hasta en los mismos alimentos falta aquel jugo que se halla en los de otros países. Mi imparcialidad no me permite someterme á esta preocupacion, por general que sea. Antes debo observar que los Valencianos de este siglo son los Españoles que mas progresos hacen en las ciencias positivas y lenguas muertas.

Los Catalanes son los pueblos mas industriosos de España. Manufacturas, pescas, navegacion, comercio, son cosas apenas conocidas en otras provincias de la Península respecto de los Catalanes. No solo son útiles en la paz, sino del mayor servicio en la guerra. Fundicion de cañones, fábricas de armas, vestuario y monturas para ejércitos, municiones y víveres, formacion de tropas ligeras de excelente calidad, todo esto sale de Cataluña.

EXTRACT FROM CADALSO, CONTINUED.

FIFTH PART.

The Murcians are to a degree like the Andalusians and Valencians. Those of Valencia are considered rather too frivolous; a defect ascribed by some to the productions of the earth there, which are said to be wanting in the invigorating properties found elsewhere. But my impartiality will not permit me to pronounce on this opinion, however general it may be. I must also state that the Valencians are, among the Spaniards, those who have made during this century the greatest progress in the positive sciences and in the study of the dead languages.

The Catalonians are the most industrious people of Spain; manufactories, fisheries, shipping, and commerce, being comparatively unknown out of Catalonia.

Quite useful in peace, they are still more so in war; furnishing the army with cannons and other weapons, ammunition, clothing, and accoutrements of every kind, and also excellent light troops.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que leccion es esta?
¿De cuales pueblos se habla en esta leccion?

La vigésima cuarta.
De los Murcianos, Valencianos y Catalanes.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿ De cual carácter participan los Murcianos ? | Del carácter de los Andaluces y Valencianos. |
| ¿ Que se dice de los Valencianos ? | Que son hombres de sobrada ligereza. |
| ¿ A que se atribuye este defecto ? | Al clima y suelo. |
| Que pretenden algunos ? | Que hasta en los mismos alimentos falta el jugo que se halla en los de otros países. |
| Que no me permite mi imparcialidad ? | Someterme á esta preocupacion por general que sea. |
| ¿ Que debo yo observar ántes ? | Que los Valencianos de este siglo son los Españoles que hacen mas progresos en las ciencias positivas y lenguas muertas. |
| ¿ Que son los Catalanes ? | Los pueblos mas industrioses de España. |
| ¿ Cuales cosas son apenas conocidas en otras provincias de la Península respecto de los Catalanes ? | Manufacturas, pescas, navegacion y comercio. |
| ¿ Son útiles en la paz ? | Son útiles en la paz y del mayor servicio en la guerra. |
| ¿ Que sale de Cataluña ? | Cañones, armas, vestuario y monturas para ejércitos. |
| ¿ Y que mas ? | Municiones, víveres y tropas ligeras. |
| ¿ De que calidad ? | De excelente calidad. |
| ¿ De quien es este extracto ? | De Cadalso. |
| ¿ Cual parte es esta ? | La quinta parte. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH

La tierra.
El suelo.
El clima.
La pesca.
Una fábrica.
Un servicio.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH

The earth.
The soil.
The climate.
The fishery.
A manufactory
A service.

| | |
|---|---|
| Una preocupacion. | A prejudice. |
| La navegacion. | Navigation. |
| La paz. | Peace. |
| La guerra. | War. |
| La fundicion de cañones. | The gun-foundry. |
| Los víveres y municiones. | The provisions and munitions. |
| Las tropas ligeras. | The light troops. |
| Las ciencias positivas. | The positive sciences. |
| Las lenguas muertas. | The dead languages. |
| Una cosa útil. | A useful thing. |
| ¿ Cual es el mas industrial pue- blo de España ? | Which is the most industri- ous people of Spain ? |
| Los Catalanes. | The Catalonians. |
| ¿ Cual es la capital de Cata- luña ? | Which is the capital of Cata- lonia ? |
| La ciudad de Barcelona. | The city of Barcelona. |
| ¿ Cuantos habitantes tiene ? | What is its population ? |
| Ciento y treinta mil habitantes. | 130,000 inhabitants. |
| ¿ Cual es la ocupacion principal de los Barceloneses ? | What is the chief occupation of the Barcelonians ? |
| El comercio ; trafican con todo el mundo. | Commerce ; they trade with the whole world. |
| ¿ Cuales islas estan al oriente de España ? | Which islands are east of Spain ? |
| Majorca, Minorca é Ivisa. | Majorca, Minorca, and Ivica. |
| ¿ Que producen estas islas ? | What do these islands produce ? |
| Producen un vino excelente. | They produce an excellent wine. |
| ¿ Cuales son los rios principales de España ? | Which are the principal rivers of Spain ? |
| El Ebro, el Guadalquivir y el Tajo. | The Ebro, the Guadalquivir, and the Tagus. |
| ¿ Cuales son las montañas princi- pales de España ? | Which are the principal moun- tains in Spain ? |
| Los Pyreneos, la Sierra Nevada y Morena. | The Pyrenees, the Sierra Nevada, and the Morena. |
| ¿ Quien es ahora la reina de Es- paña ? | Who is the queen of Spain now ? |
| Isabel Segunda. | Isabel the Second. |
| ¿ Como se llama su hijo ? | What is her son's name ? |
| El Príncipe de Asturias. | The Prince of Asturias. |
| ¿ Cuando nació el Príncipe de Asturias ? | When was the Prince of Asturias born ? |

| | |
|---|--|
| En el año mil ocho cientos cinco y siete. | In the year 1857. |
| ¿Qual país está al occidente de España? | What country is west of Spain |
| Portugal. | Portugal. |
| Los Murcianos y Valencianos viven al oriente. | The Murcians and Valencians live east. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Atribuyendose este defecto,
this defect being attributed.

The pronominal form is used here instead of the passive, in accordance with Rule 9.

En los mismos alimentos,
in the very victuals.

233. **Mismos** means **VERY**, in accordance with Rule 113. It is to be observed that **mismo** agrees in gender and number with the word before which it stands.

No me permite someterme,
does not permit me to submit myself.

234. **To**, before an infinitive, is left out after *permitir*, to permit. See Rule 166.

Por general que sea,
however general it may be.

235. **Por** is here an adverb, corresponding to **HOWEVER**. Few words are used with greater latitude than **por** in Spanish. Answering in turn to **FOR**, **IN ORDER TO**, **THROUGH**, **AS**, **PER**, **BY**, **FROM**, etc., it enters, moreover, in the formation of a number of idiomatic expressions in which its original meaning seems to disappear entirely. The following model sentences will best illustrate its several uses :

| | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <i>Me ausento por dos semanas,</i> | I absent myself for two weeks |
| <i>Tomar una cosa por otra,</i> | To take one thing for another. |
| <i>Enviar por alguna cosa,</i> | To send for something. |
| <i>Por falta de dinero,</i> | For want of money. |
| <i>Por no faltar á la cita,</i> | Not to miss the appointment. |
| <i>Interceder por un amigo,</i> | To intercede for a friend. |
| <i>Volar por el aire,</i> | To fly through the air. |
| <i>Pasear por un cuarto,</i> | To pass through a room. |
| <i>Lo obtuvo por el secretario,</i> | I got it through the secretary |
| <i>Por fuerza,</i> | By force. |
| <i>Iba por almirante,</i> | He went as admiral. |
| <i>Toños le tenían por docto,</i> | All thought him learned. |
| <i>Sentémoslo por cosa averiguada,</i> | Let us put it down as a fact. |
| <i>Al dos por ciento,</i> | At two per cent. |
| <i>Una libra de pan por soldado,</i> | One pound of bread per man. |
| <i>A tanto por vara,</i> | At so much a yard. |
| <i>Una por una,</i> | One by one. |
| <i>Por la mañana,</i> | In the morning. |
| <i>Por consiguiente,</i> | Consequently. |
| <i>Por mayor y por menor,</i> | Wholesale and retail. |

Que sea, that it may be.

236. The conjunction **que**, **THAT**, is seldom suppressed in Spanish, and it may safely be introduced whenever it can be added in English without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence.

Ex. *Digale que venga,*
Tell him to come;

literally,

Tell him that he may come.

Suplique V. á la señorita que cante,
Ask the young lady to sing;

literally,

Ask the young lady that she may sing.

Sea, it may be.

237. The regular terminations of the subjunctive present are:
For the verbs in **ar**, . . . **e**, **es**, **e**, **emos**, **eis**, **en**.
For those in **er** and **ir**, . . **a**, **as**, **a**, **amos**, **ais**, **an**.

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Ex. <i>Hable,</i> | } That I may speak. | <i>Venâc,</i> | } That I may sell. | <i>Una,</i> | } That I may unite. |
| <i>Hables,</i> | | <i>Vendas,</i> | | <i>Unas,</i> | |
| <i>Hable,</i> | | <i>Venda,</i> | | <i>Una,</i> | |
| <i>Hablemos,</i> | | <i>Vendamos,</i> | | <i>Unamos,</i> | |
| <i>Hableis,</i> | | <i>Vendais,</i> | | <i>Unais,</i> | |
| <i>Hablen,</i> | | <i>Vendan,</i> | | <i>Unan,</i> | |

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

Comercio, commerce.

238. Many words ending with **cio** in Spanish, end with **ce** in English, with little or no other difference of orthography; as, *Prefacio*, preface; *vicio*, vice; *servicio*, service; *silencio*, silence; *oficio*, office.

239. Double consonants often become single in Spanish, especially **ff**, **ss**, and **tt**; but **ll**, when liquid, is never so changed.

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Ex. <i>Anunciar</i> , to announce. | <i>Disimular</i> , to dissimulate. |
| <i>Aplaudir</i> , to applaud. | <i>Excelente</i> , excellent. |
| <i>Atractivo</i> , attractive. | <i>Gramática</i> , grammar. |
| <i>Efecto</i> , effect. | <i>Necesidad</i> , necessity. |
| <i>Diferencia</i> , difference. | <i>Pasion</i> , passion. |
| <i>Difícil</i> , difficult. | <i>Recomendacion</i> , recommendation. |

Respecto de los Catalanes.

240. **Respecto de** is used here in the sense of *compared to*, in comparison with. See Rule 202.

Todo esto, all this.

241. **Esto**, commonly called the neuter form of **este**, is used only when the noun to which it refers is not expressed. See note on page 4, and Rule 170. It is to be observed that the adjective joined to **esto**, **lo**, **aquello**, and **eso**, is used in the masculine form.

Salir, goes out; from *salir*, to go out.

242. *Salir*, to go out, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows:

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Salir, to go out.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Saliedo, going out.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Salido, gone out.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo salgo</i> , | I go out, | or do go out. |
| <i>Tú sales</i> , | thou goest out, | or dost go out. |
| <i>El sale</i> , | he goes out, | or does go out. |
| <i>Nosotros salimos</i> , | we go out, | or do go out. |
| <i>Vosotros salís</i> , | you go out, | or do go out. |
| <i>Ellos salen</i> , | they go out, | or do go out. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Yo salía</i> , | I went out, | or used to go out. |
| <i>Tú salías</i> , | thou wentest out, | or usedst to go out. |
| <i>El salía</i> , | he went out, | or used to go out. |
| <i>Nosotros salíamos</i> , | we went out, | or used to go out. |
| <i>Vosotros salíais</i> , | you went out, | or used to go out. |
| <i>Ellos salían</i> , | they went out, | or used to go out. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo salt</i> , | I went out, | or did go out. |
| <i>Tú saliste</i> , | thou wentest out, | or didst go out. |
| <i>El salió</i> , | he went out, | or did go out. |
| <i>Nosotros saltamos</i> , | we went out, | or did go out. |
| <i>Vosotros saltasteis</i> , | you went out, | or did go out. |
| <i>Ellos salieron</i> , | they went out, | or did go out. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo saldré</i> , | I shall go out, | or will go out. |
| <i>Tú saldrás</i> , | thou shalt go out, | or wilt go out. |
| <i>El saldrá</i> , | he shall go out, | or will go out. |
| <i>Nosotros saldremos</i> , | we shall go out, | or will go out. |
| <i>Vosotros saldréis</i> , | you shall go out, | or will go out. |
| <i>Ellos saldrán</i> , | they shall go out, | or will go out. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

Yo saliere, *tú salieres*, *él saliere*,
Nosotros saliéremos, *vosotros salieréis*, *ellos salieron*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo saldría,</i> | I should go out, | or would go out. |
| <i>Tú saldrías,</i> | thou shouldst go out, | or wouldst go out |
| <i>El saldría,</i> | he should go out, | or would go out. |
| <i>Nosotros saldríamos,</i> | we should go out, | or would go out. |
| <i>Vosotros saldríais,</i> | you should go out, | or would go out. |
| <i>Ellos saldrían,</i> | they should go out, | or would go out. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sal, go (thou) out.

Salid, go (you) out.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo salga,</i> | that I may go out. |
| <i>Que tú salgas,</i> | that thou mayst go out. |
| <i>Que él salga,</i> | that he may go out. |
| <i>Que nosotros salgamos,</i> | that we may go out. |
| <i>Que vosotros salgais,</i> | that you may go out. |
| <i>Que ellos salgan,</i> | that they may go out. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Que yo saliera,</i> | or <i>saliese,</i> | that I might go out. |
| <i>Que tú salieras,</i> | or <i>salieses,</i> | that thou mightst go out |
| <i>Que él saliera,</i> | or <i>saliese,</i> | that he might go out. |
| <i>Que nosotros saliéramos,</i> | or <i>saliésemos,</i> | that we might go out. |
| <i>Que vosotros saliérais,</i> | or <i>saliéseis,</i> | that you might go out. |
| <i>Que ellos salieran,</i> | or <i>saliesen,</i> | that they might go out. |

Paz, peace, is feminine by exception.

Faltar, to fail, to want; *observar,* to observe; *participar,* to participate, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *pretender* to pretend; *someter,* to submit, are of the second: and *permitir* to permit, of the third.

Conocer, to know, goes like *complacer* (147).

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I do not go out, 242. | 16. I should not go out, 242. |
| 2. He does not go out. | 17. He should not go out. |
| 3. We do not go out. | 18. We should not go out. |
| 4. You do not go out. | 19. You should not go out. |
| 5. They do not go out. | 20. They should not go out. |
| 6. I did not go out. | 21. I have not gone out. |
| 7. He did not go out. | 22. He has not gone out. |
| 8. We did not go out. | 23. We have not gone out. |
| 9. You did not go out. | 24. You have not gone out. |
| 10. They did not go out. | 25. They have not gone out. |
| 11. I shall not go out. | 26. I had not gone out. |
| 12. He shall not go out. | 27. I shall not have gone out. |
| 13. We shall not go out. | 28. I should not have gone out. |
| 14. You shall not go out. | 29. That I may go out. |
| 15. They shall not go out. | 30. That I might not go out. |
31. That I may call, 237.—32. That he may call.—33. That we may call.—34. That you may call.—35. That they may call.—36. That I may drink, 237.—37. That he may drink.—38. That we may drink.—39. That you may drink.—40. That they may drink.—41. That I may live, 237.—42. That he may live.—43. That we may live.—44. That you may live.—45. That they may live.—46. He has exchanged a pair of horses against a fine carriage, 235.—47. He wishes to travel for two months, 235.—48. For want of paper, I could not write my letters, 235.—49. Please send for some, 235.—50. I met your friend passing through the street, 235.—51. He was considered a good and honest man, 235.—52. I have bought this silk, at two dollars a yard, 235.—53. Do you like to take a walk in the evening? 235.—54. Those boots are cheaper wholesale than retail, 235.—55. This is easy, 241.—56. That is difficult, 241.—57. All this is pleasant, 241.—58. Observing.—59. Observed.—60. Pretending.—61. Pretended.—62. Allowing.—63. Allowed.

TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion vigésima quinta.

Lesson twenty fifth.

Extracto de Cadalso, concluido.

Extract from Cadalso, concluded.

Sexta parte.

Sixth part.

Los Aragonese son hombres de valor y

The Aragonese are men of valor and

espíritu, honrados, tenazes en su dictámen,

intelligence, honest, tenacious in their opinion,

amantes de su provincia, y notablemente

fond of their province, and notably

preocupados á favor de sus paisanos. En

prejudiced in favor of their countrymen. In

otros tiempos cultivaron con suceso las

other times they cultivated with success the

ciencias, y manejaron con mucha gloria

sciences, and handled with much glory

las armas contra los Franceses en Nápoles,

the arms against the French at Naples;

y contra los Moros, nuestros abuelos, en

and against the Moors, our ancestors, in

España. Su pais, como todo lo restante

Spain. Their coun'try, like all the rest

de la Península, fué sumamente poblado

of the Peninsula, was highly peopled

en la antigüedad, y tanto que es comun

in the antiquity. and so much that it is common

tradicion entre ellos, que en las bodas
 tradition among them, that at the wedding
de uno de sus reyes viniéron á
 of one of their kings came to
Zaragoza diez mil infanzones, con un
 Saragossa ten thousand noblemen, with a
criado cada uno, montados los veinte mil
 servant each one, mounted the twenty thousand
en otros tantos caballos de la tierra.
 on other as many horses of the land.

Por causa de los muchos siglos que todos
 On account of the many centuries that all
estos pueblos estuvieron divididos, guerrea-
 these people were divided, warred
ron unos con otros, hablaron diversos
 one against other, spoke different
idiomas, se gobernaron por diferentes
 languages, themselves governed by different
leyes, llevaron distintos trajes, y en fin fué-
 laws, wore distinct dress, and, in fine, were
ron naciones separadas, se mantuvo entre
 nations separate, itself it maintained among
ellos cierto odio, que, sin duda, ha mino-
 them certain hatred, which, no doubt, has moderated,
rado, pero aun no ha llegado á aniquilarse.
 but yet not has come to annihilate itself.

The same in good English.

EXTRACTO DE CADALSO, CON-
CLUIDO.

SEXTA PARTE.

Los Aragoneses son hombres
 de valor y espíritu, honrados, te-
 naces en su dictámen, amantes

EXTRACT FROM CADALSO, CON-
CLUDED.

SIXTH PART.

The Aragonese are men of
 valor and intelligence, honest,
 tenacious of their own opinions,

de su provincia, y notablemente preocupados á favor de sus paisanos. En otros tiempos cultivaron con suceso las ciencias, y manejaron con mucha gloria las armas contra los Franceses en Nápoles, y contra los Moros, nuestros abuelos, en España. Su país, como todo lo restante de la Península, fué sumamente poblado en la antigüedad, y tanto que es comun tradicion entre ellos, que en las bodas de uno de sus reyes vinieron á Zaragoza diez mil infanzones, con un criado cada uno, montados los veinte mil en otros tantos caballos de la tierra.

Por causa de los muchos siglos que todos estos pueblos estuvieron divididos, guerrearón unos con otros, hablaron diversos idiomas, se gobernaron por diferentes leyes, llevaron distintos trajes, y en fin fuéron naciones separadas, se mantuvo entre ellos cierto odio, que, sin duda, ha minorado, pero aun no ha llegado á aniquilarse.

and especially attached to their country and fellow-countrymen. Once much given to the study of the sciences, they have also won great military glory against the French at Naples, and against the Moors, our ancestors, in Spain. Aragon, like the rest of the Peninsula, was formerly well populated; and it is even said that at one time ten thousand noblemen on horseback, followed by as many mounted servants of that land, entered Saragossa as a pageant to the wedding of one of their kings.

But the many years of dissension which have kept these several people apart, warring against each other, speaking different languages, being governed by distinct laws, and wearing particular costumes, subdividing the whole into as many separate nations, has maintained a certain hatred among them, which, though abating, has not yet entirely disappeared.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿ Que lección es esta ?
 ¿ Que son los Aragoneses ?
 ¿ Que mas son ?

De que son amantes ?
 Que hicieron en otros tiempos ?
 ¿ Manejaron las armas ?
 ¿ Contra quien ?

¿ Fué poblado el país de los Aragoneses ?

La vigésima quinta.
 Son hombres de valor y espíritu.
 Son honrados y tenaces en su dictámen.
 De su provincia y de sus paisanos.
 Cultivaron con suceso las ciencias.
 Sí, señor, con mucha gloria.
 Contra los Franceses y contra los Moros.
 Su país fué sumamente poblado en la antigüedad.

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿Que es entre ellos comun tradicion? | Que en las bodas de uno de sus reyes entraron en Zaragoza diez mil infanzones de esta tierra. |
| ¿Tenian criados estos infanzones? | Un criado montado cada uno. |
| ¿Como estuvieron todos los pueblos de España por muchos siglos? | Estuvieron divididos. |
| ¿Que hicieron? | Guerrearon unos con otros. |
| ¿Hablaron el mismo idioma? | Hablaron diversos idiomas. |
| ¿Como se gobernaron? | Se gobernaron por diferentes leyes. |
| ¿Que trajes llevaron? | Llevaron distintos trajes. |
| ¿Y que fuéron en fin? | Fuéron naciones separadas. |
| ¿Que se mantuvo entre ellos? | Un cierto odio. |
| ¿Se ha minorado este odio? | Se ha minorado, pero aun no ha llegado á aniquilarse. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El paisano.
 El suceso.
 La gloria.
 La antigüedad.
 La tradicion.
 El infanzon honrado.
 Amante de su patria.
 El soldado tenaz.
 Un caballo comun.
 Los diversos idiomas.
 Las diferentes leyes.
 Un traje distinto.
 Un cierto odio.
 Las naciones separadas.
 Las bodas espléndidas.
 ¿Donde está Zaragoza?
 En la provincia de Aragon.
 ¿Cerca de cual rio?
 Al lado izquierdo del Ebro.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The countryman.
 The success.
 The glory.
 The antiquity.
 The tradition.
 The honest nobleman.
 Fond of his country.
 The tenacious soldier.
 A common horse.
 The different languages.
 The various laws.
 A distinct dress.
 A certain hatred.
 The separate nations.
 The splendid wedding.
 Where is Saragossa?
 In the province of Aragon.
 Near what river?
 On the left bank of the Ebro

| | |
|---|---|
| ¿Que sabe V. de sus habitantes? | What do you know of its inhabitants? |
| Son unos pueblos muy valientes. | They are a valiant people. |
| Muy amantes de su patria. | Much attached to their fatherland. |
| ¿Cuándo han mostrado mucho valor? | When did they exhibit much courage? |
| En la guerra contra Napoleon primero, emperador de los Franceses. | In the war against Napoleon I., emperor of the French. |
| ¿Como se llamó Zaragoza en los tiempos antiguos? | How was Saragossa called in ancient times? |
| Se llamó Sagunto. | It was called Sagunt. |
| ¿Cuales dos pueblos se disputaron la posesion de esta ciudad? | Which two people fought for the possession of this city? |
| Los Romanos y los Cartagineses. | The Romans and Carthaginians. |
| ¿Cual general Cartagines la destruyó? | Which Carthaginian general destroyed it? |
| El famoso Anibal. | The famous Hannibal. |
| En el año doscientos veintiuno antes de Jesu-Cristo. | In the year 221 before Christ. |
| ¿Adonde se fué Anibal despues de la destruccion de Zaragoza? | Where did Hannibal go to after the destruction of Saragossa? |
| Se marchó sobre los Pirineos á Galia. | He crossed the Pyrenees, and went into Gaul. |
| ¿Como se llama Galia hoy? | How is Gaul called nowadays? |
| Se llama Francia. | It is called France. |
| ¿Cual provincia fué la última en la posesion de los Moros? | Which province was last in possession of the Moors? |
| La provincia de Granada. | The province of Granada. |
| ¿Cuales soberanos rechazaron los Moros de España? | Which sovereigns chased the Moors from Spain? |
| El rey Fernando y la reina Isabel. | King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella. |
| ¿Quien fué el mas famoso guerrero en aquel tiempo? | Who was the most famous warrior of those times? |
| El Cid Campeador. | The Cid Campeador. |
| ¿Cual autor americano ha escrito una historia excelente de la conquista de Granada? | What American author has written an excellent history of the conquest of Granada? |
| El célebre Washington Irving. | The celebrated Washington Irving. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEOLETICAL PART.

Amantes de su provincia,
literally,
lovers of their province.

243. Some verbs have a second present participle in Spanish ending with **ante** for the first conjugation, and with **ente** for the second and third. But this form can be used only as an adjective, or as an adjective taken substantively.

Ex. *Hablante*, one who talks; a talker.
Vendiente, one who sells; a seller.

As these verbal adjectives cannot be formed from every verb indiscriminately, care should be had to consult the dictionary before using them. They have often to be translated by quite another word; as,

An affecting scene, *Una escena tierna*.

A favor de.

244. *A favor de* is an adverbial locution, answering exactly to *in favor of*.

Lo restante, the rest, the remainder.

245. *Restante* is here a verbal adjective, from *restar*, to remain, formed in accordance with Rule 243. *Lo* has been placed before it, because the noun to which it refers is not expressed. See note at the bottom of page 4, and Observation 170.

Comun tradicion, a common tradition.

246. The article **un**, **una**, A OR AN, being to a degree synonymous with the numeral adjective **uno**, **una**, ONE, it is generally left out in Spanish, unless it is required to express more clearly the idea of unity.

Ex. *Es solado*, he is a soldier.
Es Español, he is a Spaniard.
Es Americano, he is an American.

See also Rules 74, 75, 76.

Viniéron, came ; from *venir*, to come.

247. *Venir* is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Venir, to come.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Viniendo, coming.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Venido, come.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|--------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo vengo,</i> | I come, | or do come. |
| <i>Tú vienes,</i> | thou comest, | or dost come. |
| <i>El viene,</i> | he comes, | or does come. |
| <i>Nosotros venimos,</i> | we come, | or do come. |
| <i>Vosotros venis,</i> | you come, | or do come. |
| <i>Ellos vienen,</i> | they come, | or do come. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo venia,</i> | I came, | or used to come. |
| <i>Tú venias,</i> | thou camest, | or usedst to come. |
| <i>El venia,</i> | he came, | or used to come. |
| <i>Nosotros veníamos,</i> | we came, | or used to come. |
| <i>Vosotros veníais,</i> | you came, | or used to come. |
| <i>Ellos venían,</i> | they came, | or used to come. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo vine,</i> | I came, | or did come. |
| <i>Tú veniste,</i> | thou camest, | or didst come. |
| <i>El vino,</i> | he came, | or did come. |
| <i>Nosotros vinimos</i> | we came, | or did come. |
| <i>Vosotros venisteis</i> | you came, | or did come. |
| <i>Ellos viniéron,</i> | they came, | or did come. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo vendré,</i> | I shall come, | or will come. |
| <i>Tú vendrás</i> | thou shalt come, | or wilt come. |
| <i>El vendrá,</i> | he shall come, | or will come. |
| <i>Nosotros vendremos,</i> | we shall come, | or will come. |
| <i>Vosotros vendréis,</i> | you shall come, | or will come. |
| <i>Ellos vendrán,</i> | they shall come, | or will come. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo vendría,</i> | I should come, | or would come. |
| <i>Tú vendrías,</i> | thou shouldst come, | or wouldst come. |
| <i>El vendría,</i> | he should come, | or would come. |
| <i>Nosotros vendríamos,</i> | we should come, | or would come. |
| <i>Vosotros vendríais,</i> | you should come, | or would come. |
| <i>Ellos vendrían,</i> | they should come, | or would come. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ven, come (thou).
Venid, come (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo venga,</i> | that I may come. |
| <i>Que tú vengas,</i> | that thou mayst come. |
| <i>Que él venga,</i> | that he may come. |
| <i>Que nosotros vengamos,</i> | that we may come. |
| <i>Que vosotros vengais,</i> | that you may come. |
| <i>Que ellos vengán,</i> | that they may come. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo viniera,</i> | or <i>viniese,</i> | that I might come. |
| <i>Que tú vinieras,</i> | or <i>vinieses,</i> | that thou mightst come. |
| <i>Que él viniera,</i> | or <i>viniese,</i> | that he might come. |
| <i>Que nosotros viniéramos,</i> | or <i>viniésemos,</i> | that we might come. |
| <i>Que vosotros viniérais,</i> | or <i>vinieseis,</i> | that you might come. |
| <i>Que ellos vinieran,</i> | or <i>viniesen,</i> | that they might come. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

Yo viniera, *tú vinieras,* *él viniera,*
Nosotros viniéramos, *vosotros vinieseis.* *ellos vinieran.*

248. Thus are conjugated the derivatives *convenir*, to agree
sobrevenir, to happen, etc.

Cada uno, each one.

249. *Cada* is an invariable word in Spanish, answering to
EACH and EVERY.

Ex. *Cada hombre*, each or every man.

Cada mujer, each or every woman.

Cada dos días, every two days, or every second day.

Tantos caballos, as many horses.

250. *Tantos* is the plural masculine of *tanto*, which in
the singular means AS, or SO MUCH; and in the plural, AS, or
SO MANY. Before an adjective or adverb, *tan*, AS or SO, is used
instead of *tanto*, *tanta*, *tantos*, *tantas*.

Ex. *Tanto pan como carne*, as much bread as meat.

Tanta carne como pan, as much meat as bread.

Tantos niños como niñas, as many boys as girls.

Tantas niñas como niños, as many girls as boys.

Tan bueno como él, as good as he.

Tan buenos como ellos, as good as they.

Unos con otros.

251. *Unos con otros*, literally *one with the other*, means
here more particularly, *against each other*.

Ha minorado, has diminished.

252. The compound tenses of all verbs, regular and irregular,
are formed with *haber*, TO HAVE; and *tener* is never used
auxiliarily.

Ex. *He hablado*. *He vendido*. *He unido*.

Idioma, language, is masculine; and *ley*, law, is feminine,
by exception.

Aniquilar, to annihilate; *guerrear*, to war; *manejar*, to handle;
minorar, to diminish; *montar*, to mount; *preocupar*, to preju-
dice; *separar*, to separate, are regular verbs of the first conjuga-
tion: and *dividir*, to divide, is of the third.

Concluir, to conclude. goes like *instruir*, see page 148

gobernar, to govern, like *quebrar*, page 98; *poblar*, to people, like *mostrar*, page 97; and *mantener*, to maintain, like *tener* page 33.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I agree, 248. | 16. I should agree, 248. |
| 2. He agrees. | 17. He should agree. |
| 3. We agree. | 18. We should agree. |
| 4. You agree. | 19. You should agree. |
| 5. They agree. | 20. They should agree. |
| 6. I agreed. | 21. I have agreed. |
| 7. He agreed. | 22. He has agreed. |
| 8. We agreed. | 23. We have agreed. |
| 9. You agreed. | 24. You have agreed. |
| 10. They agreed. | 25. They have agreed. |
| 11. I shall agree. | 26. I had agreed. |
| 12. He shall agree. | 27. I should have agreed. |
| 13. We shall agree. | 28. Agree. |
| 14. You shall agree. | 29. That I may agree. |
| 15. They shall agree. | 30. That I might agree. |

31. The Americans *are* the Spaniards are lovers of their country, 243.—32. They *are* merchants, 246.—33. Joseph is a pedler, 246.—34. Paul *is* an officer, 246.—35. I work every day, 249.—36. He *gives* a dollar to each one of us, 249.—37. Have you as many books as I? 250.—38. Have you as good books as I? 250.—39. He has admired and praised these things.—40. I have seen and bought these things.—41. They went out together.—42. I have called, 252.—43. I had called.—44. I shall have called.—45. I should have called.—46. That I may have called.—47. That I might have called.—48. I have drunk, 252.—49. I had drunk.—50. I shall have drunk.—51. I should have drunk.—52. That I may have drunk.—53. That I might have drunk.—54. I have lived, 252.—55. I had lived.—56. I shall have lived.—57. I should have lived.—58. That I may have lived.—59. That I might have lived.

TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion vigésima sexta.

Lesson twenty sixth.

Extracto del Trovador de Don Juan

Extract from the Troubadour, by Mr. John

Garcia Gutierrez.

Garcia Gutierrez.

Nadie mejor que yo puede saber esta

Nobody better than I can know this

historia, como que hace cuarenta años que

history, inasmuch as it makes forty years that

estoy al servicio de los condes de Luna.

I am in the service of the Counts of Luna.

Lo han contado de diverso modo, y como

It they have related of diverse manner; and as

se abultan tanto las cosas, yo os lo

themselves they exaggerate so much the things, I you it

contaré tal como ello pasó. El conde

will relate so as it passed. The count

vivia regularmente en Zaragoza. Tenia

lived regularly in Saragossa. He had

dos niños: el uno que es Don Nuño, nues-

two boys: the one who is Mr. Nuño, our

tro muy querido amo, y contaba entónces

very dear master, and counted then

seis meses, poco mas ó ménos; y el mayor,

six months, little more or less; and the elder,

que tendria dos años, llamado Don Juan.

who could have two years, called Mr. John.

Una noche entró en la casa del conde

One night entered in the house of the count

una de esas vagamundas, una gitana con

one of these vagabonds, a gypsy with

ribetes de bruja, y, sin decir palabra, se

trimmings of witch, and, without to say word, she

deslizó hacia la cámara donde dormía el

slipped into the room where slept the

mayorcito. Se sentó á su lado, y le

elder little one. Herself she seated at his side, and him

estuvo mirando largo rato sin apartar de

she was looking long time without turning from

él los ojos un instante; pero los criados

him the eyes one instant; but the servants

la vieron, y la arrojaron á palos.

her saw, and her drove off with blows.

The same in good English.

**EXTRACTO DEL TROVADOR DE
DON JUAN GARCIA GUTIER-
REZ.**

Nadie mejor que yo puede saber esta historia, como que hace cuarenta años que estoy al servicio de los condes de Luna. Lo han contado de diverso modo, y como se abultan tanto las cosas, yo os lo contaré tal como ello pasó. El conde vivía regularmente en Zaragoza. Tenía dos niños: el uno, que es Don Nuño, nuestro muy querido amo, y contaba entonces seis meses, poco más ó menos; y el mayor, que tendría dos años, llamado Don Juan.

**EXTRACT FROM THE TROUBA-
DOUR OF DON JUAN GARCIA
GUTIERREZ.**

No one can know this history better than I, who have been for the last forty years in the service of the Counts de Luna. There are several versions of it; but things are often so much exaggerated, that I will relate it to you as it took place.

The count lived generally at Saragossa. He had two boys: Mr. Nuño, our beloved master, who was then about six months old, and Mr. Juan, the eldest, who might be two years

Una noche entró en la casa del conde una de esas vagamundas, una gitana con ribetes de bruja, y, sin decir palabra, se deslizó hacia la cámara donde dormía el mayorcito. Se sentó á su lado, y le estuvo mirando largo rato sin apartar de él los ojos un instante; pero los criados la vieron, y la arrojaron á palos.

One evening a wandering gypsy, dressed as a sorceress, entered the house, approached stealthily the bed in which the older of the two children was sleeping, and seating herself by his side, remained for some time with her eyes fixed intently upon him; but the servants saw her, and drove her off with blows.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿ Que lección es esta ?

La vigésima sexta.

¿ De cual obra es este extracto ?

Del Trovador de Don Juan García Gutierrez.

¿ Quien puede saber esta historia ?

Nadie mejor que yo.

¿ Cuantos años hace que estoy al servicio de los condes de Luna ?

Cuarenta años.

¿ Como lo han contado ?

Lo han contado de diverso modo.

¿ Como os lo contaré yo ?

Tal como ello pasó.

¿ Donde vivía regularmente el conde ?

En Zaragoza.

¿ Cuantos niños tenía ?

Tenía dos niños.

¿ Como se llamaba el uno ?

Se llamaba Don Nuño, nuestro muy querido amo.

Que edad contaba entónces ?

Contaba seis meses poco mas ó ménos.

Como se llamaba el mayor, y que edad tenía ?

Se llamaba Don Juan, y tenía dos años.

¿ Quien entró una noche en la casa del conde ?

Una de esas vagamundas, una gitana.

¿ Que tenía esta gitana ?

Ribetes de bruja.

¿ Adonde se deslizó la gitana sin decir palabra ?

Hacia la cámara donde dormía el mayorcito.

¿ Donde se sentó ?

A su lado.

¿ Que hizo allí ?

Le estuvo mirando largo rato sin apartar de él los ojos un instante.

¿ Que hicieron los criados cuando la vieron ?

La arrojaron á palos.

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Un servicio.

El modo.

Una gitana.

La bruja.

La palabra.

Contar.

Abultar.

Pasar.

Vivir.

Entrar.

Sentarse.

Arrojar.

Un amigo querido.

Que está V. leyendo ahora?

Un extracto del Trovador.

¿Hay una ópera de este nombre, no es verdad?

Si, señor; la he visto en la Academia de Música.

¿Puede V. decirme cual es el sujeto de esta ópera?

Una gitana pilló á uno de los hijos del conde de Luna.

Este niño se llama Nuño.

Tiene un hermano que se llama Juan.

Nuño es educado entre los gitanos.

Cuando tiene veinte años se hace trovador.

Encuentra á una señorita que se llama Leonora.

Ella quiere y la hace su esposa.

Su hermano Juan ama á la misma señora.

Hace pillar y quemar á su propio hermano.

En este momento una vieja gitana aparece,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

A service.

The manner.

A gypsy.

The sorceress.

The word.

To relate.

To exaggerate.

To pass.

To live.

To enter.

To sit down.

To drive away.

A beloved friend.

What are you reading now?

An extract from the Troubadour.

There is an opera of that name, is there not?

Yes, sir; I have seen it at the Academy of Music.

Can you tell me the subject of that opera?

A gypsy steals one of the sons of Count Luna.

This child's name is Nuño.

He has a brother whose name is John.

Nuño is brought up among the gypsies.

At the age of twenty he becomes a troubadour.

He meets a young lady whose name is Leonora.

He loves and marries her.

His brother John loves the same lady.

He causes his own brother to be caught and burned.

At that very moment the old gypsy appears,

| | |
|---|--|
| Y le lico que esta matando á su propio hermano. | And tells him that he is killing his own brother. |
| ¿ Quien ha compuesto la música ? | Who has composed the music ? |
| El célebre compositor Verdi. | The celebrated composer, Verdi. |
| Como es que la verdadera historia difiere tanto del texto de la ópera ? | How does it happen that the text of the opera differs so much from history ? |
| Esta es una licencia poética. | This is a poetical license. |
| Le gusta á V. mucho la ópera italiana ? | Are you very fond of the Italian opera ? |
| Muchísimo, especialmente la música de Meyerbeer. | I am very fond of it, especially of the music of Meyerbeer. |
| Pero Meyerbeer no es Italiano, señor. | But Meyerbeer is not an Italian, sir. |
| Yo sé que es Aleman, pero ha recibido su educacion en Italia. | I know he is a German, but he has received his education in Italy. |
| Su estilo es italiano. | His style is Italian. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Nadie, nobody.

253. *Nadie* differs from *ninguno*, already seen (198), inasmuch as it cannot be joined to a noun.

Saber, to know.

251. *Saber*, to know, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Saber, to know.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Sabiendo, knowing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Sabido, known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo sé</i> , | I know, | or do know. |
| <i>Tú sabes</i> , | thou knowest, | or dost know. |
| <i>El sabe</i> , | he knows, | or does know. |
| <i>Nosotros sabemos</i> , | we know, | or do know. |
| <i>Vosotros sabeis</i> , | you know, | or do know. |
| <i>Ellos saben</i> , | they know, | or do know. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo sabía,</i> | I knew, | or used to know. |
| <i>Tú sabías,</i> | thou knewest, | or usedst to know. |
| <i>El sabía,</i> | he knew, | or used to know. |
| <i>Nosotros sabíamos,</i> | we knew, | or used to know. |
| <i>Vosotros sabíais,</i> | you knew, | or used to know. |
| <i>Ellos sabían,</i> | they knew, | or used to know. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo supe,</i> | I knew, | or did know. |
| <i>Tú supiste,</i> | thou knewest, | or didst know. |
| <i>El supo,</i> | he knew, | or did know. |
| <i>Nosotros supimos,</i> | we knew, | or did know. |
| <i>Vosotros supisteis,</i> | you knew, | or did know. |
| <i>Ellos supieron,</i> | they knew, | or did know. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo sabré,</i> | I shall know, | or will know. |
| <i>Tú sabrás,</i> | thou shalt know, | or wilt know. |
| <i>El sabrá,</i> | he shall know, | or will know. |
| <i>Nosotros sabremos,</i> | we shall know, | or will know. |
| <i>Vosotros sabréis,</i> | you shall know, | or will know. |
| <i>Ellos sabrán,</i> | they shall know, | or will know. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo sabría,</i> | I should know, | or would know. |
| <i>Tú sabrías,</i> | thou shouldst know, | or wouldst know. |
| <i>El sabría,</i> | he should know, | or would know. |
| <i>Nosotros sabríamos,</i> | we should know, | or would know. |
| <i>Vosotros sabríais,</i> | you should know, | or would know. |
| <i>Ellos sabrían,</i> | they should know, | or would know. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sabe, know (thou).

Sabad, know (you).

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo supiere,</i> | <i>tú supieres,</i> | <i>él supiere,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros supiéremos,</i> | <i>vosotros supierdes,</i> | <i>ellos supieren.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo sepa,</i> | that I may know. |
| <i>Que tú sepas</i> | that thou mayst know. |
| <i>Que él sepa,</i> | that he may know. |
| <i>Que nosotros sepamos,</i> | that we may know. |
| <i>Que vosotros sepáis,</i> | that you may know. |
| <i>Que ellos sepan,</i> | that they may know. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo supiera,</i> | or <i>supiese,</i> | that I might know. |
| <i>Que tú supieras,</i> | or <i>supieses,</i> | that thou mightst know. |
| <i>Que él supiera,</i> | or <i>supiese,</i> | that he might know. |
| <i>Que nosotros supiéramos,</i> | or <i>supiésemos,</i> | that we might know. |
| <i>Que vosotros supierais,</i> | or <i>supiéseis,</i> | that you might know. |
| <i>Que ellos supieran,</i> | or <i>supiesen,</i> | that they might know. |

Como que.

255. *Como que* is an idiomatic locution, corresponding to *inasmuch as*, in English.

Estoy al servicio, I am in the service.

256. Contrary to English usage, the preposition *á* is introduced in Spanish in the following idiomatic expressions:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Este vestido está bien á V.,</i> | this dress fits you well. |
| <i>Estar al servicio de alguno,</i> | to be in the service of some one. |
| <i>Estar á cuentas con él,</i> | to have an account with him. |
| <i>Estar á derecho,</i> | to be in the right. |
| <i>Estar á línea,</i> | to be in a line. |
| <i>Estar á punto de salir,</i> | to be on the point of starting. |
| <i>Estar á esperar,</i> | to be hoping or to hope. |
| <i>Un sombrero á la moda,</i> | a hat in the fashion. |

De diverso modo, in a different manner.

257. The preposition *de* is, like *á*, one of the most difficult small words to use properly. Corresponding generally to *of* or *from*, it has often to be rendered by *to*, *with*, *in*, or the sign of the possessive case (*'s*), as in the following examples:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <i>La ley de Dios,</i> | The law of God, or God's law. |
| <i>Vengo de Matanzas,</i> | I come from Matanzas. |
| <i>He de escribir,</i> | I have to write. |
| <i>El mas grande del mundo,</i> | The greatest in the world. |
| <i>De intento lo hizo,</i> | He did it with intention, or intentionally. |

Contaré, will relate.

258. All verbs regular and irregular end in the future with *é, ás, á, émos, éis, án.*

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| Rx. <i>Hablaré,</i> | } I shall or will speak. | <i>Venderé,</i> | } I shall or will sell. | <i>Uniré,</i> | } I shall or will unite. |
| <i>Hablarás,</i> | | <i>Venderás,</i> | | <i>Unirás,</i> | |
| <i>Hablará,</i> | | <i>Venderá,</i> | | <i>Unirá,</i> | |
| <i>Hablarémos,</i> | | <i>Venderémos,</i> | | <i>Unirémos,</i> | |
| <i>Hablaréis,</i> | | <i>Venderéis,</i> | | <i>Uniréis,</i> | |
| <i>Hablarán,</i> | | <i>Venderán,</i> | | <i>Unirán,</i> | |

259. These terminations are generally added to the infinitive form of each verb.

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| Rx. <i>Hablar,</i> to speak. | <i>Hablaré,</i> I shall or will speak. |
| <i>Vender,</i> to sell. | <i>Venderé,</i> I shall or will sell. |
| <i>Unir,</i> to unite. | <i>Uniré,</i> I shall or will unite. |

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

Poco mas ó ménos, little more or less.

260. *Poco mas ó ménos* is an idiomatic locution, which corresponds to ABOUT in English.

Tendría, could have.

261. All verbs, regular and irregular, end in the conditionals with *ia, ias, ia, íamos, íais, ían.*

| | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Rx. <i>Hablaría,</i> | } I should or would speak. | <i>Vendería,</i> | } I should or would sell. | <i>Uniría,</i> | } I should or would unite. |
| <i>Hablarías,</i> | | <i>Venderías,</i> | | <i>Unirías,</i> | |
| <i>Hablaría,</i> | | <i>Vendería,</i> | | <i>Uniría,</i> | |
| <i>Hablaríamos,</i> | | <i>Venderíamos,</i> | | <i>Uniríamos,</i> | |
| <i>Hablaríais,</i> | | <i>Venderíais,</i> | | <i>Uniríais,</i> | |
| <i>Hablarían,</i> | | <i>Venderían,</i> | | <i>Unirían,</i> | |

262. These terminations are generally added to the infinitive form of each verb.

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Ex. <i>Hablar</i> , to speak. | <i>Hablaría</i> , I should or would speak. |
| <i>Vender</i> , to sell. | <i>Vendería</i> , I should or would sell. |
| <i>Unir</i> , to unite. | <i>Uniría</i> , I should or would unite. |

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

263. The conditional form is never preceded by a conjunction in Spanish, the subjunctive past being then invariably used instead.

Ex. *Lo escribiría si V. me lo dictara*,
I would write it if you would dictate it to me.

El mayorcito, the eldest little one.

264. Diminutives are much more frequently used in Spanish than in English. Those expressive of smallness or prettiness are formed by the addition of **ico** or **ito** for the masculine, and **ica** or **ita** for the feminine; and those expressive of contempt or pity with **illo** or **uelo** for the masculine, and **illa** or **uela** for the feminine.

These terminations are generally added to the singular form of the noun or adjective, taking care that those ending with **a** or **o** drop their last vowel, and that those ending with **co**, **ca**, **go**, **ga**, and **z** change these final letters into **qu**, **gu**, and **c**.

| | | |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| <i>Muchacho</i> , a boy. | <i>Muchachito</i> , a pretty little boy. | <i>Muchachillo</i> , a poor little boy. |
| <i>Muchacha</i> , a girl. | <i>Muchachita</i> , a pretty little girl. | <i>Muchachilla</i> , a poor little girl. |
| <i>Barco</i> , a boat. | <i>Barquito</i> , a pretty little boat. | <i>Barquillo</i> , a miserable little boat. |
| <i>Amigo</i> , a friend. | <i>Amiguito</i> , a dear little friend. | <i>Amiguillo</i> , a poor little friend. |
| <i>Pez</i> , a fish. | <i>Pececito</i> , a nice little fish. | <i>Pececillo</i> , a poor little fish. |

265. Words ending with **e, n, or r**, take **cito, cito, cillo**, and **uelo**, instead of **ico, ito, illo**, and **uelo**.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| <i>Hombre,</i> a man. | <i>Hombrecito,</i> a nice little man. | <i>Hombrecillo,</i> a poor little man. |
| <i>Leon,</i> a lion. | <i>Leoncito,</i> a nice little lion. | <i>Leoncillo,</i> a poor little lion. |
| <i>Mujer,</i> a woman. | <i>Mujercita,</i> a nice little woman. | <i>Mujercilla,</i> a poor little woman. |

The only exception to this rule is *señor*, Mr. or gentleman, which is changed to *señorito*, master or young gentleman, and not *señorcito*.

266. These endings are especially added to Christian names in Spanish.

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Ex. <i>Pedrillo,</i> | little Peter. |
| <i>Juancito,</i> | little John. |
| <i>Anita,</i> | little Anna. |
| <i>Carlota,</i> | little Charlotte. |
| <i>Rosita,</i> | little Rose, etc. |

267. Augmentatives are formed by the addition of **azo, on** or **ote**, for the masculine, and **aza, ona, or ota**, for the feminine, with the only exception that the nouns or adjectives ending with **a, e, or o**, drop their final vowel.

Ex. *Muchacho*, a boy. *Muchachon*, a big (corpulent) boy.
Muchacha, a girl. *Muchachona*, a big (corpulent) girl.

The augmentatives are, however, but little used, inasmuch as they invariably carry with them an idea of reproach or defect.

Abultar, to exaggerate; *apartar*, to turn away; *arrojar*, to drive away; *contar*, to relate; *entrar*, to enter; and *pasar*, to pass, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *vivir*, to live, is of the third.

Deslizar, to steal in, goes like *rechazar* (187); and *sentar*, to sit down, like *quebrar* (138).

Exercises,**TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.**

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I shall call, 258, 259 | 16. I should call, 261, 262 |
| 2. He shall call. | 17. He should call. |
| 3. We shall call. | 18. We should call. |
| 4. You shall call. | 19. You should call. |
| 5. They shall call. | 20. They should call. |
| 6. I shall drink. | 21. I should drink. |
| 7. He shall drink. | 22. He should drink. |
| 8. We shall drink. | 23. We should drink. |
| 9. You shall drink. | 24. You should drink. |
| 10. They shall drink. | 25. They should drink. |
| 11. I shall live. | 26. I should live. |
| 12. He shall live. | 27. He should live. |
| 13. We shall live. | 28. We should live. |
| 14. You shall live. | 29. You should live. |
| 15. They shall live. | 30. They should live. |

31. My little son, 264.—32. His little daughter, 264.—
 33. Our little dog, 264.—34. Your little brother, 264.—
 35. Their little horses, 264.—36. My little sister, 264.—37. A
 poor little chicken, 264.—38. A poor little cat, 264.—39. A
 poor little bird, 264.—40. How does this hat become me? 256.
 —41. It becomes you very well, 256.—42. How long have
 you been in his service? 256.—43. Two years and a half.—44. I
 have an account with this commercial house, 256.—45. Every
 man has a right to defend his liberty, 256.—46. The soldiers
 were in a line, 256.—47. When do you intend going? 256.—
 48. I am on the point of starting, 256.—49. A fashionable
 coat, 256.—50. How many boys are there in your school?—
 51. About twenty-five, 260.—52. Are there no girls?—53. There
 are boys and girls.—54. Which lesson are you studying now?—
 55. The twenty-sixth.—56. Do you know the twenty-fifth?—
 57. I knew it yesterday.—58. Little Paul, 266.—59. Little
 Virginia 266.

TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion vigésima séptima.

Lesson twenty seventh.

Extracto del Trovador de Don Juan

Extract from the Troubadour, by Mr. John

Garcia Gutierrez, concluido.

Garcia Gutierrez, concluded.

Desde aquel dia empezó á enflaquecer

Since that day began to weaken

el niño, á llorar continuamente, y por

the child, to cry continually, and at

último, á los pocos dias, cayó gravemente

last, at the few days, it fell gravely

enfermo: la bruja le habia hechizado.

sick: the witch him had enchanted.

Todo esto alarmó al conde, y tomó sus

All this alarmed the count, and he took his

medidas para pillar á la gitana: cayó

measures to catch the gypsy: she fell

efectivamente en el garlito, y al otro dia

effectively in the snare, and on the other day

fué quemada públicamente para escar-

she was burnt publicly as warning

miento de viejas. El chico empezó á

of old women. The little one began to

engordar inmediatamente. Eso era natu-

grow fat immediately. This was natural

ral; pero á guiarse por mis consejos,

but to guide themselves by my advice.

hubiera sido tostada tambien la hija de la
 should have been roasted also the daughter of the
hechicera. No quisieron entenderme, y bien
 enchantress. Not they would hear me, and very
pronto tuvieron lugar de arrepentirse.
 promptly they had occasion to repent themselves.

Desapareció el niño, que estaba ya tan
 Disappeared the child, who was already so
rollizo que daba gusto verle; se le buscó
 plump that it gave pleasure to see him; they it looked for
por todas partes, y ¿sabeis lo que se
 through all parts, and do you know what itself
encontró? una hoguera recién apagada
 met? a pile of wood recently extinguished,
en el sitio donde murió la hechicera,
 on the site where died the enchantress,
y el esqueleto achicharrado del niño.
 and the skeleton charred of the child.

The same in good English.

**EXTRACTO DEL TROVADOR DE
 DON JUAN GARCIA GUTIER-
 REZ, CONCLUIDO.**

Desde aquel día empezó á en-
 flaquecer el niño, á llorar conti-
 nuamente, y por último, á los
 pocos días, cayó gravemente en-
 fermo: la bruja le habia hechic-
 zado. Todo esto alarmó al conde,
 y tomó sus medidas para pillar á
 la gitana: cayó efectivamente en
 el gurlito, y al otro día fué que-
 mada públicamente para escar-
 miento de viejas. El chico em-
 pezó á engordar inmediatamente.
 Eso era natural; pero á guiarse

**EXTRACT FROM THE TROUBA-
 DOUR OF DON JUAN GARCIA
 GUTIERREZ, CONCLUDED.**

From that day the boy began
 to grow thin: he cried inces-
 santly, and became finally quite
 sick. The count, alarmed, took
 measures to secure this sorceress,
 who readily fell into the snare
 laid for her, and she was burnt
 publicly on the next day, as
 warning to old women.

The child immediately gained
 flesh again, which was quite
 natural. But had they followed
 my advice, they would have

por mis consejos, hubiera sido tentada tambien la hija de la hechicera. No quisieron entenderme, y bien pronto tuvieron lugar de arrepentirse.

Desapareció el niño, que estaba ya tan rollizo que daba gusto verle; se le buscó por todas partes, y ¡sabeis lo que se encontró! una hoguera recién apagada, en el sitio donde murió la hechicera, y el esqueleto achicharrado del niño.

roasted also the daughter of the gypsy: they would, however, not listen to me, and they soon had occasion to repent of it.

The boy, who was already so plump as to be the very picture of health, disappeared: they looked for him everywhere, and what do you think they found? a pile of wood recently burnt out, and the charred remains of the child.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que lección es esta?

¿Que sucedió al niño desde aquel día?

¿Y por último?

¿Porqué?

¿Que influjo tenia todo esto sobre el conde?

¿Y que hizo el conde?

¿Consiguio él pillarla?

¿Que se hizo con ella?

¿Para que?

¿Que era eso?

¿Qual habia sido mi consejo?

¿Que tuvieron como no quisieron entenderme?

¿Que se hizo con el niño?

¿Estaba ya rollizo?

¿Donde se le buscó?

¿Donde se encontró el esqueleto achicharrado del niño?

¿En que sitio estaba esta hoguera?

La vigésima séptima.

Empezó á enflaquecer y á llorar continuamente.

Por último á los pocos días cayó gravemente enfermo.

Porque la bruja le habia hechizado.

Todo esto le alarmó.

Tomó sus medidas para pillar á la gitana.

Cayó efectivamente en el garlito.

Fué quemada públicamente.

Para escarmiento de viejas.

Eso era natural.

Tostar tambien la hija de la hechicera.

Tuvieron bien pronto lugar de arrepentirse.

El niño desapareció.

Estaba ya tan rollizo que daba gusto verle.

Por todas partes.

En una hoguera recién apagada.

En el sitio donde murio la hechicera.

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

El escarmiento.
 Un consejo.
 Un garlito.
 Una bruja.
 Un niño enfermo.
 Una cosa natural.
 Alarmar.
 Quemar.
 Tostar.
 Entender.
 Enflaquecer.
 Arrepentirse.
 Continuamente.
 Efectivamente.
 Públicamente.
 Inmediatamente.

¿Cuales son las óperas principales de Meyerbeer?

Roberto, y el Profeta.

¿Quien es el mas grande compositor de los Italianos?

El famoso maestro Rossini.

¿Cual es su mas celebrada obra?

El Barbero de Sevilla.

¿Como se llama este barbero?

Se llama Figaro.

Las Bodas de Figaro son la continuacion de esta ópera.

¿Quien ha compuesto la música de las Bodas de Figaro?

El immortal Mozart, uno de los mas grandes músicos de Alemania.

¿Hace buenos negocios la ópera de Nueva York?

Si, señor; los artistas reciben salarios muy altos.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

The warning.
 An advice.
 A trap.
 A witch.
 A sick child.
 A natura' thing
 To alarm.
 To burn.
 To toast.
 To hear.
 To grow thin.
 To repent.
 Continually.
 Effectively.
 Publicly.
 Immediately.

Which are the principal operas of Meyerbeer?

Robert, and the Prophet.

Who is the greatest Italian composer?

The famous maestro, Rossini.

Which is his most celebrated work?

The Barber of Seville.

What is this barber's name?

His name is Figaro.

The Marriage of Figaro is a continuation of this opera.

Who composed the music to the Marriage of Figaro?

The immortal Mozart, one of the greatest musicians of Germany.

Does the opera succeed well in New York?

Yes, sir; the artists receive very high salaries.

| | |
|--|---|
| La ópera italiana gusta muchísimo á los Americanos. | The Americans are very fond of the Italian opera. |
| ¿Tenían una compañía en el jardín de invierno, no es verdad? | They had a troupe at the Winter Garden, did they not? |
| Si, señor; ¿le gustaba á V? | Yes, sir; did you like it? |
| Muchísimo, especialmente la representación de la Judía. | Very much, especially the performance of The Jewess. |
| ¿Quién ha compuesto la Judía. | Who has composed The Jewess? |
| El compositor francés Halevy. | The French composer, Halevy. |
| ¿Se dan muchos conciertos aquí? | Do they give many concerts here? |
| Han dado recientemente dos oratorios: | They have given lately two oratorios: |
| La Creación de Haydn, y Moisés en Egipto de Rossini. | The Creation, by Haydn; and Moses in Egypt, by Rossini. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Empezó á enflaquecer,
began to grow thin.

268. To before an infinitive is translated by *á* after *empezar* to begin. See Rule 166.

A los pocos días.

269. *A los pocos días* is an idiomatic expression, which corresponds to *a few days after*.

Cayó, fell; from caer, to fall.

270. *Caer, to fall*, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows:

INFINITIVE MOOD

Caer to fall.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Cayendo, falling.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Caído, fallen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo caigo,</i> | I fall, | or do fall. |
| <i>Tú caes,</i> | thou fallest, | or dost fall. |
| <i>El cae,</i> | he falls, | or does fall. |
| <i>Nosotros caemos,</i> | we fall, | or do fall. |
| <i>Vosotros caéis,</i> | you fall, | or do fall. |
| <i>Ellos caen,</i> | they fall, | or do fall. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| <i>Yo caía,</i> | I fell, | or used to fall. |
| <i>Tú caías,</i> | thou fellest, | or usedst to fall. |
| <i>El caía,</i> | he fell, | or used to fall. |
| <i>Nosotros caíamos,</i> | we fell, | or used to fall. |
| <i>Vosotros caíais,</i> | you fell, | or used to fall. |
| <i>Ellos caían,</i> | they fell, | or used to fall. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo caí,</i> | I fell, | or did fall. |
| <i>Tú caíste,</i> | thou fellest, | or didst fall. |
| <i>El cayó,</i> | he fell, | or did fall. |
| <i>Nosotros caímos,</i> | we fell, | or did fall. |
| <i>Vosotros caísteis,</i> | you fell, | or did fall. |
| <i>Ellos cayeron,</i> | they fell, | or did fall. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo caeré,</i> | I shall fall, | or will fall. |
| <i>Tú caerás,</i> | thou shalt fall, | or wilt fall. |
| <i>El caerá,</i> | he shall fall, | or will fall. |
| <i>Nosotros caerémos,</i> | we shall fall, | or will fall. |
| <i>Vosotros caeréis,</i> | you shall fall, | or will fall. |
| <i>Ellos caerán,</i> | they shall fall, | or will fall. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Yo cayere,</i> | <i>tú cayeres,</i> | <i>él cayere,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros cayéremos,</i> | <i>vosotros cayéreis,</i> | <i>ellos cayeren.</i> |

CONDITIONAL MOOD

| | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo caería,</i> | I should fall, | or would fall. |
| <i>Tú caerías,</i> | thou shouldst fall, | or wouldst fall. |
| <i>El caería,</i> | he should fall, | or would fall. |
| <i>Nosotros caeríamos,</i> | we should fall, | or would fall. |
| <i>Vosotros caeríais,</i> | you should fall, | or would fall. |
| <i>Ellos caerían,</i> | they should fall, | or would fall. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Cae, fall (thou).

Caed, fall (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Que yo caiga,</i> | that I may fall. |
| <i>Que tú caigas,</i> | that thou mayst fall. |
| <i>Que él caiga,</i> | that he may fall. |
| <i>Que nosotros caigamos,</i> | that we may fall. |
| <i>Que vosotros caigáis,</i> | that you may fall. |
| <i>Que ellos caigan,</i> | that they may fall. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo cayera,</i> | or <i>cayese,</i> | that I might fall. |
| <i>Que tú cayeras,</i> | or <i>cayeses,</i> | that thou mightst fall. |
| <i>Que él cayera,</i> | or <i>cayese,</i> | that he might fall. |
| <i>Que nosotros cayéramos,</i> | or <i>cayésemos,</i> | that we might fall. |
| <i>Que vosotros cayérais,</i> | or <i>cayéisais,</i> | that you might fall. |
| <i>Que ellos cayeran,</i> | or <i>cayesen,</i> | that they might fall. |

271. Thus are conjugated *decaer*, to decay; *recuar*, to recede, etc.

Había, had

272. The regular endings of the imperfect of the indicative are:

For the verbs in *ar*,

aba, *abas*, *aba*, *ábamos*, *ábais*, *aban*.

And for those in *er* and *ir*,

ía, *ías*, *ía*, *íamos*, *íais*, *ían*.

EXAMPLES :

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Hablaba,</i> | } I spoke, or was speaking. | <i>Vendia,</i> | } I sold, or was selling. | <i>Unia,</i> | } I united, or was uniting. |
| <i>Hablabas,</i> | | <i>Vendias,</i> | | <i>Unias,</i> | |
| <i>Hablaba,</i> | | <i>Vendia,</i> | | <i>Unia,</i> | |
| <i>Hablábamos,</i> | | <i>Vendíamos,</i> | | <i>Uníamos,</i> | |
| <i>Hablábais,</i> | | <i>Vendíais,</i> | | <i>Uníais,</i> | |
| <i>Hablaban,</i> | | <i>Vendían,</i> | | <i>Unían.</i> | |

273. These terminations are added to the root of the verb and take the place of the infinitive endings, **ar, er, ir.**

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Ex. <i>Hablar,</i> to speak. | <i>Hablaba,</i> I spoke, or was speaking. |
| <i>Vender,</i> to sell. | <i>Vendia,</i> I sold, or was selling. |
| <i>Unir,</i> to unite. | <i>Unia,</i> I united, or was uniting. |

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

The imperfect should not be confounded with the past tense definite. See Rule 225.

Todo esto, all this.

274. **Esto** is what is commonly called the neuter form of **este, esta,** already seen.*

Esto is used instead of **este** when the noun to which it refers is not expressed nor clearly indicated by the context of the sentence in which this occurs in English.

Alarmó al conde, alarmed the count.

Alarmar, to alarm, is followed by **á,** in accordance with Rule 140.

Pillar á la gitana, to seize the gypsy.

Pillar is also followed by **á,** in accordance with Rule 140.

Al otro día.

275. *Al otro día* is an idiomatic expression, which corresponds to *on the next day.*

* See note † on page 4.

Para escarmiento, as a warning.

276. The following model sentences will best illustrate the most important uses of *para*.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>¿Trajiste un vestido para mi?</i> | Have you brought a dress for me? |
| <i>Salió para Nueva York,</i> | He started for New York. |
| <i>Le doy dinero para comprar libros,</i> | I give him money to buy books. |
| <i>Es bueno para comer,</i> | It is good to eat. |
| <i>Estoy para escribir,</i> | I am on the point of writing. |
| <i>Lo reservo para la semana entrante,</i> | I reserve it for the coming week. |
| <i>Para decir verdad no he almorzado,</i> | To tell the truth, I have not breakfasted. |
| <i>Leyó la carta para sí,</i> | He read the letter to himself. |
| <i>Para un escritor mediano se hallan cien detestables,</i> | To one pretty good writer there are a hundred bad ones. |
| <i>No es hermosa para lo que la alaban,</i> | She is not as beautiful as she is said to be. |
| <i>No debe haber reserva para con los amigos,</i> | We must not be reserved with friends. |

Eso, this or that.

277. **Eso** is the neuter form of **ese**, another equivalent of **this** and **that**. In Spanish, **ese** is properly to be applied only to objects near the person spoken to, or which happen to be the immediate subject of conversation, but in familiar intercourse it is often used indifferently for **este** and **aquel**. Its feminine is **esa**; its plural masculine **esos**, and its plural feminine **esas** **these** or **those**.

Pero á guiarse por mis consejos,
but to be guided by my advice.

The pronominal form is used here instead of the passive, in accordance with Rule 9.

Hubiera, might have.

278. The regular endings of the subjunctive past are :

For the verbs in *ar*,

ara, aras, ara, áramos, árais, aran.

And for those in *er* and *ir*,

iera, ieras, iera, iéramos, iérais, ieran.

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Hablara,</i> | } That I might speak. | <i>Vendiera,</i> | } That I might sell. | <i>Uniera,</i> | } That I might unite. |
| <i>Hablaras,</i> | | <i>Vendieras,</i> | | <i>Unieras,</i> | |
| <i>Hablara,</i> | | <i>Vendiera,</i> | | <i>Uniera,</i> | |
| <i>Habláramos,</i> | | <i>Vendiéramos,</i> | | <i>Uniéramos,</i> | |
| <i>Hablárais,</i> | | <i>Vendiérais,</i> | | <i>Uniérais,</i> | |
| <i>Hablaran,</i> | | <i>Vendieran,</i> | | <i>Unieran,</i> | |

279. These terminations are generally added to the root of the verb, and take the place of the endings of the infinitive *ar*, *er*, and *ir*.

Ex. *Hablar*, to speak. *Hablara*, that I might speak.
Vender, to sell. *Vendiera*, that I might sell.
Unir, to unite. *Uniera*, that I might unite.

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

280. As the use of the subjunctive past, instead of the conditional, is sometimes obligatory and always allowable, it is one of the most important tenses. See Rule 263.

281. The regular endings of the 2d form of the subjunctive past are :

For the verbs in *ar*,

ase, ases, ase, ásemos, áseis, asen.

And for those in *er* and *ir*,

iese, ieses, iese, iésemos, iéseis, iesen.

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Hab'ase,</i> | } That I might speak. | <i>Vendiese,</i> | } That I might sell. | <i>Uniese,</i> | } That I might unite. |
| <i>Hablases,</i> | | <i>Vendieses,</i> | | <i>Unieses,</i> | |
| <i>Hablase,</i> | | <i>Vendiese,</i> | | <i>Uniese,</i> | |
| <i>Hablásemos,</i> | | <i>Vendiésemos,</i> | | <i>Uniésemos,</i> | |
| <i>Habláseis,</i> | | <i>Vendiéseis,</i> | | <i>Uniéseis,</i> | |
| <i>Hblasen,</i> | | <i>Vendiesen,</i> | | <i>Uniesen,</i> | |

232. These terminations are generally added to the root of the verb, and take the place of the endings of the infinitive **ar** or **ir**.

Ex. *Hablar*, to speak. *Hablassé*, that I might speak.
Vender, to sell. *Vendiese*, that I might sell.
Unir, to unite. *Uniese*, that I might unite.

253. This form in **ase** and **iese** is especially used for the sake of euphony, when that of the conditional in **ia**, or of the 1st subjunctive past in **ara** or **iera**, has already been introduced in the sentence. If **ase** or **iese** is put in the first part of a preposition, **ara** or **iera** should follow in the second.

EXAMPLES:

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Si V. me lo dictase lo escribiera,</i> | If you would dictate it to me, I would write it. |
| <i>Ojalá fuese, or fuera cierto,</i> | I wish it were true. |
| <i>Bueno seria, or fuera que lo mandasen,</i> | It would be well if they would order it. |
| <i>Si V. trabajara, or trabajase ganaria dinero,</i> | If you would work you would get money. |

Daba gusto verle, gave pleasure to see him.

284. Though *to* before an infinitive is generally translated by *de* after a noun, it is often left out after *gusto*.

Recien, recently.

285. *Recien* is used instead of *recientemente* before a participle.

Achicharrar, to char; *alarmar*, to alarm; *engordar*, to grow fat; *guiar*, to guide; *llorar*, to cry; *pillar*, to catch; *quemar* to burn; and *tostar*, to toast, are regular verbs of the 1st conjugation : and *arrepentirse*, to repent, is of the third.

Hechizar, to enchant, goes like *rechazar* (187); *entender*, to hear, like *perder* (138). *Desaparecer*, to disappear; and *enflaquecer*, to grow thin, like *compadecer* (187). *Apagar*, to extinguish, like *pagar* (180); and *buscar*, to look for, like *aplicar* (145).

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I called, 272, 273. | 16. That I might call, 278, 279 |
| 2. He called. | 17. That he might call. |
| 3. We called. | 18. That we might call. |
| 4. You called. | 19. That you might call. |
| 5. They called. | 20. That they might call. |
| 6. I drank. | 21. That I might drink. |
| 7. He drank. | 22. That he might drink. |
| 8. We drank. | 23. That we might drink. |
| 9. You drank. | 24. That you might drink. |
| 10. They drank. | 25. That they might drink. |
| 11. I lived. | 26. That I might live. |
| 12. He lived. | 27. That he might live. |
| 13. We lived. | 28. That we might live. |
| 14. You lived. | 29. That you might live. |
| 15. They lived. | 30. That they might live. |
31. It decays, 271.—32. We decay, 271.—33. It will decay, 271.—34. It would decay, 271.—35. They decay, 271.—36. Decaying, 271.—37. We will begin to work, 268.—38. Have you bought a pair of shoes for your brother? 276.—39. When do you intend to go south?—40. To-morrow.—41. Why do you give him money?—42. To buy a copy-book, 276.—43. Have you any thing good to eat? 276.—44. We have fish, chicken, and vegetables.—45. What are you doing?—46. I am on the point of going to my uncle's house, 276.—47. To tell you the truth, I was not at school yesterday, 270.—48. I shall be very glad to see you any time.—49. If you would tell it to me I would know it, 283.—50. If I had a new book, I would study better, 283.—51. If he would study well, he would soon know Spanish, 283.—52. He has come recently, 285.—53. This has been seen recently, 285.—54. He relented.—55. I heard.—56. It disappeared.—57. We grew thin.—58. You extinguished.—59. They looked for.—60. Alarming.—61. Alarmed.—62. I repent.—63. I shall repent.

TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion vigésima octava.

Lesson twenty eighth.

De la Ciudad de Sevilla, de Mariana.

Of the City of Seville, by Mariana.

En lo postrero de España, hacia el
In the extreme of Spain, towards the
poniente, está asentada Sevilla, cabeza de
setting, is situated Seville, capital of
Andalucía, noble y rica ciudad, entre las
Andalusia, noble and rich city, among the
primeras de Europa, fuerte por las mura-
first of Europe, strong by the walls,
llas, por las armas y gente que tiene. Los
by the arms and people which it has. The
edificios, públicos y particulares, á manera
edifices, public and private, after the fashion
de casas reales, son en gran número; los
of houses royal, are in great number; the
ciudadanos son hermosos, y se traen
citizens are handsome, and themselves dress
muy bien. Entre la ciudad, que está á
very well. Between the city, which is on the
mano izquierda, y un arrabal llamado
hand left, and a suburb called
Triana, pasa el río Guadalquivir, acanalado
Triana, passes the river Guadalquivir, channelled

con grandes reparos, y de hondo bastante
with great repairs, and of depth enough

para naves gruesas, y por la misma razon
for vessels bulky, and for the same reason

muy á proposito para la contratacion y
very fit for the trade and

comercio de los dos mares—Océano y
commerce of the two seas, Ocean and

Mediterraneo. Con un puente de madera
Mediterranean. With a bridge of wood

fundada sobre barcas, se junta el arrabal
resting upon barges, itself joins the suburb

con la ciudad, y se pasa de una parte
with the city, and one passes from one part

á otra. En la ciudad está la casa real
to other. In the city is the house royal

en que los antiguos reyes moraban, en el
in which the ancient kings dwelled, in the

arrabal un alcázar de obra muy firme,
suburb a castle of work very firm,

que mira al nacimiento del sol.
which looks to the rising of the sun.

The same in good English.

**DE LA CIUDAD DE SEVILLA, DE
MARIANA.**

En lo postrero de España, hacia el poniente, está asentada Sevilla, cabeza de Andalucía, noble y rica ciudad, entre las primeras de Europa, fuerte por las murallas, por las armas y gente que tiene. Los edificios, públicos y

**THE CITY OF SEVILLE, BY
MARIANA.**

Seville, the capital of Andalusia, is in the southwestern part of Spain. It is a noble and wealthy city, one of the finest in Europe, fully fortified, and filled with splendid public and private buildings. Its in-

particulares, á manera de casas reales, son en gran número; los ciudadanos son hermosos, y se traen muy bien. Entre la ciudad, que está á mano izquierda, y un arrabal llamado Triana, pasa el rio Guadalquivir, acanalado con grandes reparos, y de hondo bastante para naves gruesas, y por la misma razon muy á proposito para la contratacion y comercio de los dos mares—Océano y Mediterraneo. Con un puente de madera fundada sobre barcas, se junta el arrabal con la ciudad, y se pasa de una parte á otra. En la ciudad está la casa real en que los antiguos reyes moraban, en el arrabal un alcázar de obra muy firme, que mira al nacimiento del sol.

habitants are a fine-looking and well-dressed people.

Between the city, on the left bank, and a suburb called Triana, flows the Guadalquivir, which is kept in good order, and sufficiently deep to admit the largest ships, making it an excellent channel for the trade between the Mediterranean sea and the Atlantic ocean.

A wooden bridge, resting upon barges, joins this suburb to the main city, where may still be seen the royal palace in which dwelled the ancient Moorish kings; and in the suburb there is a strongly built castle, looking to the east.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

- ¿ Que leccion es esta ?
- ¿ De que se habla en esta leccion ?
- ¿ Donde está asentada Sevilla ?
- ¿ Que es Sevilla ?
- ¿ Es una ciudad rica ?
- ¿ Es una ciudad fuerte ?
- ¿ Cuales edificios son en gran número ?
- ¿ Que son los ciudadanos y como se traen ?
- ¿ Dende pasa el rio Guadalquivir ?
- ¿ A cual lado del rio está la ciudad ?
- ¿ Con que está acanalado este rio ?

- La vigésima octava.
- De la ciudad de Sevilla.
- En lo postrero de España hacia el poniente.
- La cabeza de Andalucía.
- Es noble y rica, entre las primeras de Europa.
- Es fuerte por las murallas, por las armas y gente que tiene.
- Los edificios, públicos y particulares, á manera de casas reales.
- Los ciudadanos son hermosos, y se traen muy bien.
- Entre la ciudad y un arrabal llamado Triana.
- A mano izquierda.
- Con grandes reparos.

| | |
|--|---|
| ¿Para que es muy á proposito? | Para la contratacion y comercio de los dos mares. |
| ¿Como se llaman estos dos mares? | El Océano y el Mediterraneo. |
| ¿Como se junta el arrabal con la ciudad? | Con un puente de madera fundada sobre barcas. |
| ¿Cual casa está en la ciudad? | La casa real en que los antiguos reyes moraban. |
| ¿Cual edificio hay en el arrabal? | Un alcázar de obra muy firme. |
| ¿Adonde mira este alcázar? | Al nacimiento del sol. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Un rio.
 Un arrabal.
 Un alcázar.
 Una muralla.
 Un puente firme.
 Un edificio público.
 Una casa particular.
 Una barca fuerte.
 El nacimiento del sol.
 El poniente del sol.
 Hasta ahora.
 Contra V.
 Entre nosotros.

¿Como se llamaron Gibraltar y el promontorio de la costa opuesta, en los tiempos antiguos?

Las Columnas de Hercules.

Quienes les habian dado este nombre?

Los Fenicios.

Quales pueblos vinieron despues de los Fenicios?

Los Griegos, que establecieron algunas colonias.

¿En que año vinieron los Romanos?

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

A river.
 A suburb.
 A castle.
 A wall.
 A firm bridge.
 A public edifice.
 A private house.
 A strong boat.
 Sunrise.
 Sunset.
 Until now.
 Against you.
 Between us.

What was the ancient name of Gibraltar and the promontory on the African coast opposite?

The Columns of Hercules.

Who gave them this name?

The Phœnicians.

What people came after the Phœnicians?

The Greeks, who established a few colonies.

In what year did the Romans come?

| | |
|---|---|
| En el año ciento treinta y cuatro antes de Jesu-Cristo. | In the year 184 before Jesus Christ. |
| ¿Hasta cuando ocuparon la Es- paña los Romanos? | Until what year did the Romans occupy Spain? |
| Hasta el año cuatrocientos y seis. después de Jesu-Cristo. | Until the year 406 after Jesus Christ. |
| ¿Quales pueblos vinieron en- tonces? | What people came after? |
| Unos pueblos bárbaros del norte de Alemania, llamados los Godos. | Some barbarian tribes from Ger- many, called the Goths. |
| ¿Cuántos años estuvieron ellos en España? | How long did they remain in Spain? |
| Poco mas ó ménos de doscientos años. | About two hundred years. |
| ¿Quien se hizo entonces rey de España? | Who was then king in Spain? |
| Un cierto Rodrigo, el primero y último rey de su nombre. | One Rodrigo, the first and last king of that name. |
| Hizo muchas injusticias á un conde Juliano, uno de los mas poderosos caballeros de su reino. | He was very unjust to a Count Julian, one of the most power- ful noblemen of his kingdom. |
| El conde Juliano se fué á Africa. Convidó los Moros á venir á Es- paña. | Count Julian went over to Africa. He invited the Moors to come over to Spain. |
| Ellos se hicieron los dueños del pais. | They became the masters of the country. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

El poniente, the setting.

286. *Del sol*, of the sun, is here understood. *Poniente* is the participial adjective from *poner*. See Rule 248.

287. *Traerse*, used here in the sense of *to dress one's self*, is the pronominal form of *traer*, meaning, literally, *to carry, to fetch, to bring*, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows:

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Traer, to fetch.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Trayendo, fetching.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Traído, fetched.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo traigo</i> , | I fetch, | or do fetch. |
| <i>Tú traes</i> , | thou fetchest, | or dost fetch. |
| <i>El trae</i> , | he fetches, | or does fetch. |
| <i>Nosotros traemos</i> , | we fetch, | or do fetch. |
| <i>Vosotros traeis</i> , | you fetch, | or do fetch. |
| <i>Ellos traen</i> , | they fetch, | or do fetch. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| <i>Yo traía</i> , | I fetched, | or used to fetch. |
| <i>Tú traías</i> , | thou fetchedst, | or usedst to fetch. |
| <i>El traía</i> , | he fetched, | or used to fetch. |
| <i>Nosotros tratamos</i> , | we fetched, | or used to fetch. |
| <i>Vosotros tratáis</i> , | you fetched, | or used to fetch. |
| <i>Ellos traían</i> , | they fetched, | or used to fetch. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo traje</i> , | I fetched, | or did fetch. |
| <i>Tú trajiste</i> , | thou fetchedst, | or didst fetch. |
| <i>El trajo</i> , | he fetched, | or did fetch. |
| <i>Nosotros trajimos</i> , | we fetched, | or did fetch. |
| <i>Vosotros trajisteis</i> , | you fetched, | or did fetch. |
| <i>Ellos trajeron</i> , | they fetched, | or did fetch. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Yo traeré</i> , | I shall fetch, | or will fetch. |
| <i>Tú traerás</i> , | thou shalt fetch, | or wilt fetch. |
| <i>El traerá</i> , | he shall fetch, | or will fetch. |
| <i>Nosotros traeremos</i> , | we shall fetch, | or will fetch. |
| <i>Vosotros traeréis</i> , | you shall fetch, | or will fetch. |
| <i>Ellos traerán</i> , | they shall fetch, | or will fetch. |

* The second future is (see note on page 25) :

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Yo trajere</i> , | <i>tú trajeres</i> , | <i>él trajere</i> , |
| <i>Nosotros trajéremos</i> , | <i>vosotros trajéreis</i> , | <i>ellos trajeren</i> . |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo traeria,</i> | I should fetch, | or would fetch. |
| <i>Tú traerias,</i> | thou shouldst fetch, | or wouldst fetch. |
| <i>El traeria,</i> | he should fetch, | or would fetch. |
| <i>Nosotros traeriamos,</i> | we should fetch, | or would fetch. |
| <i>Vosotros traeriais,</i> | you should fetch, | or would fetch. |
| <i>Ellos traerian,</i> | they should fetch, | or would fetch. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Trae, fetch (thou).

Traed, fetch (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo traiga,</i> | that I may fetch. |
| <i>Que tú traigas,</i> | that thou mayst fetch. |
| <i>Que él traiga,</i> | that he may fetch. |
| <i>Que nosotros traigamos,</i> | that we may fetch. |
| <i>Que vosotros traigais,</i> | that you may fetch. |
| <i>Que ellos traigan,</i> | that they may fetch. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Que yo trajera,</i> | or <i>trajese,</i> | that I might fetch. |
| <i>Que tú trajeras,</i> | or <i>trajeses,</i> | that thou mightst fetch |
| <i>Que él trajera,</i> | or <i>trajese,</i> | that he might fetch. |
| <i>Que nosotros trajéramos,</i> | or <i>trajésemos,</i> | that we might fetch. |
| <i>Que vosotros trajerais,</i> | or <i>trajéseis,</i> | that you might fetch. |
| <i>Que ellos trajeran,</i> | or <i>trajesen,</i> | that they might fetch. |

288. Thus are conjugated *atraer*, to attract; *detraer*, to detract *contraer*, to contract; *subtraer*, to subtract, etc.

Océano y Mediterraneo.

the ocean and the Mediterranean.

Although the proper use of the article **THE** can be acquired only by diligent observation and careful reading of well-written works, the following additional rules and model sentences will, however, serve to prevent any gross errors.

289. The definite article **THE** is prefixed to all common nouns in Spanish, when they are used to express the whole extent of their signification, provided **SOME** or **ANY** cannot be added before them, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence, and that they are not preceded by another determinative word,* or adjective indicative of quantity,† or the particles, **de**, *of* or *from*; **con**, *with*; **sin**, *without*; **ni**, *neither, nor*; or **por**, *by*.

| | |
|---|-------------------------|
| Ex. <i>La sabiduría es útil,</i> | Wisdom is useful. |
| <i>Todos los hombres,</i> | All men. |
| <i>Lo negro y lo blanco,</i> | Black and white. |
| <i>En la calle de la Perla,</i> | In Pearl-street. |
| <i>Su hermosura,</i> | His beauty. |
| <i>Esta ciudad,</i> | This city. |
| <i>Un monton de piedras,</i> | A heap of stones. |
| <i>Con gusto,</i> | With taste. |
| <i>Sin fortuna,</i> | Without luck. |
| <i>Ni pan ni vino,</i> | Neither bread nor wine. |
| <i>Tanto por mes,</i> | So much a month. |
| <i>Tanto por vara,</i> | So much a yard. |
| <i>Tanto por libra,</i> | So much a pound. |

290. The definite article is also used before titles, and then politeness requires often the addition of *señor*, *señora*, or *señorita*.

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| Ex. King Charles, | <i>El Rey Carlos.</i> |
| Captain A., | <i>El Capitan A.</i> |
| Doctor B., | <i>El Señor Doctor B.</i> |

291. But the definite article is dropped before the ordinal numbers in sentences like the following.

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Libro primero,</i> | Book the first. |
| <i>Capítulo segundo,</i> | Chapter the second. |
| <i>Carlos quinto,</i> | Charles the Fifth. |

* The determinative words are: *the, a or an, some, any, my, thy, his, her, our, your, their, this, that, these, those, which, what, each, every, several, a few,* and the numerals *one, two, three,* etc.

† The adjectives indicative of quantity are: *much, many, little, less, least, few, fewer, fewest, more, most too much, too many, how much, how many, as much, as many, enough,* etc.

Gente, race, is feminine by exception.

Acanalar to channel; *fundar*, to found; *juntar*, to join; *mirar*, to look at; and *morar*, to dwell, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Asentar*, to place, goes like *quebrar* (138).

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I subtract, 288. | 16. I should subtract, 288 |
| 2. He subtracts. | 17. He should subtract. |
| 3. We subtract. | 18. We should subtract. |
| 4. You subtract. | 19. You should subtract. |
| 5. They subtract. | 20. They should subtract |
| 6. I subtracted. | 21. I have subtracted. |
| 7. He subtracted. | 22. He has subtracted. |
| 8. We subtracted. | 23. We have subtracted. |
| 9. You subtracted. | 24. You have subtracted. |
| 10. They subtracted. | 25. They have subtracted. |
| 11. I shall subtract. | 26. I had subtracted. |
| 12. He shall subtract. | 27. I shall have subtracted. |
| 13. We shall subtract. | 28. I should have subtracted. |
| 14. You shall subtract. | 29. That I may subtract. |
| 15. They shall subtract. | 30. That I might subtract. |

31. History is the mother of all sciences, 289.—32. Horses are useful animals, 289.—33. A horse is a useful animal, 289.—34. Which are the four seasons?—35. Winter, spring, summer, and fall, 289.—36. Where do you live?—37. I live in White-street, 289.—38. How much money do you receive a month?—39. Two hundred dollars, 289.—40. How much is this silk a yard? 289.—41. One dollar and a half, 289.—42. What do you pay for sugar a pound? 289.—43. Ten cents a pound, 289.—44. Queen Elizabeth, of England, 290.—45. Admiral Drake, 290.—46. Book the sixth, 291.—47. Chapter seventh, 291.—48. Alonzo the Eighth, 291.—49. January the ninth, 1861, 89.—50. February the tenth.—51. March the eleventh.—52. April the twelfth.—53. May the thirteenth.—54. June the fourteenth.—55. July the fifteenth.—56. August the sixteenth.

TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion vigésima nona.

Lesson twenty ninth.

De la Ciudad de Sevilla, de Mariana,

Of the City of Seville, by Mariana,

continuado.

continued.

Segunda parte.

Second parte.

Una torre está levantada cerca del rio,

A tower is raised near of the river,

que por su primor llaman de Oro vulgar-

which for its beauty they call of Gold vulgarly.

mente. Otra torre edificada de ladrillo,

Other tower built of brick,

que está cerca de la iglesia mayor, sobre-

which is near of the church greater, surpasses

puja la grandeza de las demas obras, por

the grandeur of the remaining works, for

ser de sesenta varas en ancho y cuatro

being of sixty yards in width and four

tanto mas alta, sobre la cual se levanta

as much more high, upon the which itself rises

otra torre menor, pero de bastante

other tower smaller, but of enough

grandeza, que al presente de nuevo

grandeur, which at present anew

está toda blanqueada, y al rededor

is quite whitened, and at the around

adornada de variedad de pinturas her-
 adorned of variety of pictures beautiful
mosas á maravilla á los que la miran.
 to marvel to those who it look at.

¿ Que necesidad hay de relatar por menu-
 What necessity is there to- relate minutely

do todas las cosas y grandezas de esta
 all the things and grandeurs of this

ciudad, tan vasta y llena de primores y
 city, so vast and full of beauties and

grandezas? Hay en la ciudad en este
 grandeurs? There are in the city in this

tiempo mas de veinte y cuatro mil vecinos,
 time more than twenty and four thousand neighbors,

divididos en veinte y ocho parroquias é
 divided in twenty and eight parishes or

colaciones. La primera y principal es de
 precincts. The first and principal is of

Santa-María, que es la iglesia mayor, con
 St. Mary, which is the church greatest, with

el cual templo, en anchura de edificio y
 the which temple, in width of edifice and

en grandeza, ninguno de toda España se
 in grandeur, none of all Spain itself

igual. Vulgarmente se dice de las
 equals. Vulgarly itself it says of the

iglesias de Castilla: La de Toledo la rica;
 churches of Castile: The one of Toledo, the rich:

la de Salamanca la fuerte; la de Leon
 the one of Salamanca, the strong; the one of Leon,

la bella; la de Sevilla la grande.
 the beautiful; the one of Seville, the great.

The same in good English.

DE LA CIUDAD DE SEVILLA, DE
MARIANA, CONTINUADO.

SEGUNDA PARTE.

Una torre está levantada cerca del río, que por su primor llaman de Oro vulgarmente. Otra torre edificada de ladrillo, que está cerca de la iglesia mayor, sobrepuja la grandeza de las demás obras, por ser de sesenta varas en ancho y cuatro tanto más alta, sobre la cual se levanta otra torre menor, pero de bastante grandeza, que al presente de nuevo está toda blanqueada, y al rededor adornada de variedad de pinturas hermosas á maravilla á los que la miran.

¿Que necesidad hay de relatar por menudo todas las cosas y grandezas de esta ciudad, tan vasta y llena de primores y grandezas? Hay en la ciudad en este tiempo más de veinte y cuatro mil vecinos, divididos en veinte y ocho parroquias ó colaciones. La primera y principal es de Santa-María, que es la iglesia mayor, con el cual templo, en anchura de edificio y en grandeza, ninguno de toda España se iguala. Vulgarmente se dice de las iglesias de Castilla: La de Toledo la rica; la de Salamanca la fuerte; la de León la bella; la de Sevilla la grande.

THE CITY OF SEVILLE, BY
MARIANA, CONTINUED.

SECOND PART.

Near the river rises a tower commonly called of Gold, on account of the glittering stone of which it is constructed; but another tower, built of brick, which is near the cathedral, surpasses all other edifices in size, being one hundred and eighty feet wide, one hundred and ninety-two feet high, and surmounted by another column of smaller dimensions, though sufficiently imposing, which has recently been refreshed and adorned all round with admirable paintings.

It is useless, however, to rehearse here minutely all the remarkable things of this beautiful city, which has now over twenty-four thousand inhabitants, divided into twenty-eight parishes. Its principal church is St. Mary, which is also the largest religious temple in Spain.

Speaking of the Castilian churches, that of Toledo has been surnamed the rich; that of Salamanca, the strong; that of León, the beautiful; and that of Seville, the great.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que lección es esta?

¿Que está cerca del río?

La vigésima nona.

Una torre está levantada cerca del río.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿ Como llaman vulgarmente esta torre ? | La llaman de Oro. |
| ¿ Porqué ? | Por su primor. |
| ¿ Cual otra torre hay allí ? | Otra torre edificada de adrílo. |
| ¿ Donde está ? | Cerca de la iglesia mayor. |
| ¿ Que sobrepuja ? | La grandeza de las demas obras |
| ¿ Porqué ? | Por ser de sesenta varas en ancho y cuatro tanto mas alta. |
| ¿ Que se levanta sobre ella ? | Otra torre menor, pero de bastante grandeza. |
| ¿ Que han hecho con esta torre al presente ? | La han blanqueado toda de nuevo, y adornado al rededor. |
| ¿ De que ? | De variedad de pinturas hermosas á maravilla á los que la miran. |
| ¿ Que no necesitamos relatar por menudo ? | Todas las cosas y grandezas de esta ciudad. |
| ¿ Cuantos habitantes tiene en este tiempo ? | Mas de veinte y cuatro mil vecinos. |
| ¿ Como estan divididos ? | En veinte y ocho parroquias y colaciones. |
| ¿ Cual es la primera y principal ? | La de Santa-María que es la iglesia mayor. |
| ¿ Se iguala con este templo algun otro de España ? | Ninguno de toda España se le iguala en anchura de edificio y en grandeza. |
| ¿ Que se dice vulgarmente de las iglesias de Castilla ? | La de Toledo la rica, la de Salamanca la fuerte, la de Leon la bella, y la de Sevilla la grande. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Una torre.
Un ladrillo.
Un templo.
Una iglesia.
Una variedad.
Nuestra parroquia.
Algunas varas.
La anchura.
La altura.
Levantarse.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

A tower.
A brick.
A temple.
A church.
A variety.
Our parish.
A few yards.
The width.
The height.
To rise.

Sobrepasar.

Adornar.

Dividir.

Igualar.

¿Que clase de pueblos eran los Moros?

Unos pueblos muy industrioses y civilizados.

¿Cultivaron los artes?

Si, señor, especialmente la arquitectura, música y poesía.

¿Han construido muchas ciudades?

Han construido Córdoba, Granada, Sevilla y otras.

¿Que gran palacio han edificado en Granada?

La Alhambra, el palacio de los soberanos moros.

¿Quien fué el mas famoso rey moro?

El rey Almanzor.

¿Cuántas batallas ha ganado á los Españoles?

Mas de cincuenta.

¿Quien fué el mas grande guerrero de los Españoles?

Don Rodrigo de Vivar, llamado el Cid Campeador.

¿Que significan estas últimas palabras?

El incomparable señor ó maestro.

¿Cuando entraron los Moros en España.

En el año setecientos y doce despues de Jesu-Cristo.

¿De cual parte de Africa vinieron?

De Mauritania.

¿Como se llama ahora Mauritania?

El Imperio de Marruecos.

To surpass.

To adorn.

To divide.

To equal.

What kind of people were the Moors?

A very industrious and civilized people.

Did they cultivate the arts?

Yes, sir, especially architecture, music, and poetry.

Have they built many cities?

They built Cordova, Granada, Seville, and others.

What great palace did they build in Granada?

The Alhambra, the palace of the Moorish sovereigns.

Who was the most famous Moorish king?

King Almanzor.

How many battles did he gain over the Spaniards?

More than fifty.

Who was the greatest warrior among the Spaniards?

Don Rodrigo de Vivar, called the Cid Campeador.

What do these last words mean?

The incomparable lord or master.

When did the Moors come into Spain?

In the year 712 after Jesus Christ.

From what part of Africa did they come?

From Mauritania.

How is Mauritania now called?

The Empire of Morocco.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

De sesenta varas en ancho, sixty yards wide.

292. The following model sentences may serve as a guide to the most usual ways of expressing dimensions in Spanish.

Una torre de sesenta varas de anchura, A tower of sixty yards o. height.

Una torre ancha de sesenta varas, A tower high of sixty yards.

Una torre que tenia sesenta varas de anchura, A tower which had sixty yards of height.

Una torre que tenia una anchura de sesenta varas, A tower which had a height of sixty yards.

Mas alto que V. de toda la cabeza, Taller than you by the whole head.

Mas, more.

293. There are a few adverbs which form their comparative and superlative irregularly. They are:

| | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Bien</i> , well. | <i>Mejor</i> , better. | <i>Lo mejor</i> , the best. |
| <i>Mal</i> , badly. | <i>Peor</i> , worse. | <i>Lo peor</i> , the worst. |
| <i>Poco</i> , little. | <i>Ménos</i> , less. | <i>Lo ménos</i> , the least. |
| <i>Mucho</i> , much. | <i>Mas</i> , more. | <i>Lo mas</i> , the most. |

Se dice, it is said, from *decir*, to say.

294. *Decir*, to say, to tell, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows:

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Decir, to say.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Diciendo, saying.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Dicho, said.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo digo</i> , | I say, | or do say. |
| <i>Tú dices</i> , | thou sayest, | or dost say. |
| <i>El dice</i> , | he says, | or does say |
| <i>Nosotros decimos</i> , | we say, | or do say. |
| <i>Vosotros decis</i> , | you say, | or do say. |
| <i>Ellos dicen</i> , | they say, | or do say. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo decia,</i> | I said, | or used to say. |
| <i>Tú decias,</i> | thou saidst, | or usedst to say. |
| <i>El decia,</i> | he said, | or used to say. |
| <i>Nosotros decíamos,</i> | we said, | or used to say. |
| <i>Vosotros decíais,</i> | you said, | or used to say. |
| <i>Ellos decían,</i> | they said, | or used to say. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Yo dije,</i> | I said, | or did say. |
| <i>Tú dijiste,</i> | thou saidst, | or didst say. |
| <i>El dijo,</i> | he said, | or did say. |
| <i>Nosotros dijimos,</i> | we said, | or did say. |
| <i>Vosotros dijisteis,</i> | you said, | or did say. |
| <i>Ellos dijeron,</i> | they said, | or did say. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| <i>Yo diré,</i> | I shall say, | or will say. |
| <i>Tú dirás,</i> | thou shalt say, | or wilt say. |
| <i>El dirá,</i> | he shall say, | or will say. |
| <i>Nosotros diremos,</i> | we shall say, | or will say. |
| <i>Vosotros diréis,</i> | you shall say, | or will say. |
| <i>Ellos dirán,</i> | they shall say, | or will say. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo diría,</i> | I should say, | or would say. |
| <i>Tú dirías,</i> | thou shouldst say, | or wouldst say. |
| <i>El diría,</i> | he should say, | or would say. |
| <i>Nosotros diríamos,</i> | we should say, | or would say. |
| <i>Vosotros diríais,</i> | you should say, | or would say. |
| <i>Ellos dirían,</i> | they should say, | or would say. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Di, say (thou).

Decid, say (you).

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Yo dijere,</i> | <i>tú dijeres,</i> | <i>él dijere,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros dijéremos</i> | <i>vosotros dijéreis,</i> | <i>ellos dijeren.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Que yo diga,</i> | that I may say. |
| <i>Que tú digas,</i> | that thou mayst say. |
| <i>Que él diga,</i> | that he may say. |
| <i>Que nosotros digamos,</i> | that we may say. |
| <i>Que vosotros digais,</i> | that you may say. |
| <i>Que ellos digan,</i> | that they may say. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Que yo dijera,</i> | or <i>dijese,</i> | that I might say. |
| <i>Que tú dijeras,</i> | or <i>dijeses,</i> | that thou mightst say. |
| <i>Que él dijera,</i> | or <i>dijese,</i> | that he might say. |
| <i>Que nosotros dijéramos,</i> | or <i>dijésemos,</i> | that we might say. |
| <i>Que vosotros dijerais,</i> | or <i>dijéseis,</i> | that you might say. |
| <i>Que ellos dijeran,</i> | or <i>dijesen,</i> | that they might say. |

295. *Contradecir*, to contradict; *desdecirse*, to retract; and *prededir*, to foretell, are conjugated like *decir*, except in the second person singular of the imperative, which is *contradice*, *desdícete*, and *predice*.

La fuerte, the strong.

296. There are a few adjectives whose second superlative is formed irregularly. They are :

| | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Nuevo</i> , new. | <i>Novísimo</i> , very new. |
| <i>Fuerte</i> , strong. | <i>Fortísimo</i> , very strong. |
| <i>Sabio</i> , wise. | <i>Sapientísimo</i> , very wise. |
| <i>Sagrado</i> , sacred. | <i>Sacratísimo</i> , very sacred. |
| <i>Fiel</i> , faithful. | <i>Fidelísimo</i> , very faithful. |
| <i>Integro</i> , honest. | <i>Integérrimo</i> , very honest. |
| <i>Salubre</i> , healthy. | <i>Salubérrimo</i> , very healthy. |

But the regular form with *muy* would be quite as correct.

Ex. *Muy nuevo*, very new. *Muy fuerte*, very strong, etc.

Torre, tower, is feminine by exception.

Adornar, to adorn; *blanquear*, to whiten; *igualar*, to equal; *levantarse*, to rise; *relatar*, to relate; and *sobrepasar*, to surpass,

are regular verbs of the first conjugation : and *dividir*, to divide, is of the third.

Edificar to build, to edify, goes like *aplicar*. See Rule 145

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I contradict, 295. | 16. I should contradict, 295. |
| 2. He contradicts. | 17. He should contradict. |
| 3. We contradict. | 18. We should contradict. |
| 4. You contradict. | 19. You should contradict. |
| 5. They contradict. | 20. They should contradict. |
| 6. I contradicted. | 21. I have contradicted. |
| 7. He contradicted. | 22. He has contradicted. |
| 8. We contradicted. | 23. We have contradicted. |
| 9. You contradicted. | 24. You have contradicted. |
| 10. They contradicted. | 25. They have contradicted. |
| 11. I shall contradict. | 26. I had contradicted. |
| 12. He shall contradict. | 27. I should have contradicted. |
| 13. We shall contradict. | 28. That I may contradict. |
| 14. You shall contradict. | 29. That I might contradict. |
| 15. They shall contradict. | 30. Contradict. |

31. I divide.—32. He divides.—33. We divide.—34. You divide.—35. They divide.—36. I divided.—37. He divided.—38. We divided.—39. You divided.—40. They divided.—41. I shall divide.—42. I should divide.—43. I have divided.—44. Let us divide.—45. Dividing.—46. A wall six feet high, 292.—47. He writes well, but he reads better, 293.—48. This is a better exercise than the last, 293.—49. He works more, 292.—50. He plays less, 293.—51. He walks little, 293.—52. He eats fewer pears than apples, 293.—53. He drinks least, 293.—54. My brother is the strongest in the school, 296.—55. A very faithful friend, 296.—56. A very healthy boy, 296.—57. At what o'clock do you rise in the morning?—58. I rise at seven o'clock.—59. Let us divide this among ourselves.—60. He surpasses all his friends.—61. What are you relating to them?

THIRTIETH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima.

Lesson thirtieth.

De la Ciudad de Sevilla, de Mariana,

Of the City of Seville, by Mariana,

concluido.

concluded.

Tiene su fábrica de moneda, que vale

It has its fabric of money, which is worth

treinta mil ducados en cada año. La renta

thirty thousand ducats in each year. The income

del arzobispo llega á ciento y veinte mil ;
of the archbishop comes to hundred and twenty thousand ;

las calongías y dignidades, así en número
the canonicates and prebends, as well in number

como lo demas, responden á esta grandeza.
as the rest, correspond to this grandeur.

Los campos son muy fértiles, llanos y

The fields are very fertile, level and

alegres, generalmente plantados de olivas,

pleasant, generally planted with olives,

que en Sevilla se dan muy bien, y el

which in Seville themselves give very well, and the

esquilmo es muy provechoso : de allí se

harvest is very profitable : from there themselves

llevan aceitunas adobadas, muy gruesas

carry olives preserved, very large,

de muy buen sabor, á todos los demas

of very good savor, to all the other

países. El trato es tan grande y la grange-
countries. The trade is so great, and the profit

ría tal, que en los olivares llamados Ajarafe,
such, that in the olive-gardens called Ajarafe,

en tiempo de los Moros, se contaban
in time of the Moors, themselves counted

cien mil parte cortijos, parte trapiches
hundred thousand part farms, part presses

ó molinos de aceite, y dado que parece
or mills of oil, and given that it seems

gran número, la autoridad y testimonio
great number, the authority and testimony

de la historia del rey Don Alonzo el Sabio
of the history of the king Don Alonzo the Wise

lo atestigua. Es increíble el número de
it certifies. It is incredible the number of

estrangeros y muchedumbre de mercaderes
strangers and quantity of merchants

que concurren, mayormente en este tiempo,
who gather, especially in this time,

de todas partes á la fama de las grandes
from all parts to the fame of the great

riquezas que por el trato de las Indias y
wealth which by the trade of the Indies and

flotas de cada año se juntan allí.
fleets of each year themselves join there.

The same in good English.

DE LA CIUDAD DE SEVILLA, DE
MARIANA, CONCLUIDO.

Tiene su fábrica de moneda,
que vale treinta mil ducados en

THE CITY OF SEVILLE, BY
MARIANA, CONCLUDED.

It has also a mint, which
coins thirty thousand ducats.

cada año. La renta del arzobispo llega á ciento y veinte mil; las calongías y dignidades, así en número como lo demas, responden á esta grandeza. Los campos son muy fértiles, llanos y alegres, generalmente plantados de olivas, que en Sevilla se dan muy bien, y el esquilmo es muy provechoso: de allí se llevan aceitunas adobadas, muy gruesas de muy buen sabor, á todos los demas países. El trato es tan grande y la granjería tal, que en los olivares llamados Ajarafe, en tiempo de los Moros, se contaban cien mil parte cortijos, parte trapiches ó molinos de aceite, y dado que parece gran número, la autoridad y testimonio de la historia del rey Don Alonzo el Sabio lo atestigua. Es increíble el número de estrangeros y muchedumbre de mercaderes que concurren, mayormente en este tiempo, de todas partes á la fama de las grandes riquezas que por el trato de las Indias y flotas de cada año se juntan allí.

year; while the bishop's income amounts to one hundred and twenty thousand, with canonicates and prebends to correspond.

The fields are remarkably fertile and pleasant, being for the most part planted with olives which grow abundantly, and are very profitable, being put up there and shipped to all parts of the world.

This commerce is indeed so considerable, that in the days of the Moors there were some hundred thousand olive-gardens and oil-presses here; and though this may appear an exaggerated account, the historical statistics of King Alonzo the Wise will sufficiently attest it.

The number of strangers who congregate in this place, in consequence of the Indian trade, is very great.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que recolor es esta?

Que fábrica tiene Sevilla?

¿Cuántos ducados vale?

¿A cuanto llega la renta del Arzobispo?

¿Responde á esta grandeza las calongías y dignidades?

La trigésima.

Tiene una fábrica de moneda.

Treinta mil ducados en cada año.

A ciento y veinte mil.

Las calongías y dignidades así en número como lo demas responden á esta grandeza.

¿ Como son los campos ?

¿ De que estan plantados generalmente ?

¿ Como es el esquilmo ?

¿ Que se llevan de allí ?

¿ Adonde se llevan ?

¿ Como es el trato de olivas ?

¿ Cuantos cortijos y trapiches ó molinos de aceite se contaban en tiempo de los Moros.

¿ Donde ?

¿ Cual autoridad lo atestigua ?

¿ Que es increible ?

¿ A la fama de que concurren ellos ?

Muy fértiles, llanos y alegres por todas partes.

De olivas, que en Sevilla se dan muy bien.

Muy provechoso.

Aceitunas adobadas muy gruesas y de muy buen sabor.

A todos los demas paises.

El trato es muy grande.

Cien mil.

En los olivares llamados Ajarafa. La autoridad y testimonio del rey Alonzo el Sabio.

El número de estrangeros y muchedumbre de mercaderes que concurren mayormente en este tiempo de todas partes.

A la fama de las grandes riquezas que por el trato de las Indias y flotas de cada año se juntan allí.

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Una oliva.
La riqueza.
El esquilmo.
Un molino.
Un estranhero.
Un cortijo.
La flota de las Indias.
Una cosa increible.
Un campo alegre.
Responder.
Plantar.
Atestiguar.
Valer.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

An olive.
The wealth.
The harvest.
A mill.
A stranger.
A farm.
The Indian fleet.
An incredible thing.
A pleasant field.
To answer.
To plant.
To testify.
To be worth.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿No estuvieron los Moros en Francia? | Did not the Moors go to France? |
| Si, señor, en el año sete cientos treinta y dos. | Yes, sir, in 732. |
| Diga me V. que sucedió allá. | Tell me what happened there. |
| Los Franceses les dieron una batalla cerca de Tours. | The French gave them battle near Tours. |
| ¿Quien fué el general de las fuerzas cristianas? | Who was the general of the Christian forces? |
| Carlo Martel, el padre de Pepino el Chico. | Charles Martel, the father of Pepin the Short. |
| ¿Que fué el resultado de esta batalla? | What was the result of this battle? |
| La derrota de los Moros fué completa. | The Moors were completely defeated. |
| Perdieron mas de tres cientos mil hombres. | They lost over 300,000 men. |
| ¿Puede V. decirme algo mas de los Moros? | Can you tell me something else about the Moors? |
| Tenian una hermosa biblioteca en Córdoba de mas de seis cientos mil libros. | They had a fine library at Cordova; more than 600,000 volumes. |
| ¿Donde estan los mas de estos libros ahora? | Where are most of these books now? |
| En el palacio del Escorial cerca de Madrid. | In the Escorial palace near Madrid. |
| ¿Que obra famosa se cree que hay entre ellos? | What famous work is thought to be among them? |
| Un completo Tito Livio escrito en arábigo. | A complete Titus Livius in Arabic. |
| ¿Quien fué el último rey de los Moros en España? | Who was the last king of the Moors in Spain? |
| ¿Boabdil el Chico? | Boabdil the Small. |
| Adonde se fué Boabdil despues de su expulsion de España? | Where did Boabdil go to after his expulsion from Spain? |
| El se volvió á Africa. | He returned to Africa. |
| ¿En que año? | In what year? |
| En el año mil cuatro cientos noventa y dos. | In 1492. |
| América fué descubierta en el mismo año. | America was discovered in the same year. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Vale, is worth ; from *valer*, to be worth.

297. *Valer*, to be worth, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in Spanish. Its conjugation is as follows :

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Valer, to be worth.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Valiendo, being worth.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Valido, been worth.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Yo valgo,</i> | I am worth. |
| <i>Tú vales,</i> | thou art worth. |
| <i>El vale,</i> | he is worth, |
| <i>Nosotros valemos,</i> | we are worth. |
| <i>Vosotros valeis,</i> | you are worth |
| <i>Ellos valen,</i> | they are worth. |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Yo valia,</i> | I was worth, | or used to be worth. |
| <i>Tú valias,</i> | thou wert worth, | or usedst to be worth |
| <i>El valia,</i> | he was worth, | or used to be worth. |
| <i>Nosotros vallamos,</i> | we were worth, | or used to be worth. |
| <i>Vosotros valiais,</i> | you were worth, | or used to be worth. |
| <i>Ellos valian,</i> | they were worth, | or used to be worth. |

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Yo valí,</i> | I was worth. |
| <i>Tú valiste,</i> | thou wert worth. |
| <i>El valió,</i> | he was worth. |
| <i>Nosotros valimos,</i> | we were worth. |
| <i>Vosotros valisteis,</i> | you were worth. |
| <i>Ellos valieron,</i> | they were worth. |

FUTURE.*

| | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Yo valdré,</i> | I shall be worth, | or will be worth. |
| <i>Tú valdrás,</i> | thou shalt be worth, | or wilt be worth. |
| <i>El valdrá,</i> | he shall be worth, | or will be worth. |
| <i>Nosotros valdrémos,</i> | we shall be worth, | or will be worth. |
| <i>Vosotros valdréis,</i> | you shall be worth, | or will be worth. |
| <i>Ellos valdrán,</i> | they shall be worth, | or will be worth. |

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Yc valdria,</i> | I should be worth, | or would be worth. |
| <i>Tú valdrías,</i> | thou shouldst be worth, | or wouldst be worth. |
| <i>El valdria,</i> | he should be worth, | or would be worth. |
| <i>Nosotros valdríamos,</i> | we should be worth, | or would be worth. |
| <i>Vosotros valdríais,</i> | you should be worth, | or would be worth. |
| <i>Ellos valdrían,</i> | they should be worth, | or would be worth. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Vale, be (thou).

Valed, be (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Que yo valga,</i> | that I may be worth. |
| <i>Que tú valgas,</i> | that thou mayst be worth. |
| <i>Que él valga,</i> | that he may be worth. |
| <i>Que nosotros valgamos,</i> | that we may be worth. |
| <i>Que vosotros valgais,</i> | that you may be worth. |
| <i>Que ellos valgan,</i> | that they may be worth. |

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Que yo valiera,</i> | or valiese, | that I might be worth. |
| <i>Que tú valieras,</i> | or valieses, | that thou mightst be worth. |
| <i>Que él valiera,</i> | or valiese, | that he might be worth. |
| <i>Que nosotros valiéramos,</i> | or valiésemos, | that we might be worth. |
| <i>Que vosotros valiérais,</i> | or valiéseis, | that you might be worth. |
| <i>Que ellos valieran,</i> | or valiesen, | that they might be worth. |

298. Thus is conjugated *prevaler*, to prevail.

* The second future is (see note on page 25):

| | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Yo valiera,</i> | <i>tú valieras,</i> | <i>él valiera,</i> |
| <i>Nosotros valiéramos,</i> | <i>vosotros valiérais,</i> | <i>ellos valieran.</i> |

Lo demas, the rest.

299. *Demas* is an invariable word, which enters into the composition of several idiomatic expressions, the most important of which are :

Estar demas, or *estas por demas*, To be one too many to be
superfluous.

Demas de esto, Besides this.

Que parece, that it appears.

300. The subjunctive mood can only be used in cases of doubt or uncertainty; and although it is always preceded by **que** or some other conjunction, **que** may be followed by the indicative when there is no doubt or uncertainty connected with the idea expressed by the verb.—Ex. :

Diga me V. una cosa que Tell me a thing I can do.
puedo hacer,

Diga me V. una cosa que Tell me a thing I may do.
pueda hacer,

Este muchacho por perezoso However idle this boy is.
que es,

Este muchacho por perezoso However idle this boy may be.
que sea,

301. The subjunctive is especially much used in sentences like the following :

Pídale V. que le muestre sus libros,

Ask him to show you his books ;
literally,

Ask him that he may show you his books.

302. The principal interjections are :

| | | | |
|--------------|-------|------------------|----------|
| <i>Ah!</i> | ah! | <i>Hola!</i> | holla! |
| <i>Ay!</i> | alas! | <i>Silencio!</i> | silence! |
| <i>Hahe!</i> | eigh! | <i>Viva!</i> | hurrah! |

303. When not used by itself, *ay* is generally followed by *de*.

Ex. *Ay de mi!* woe to me!

Adobar, to preserve; *atestiguar*, to testify; and *plantar*, to plant, are regular verbs of the first conjugation, and *responder* to answer, is of the second.

Concurrir, to concur, to gather together, is of the third

Exercises.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I prevail, 298. | 15. I shall prevail, 298. |
| 2. Thou prevailest. | 16. Thou shalt prevail. |
| 3. He prevails. | 17. He shall prevail. |
| 4. She prevails. | 18. She shall prevail. |
| 5. We prevail. | 19. We shall prevail. |
| 6. You prevail. | 20. You shall prevail. |
| 7. They prevail. | 21. They shall prevail. |
| 8. I prevailed. | 22. I should prevail. |
| 9. Thou prevailedst. | 23. Prevail. |
| 10. He prevailed. | 24. Prevailing. |
| 11. She prevailed. | 25. That I may prevail. |
| 12. We prevailed. | 26. That I might prevail. |
| 13. You prevailed. | 27. I have prevailed. |
| 14. They prevailed. | 28. I had prevailed. |

29. Good morning, sir.—30. How do you do? 31. Very well, I thank you.—32. You know your lesson, do you not?—33. I have studied it a great deal.—34. Take a chair and sit down.—35. Where does it begin?—36. Let us go on.—37. You know it very well.—38. Let us take a walk.—39. Where could we go to?—40. To the Central Park.—41. Would you not prefer to go on horseback?—42. I seldom ride.—43. But you have several horses.—44. They are carriage-horses.—45. Would you like to see them?—46. Where are they?—47. I am very fond of horses.—48. I will tell the servant to bring them to the door.—49. They look very well.—50. Tell him to write often, 300, 301.—51. I hope he will do this, 300, 301.—52. I am afraid he will not come, 300, 301.—53. He wants me to ride every day, 300, 301.—54. Woe to him! 303.—55. Woe to us! 303.—56. Woe to the enemies of our country!

THIRTY FIRST LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima primera.

Lesson thirty first.

Esquelas ó Billetes.

Cards or Notes.

Un amigo convidando á otro para

A friend inviting another to

la Comida.

the dinner.

Federico Nuñez B. L. M. al Señor Don

Frederic Nunez kisses the hands to the Mr.

Luis Córdova, y agradecerá mucho que el

Lewis Cordova, and will be pleased much that the

Señor Don Luis le favorezca con su

Mr. Lewis him would favor with his

compañía el Lunes 8 del corriente, á las

company the Monday 8 of the instant, at the

6 de la tarde, para la comida. Hoy 5.

6 of the evening, for the dinner. To-day 5.

Aceptacion.

Acceptance.

Amigo mio: Acabo de recibir la de

Friend my: I have just received the one of

V., por la que veo la gracia que V.

your honor, by the which I see the favor which your honor

se sirve á hacerme.

is pleased to do me.

Iré á las seis,

I shall go at the six,

para decir á V. verbalmente que nadie
 in order to tell to your honor verbally that nobody
es tanto como yo S. S. S.,
 'is as much as I Your faithful servant,

Q. S. M. B.,
 Who your hands kisses,

Hoy 5.
 To-day 5.

Luis Córdova.
 Lewis Cordova.

Para rehusar.
 In order to refuse.

Luis Córdova B. L. M. al Señor Don
 Lewis Cordova kisses the hands to the Mr.

Federico Nuñez, y siente muchísimo no
 Frederic Nunez, and regrets very much not

poder gozar de su amable compañía la
 to be able to enjoy his amiable company the

noche señalada, por hallarse comprome-
 evening indicated, for to find himself engaged

tido de antemano.
 beforehand.

Hoy 5.
 To-day 5.

The same in good English.

ESQUELAS ó BILLETES.

*Un amigo convidando á otro
 para la Comida.*

Federico Nuñez B. L. M. al
 Señor Don Luis Córdova, y agra-
 decerá mucho que el Señor Don
 Luis le favorezca con su com-
 pañia el Lunes 8 del corriente, á
 las 6 de la tarde, para la comida.
 Hoy 5.

NOTES.

Invitation to Dinner.

Frederic Nunez presents his
 compliments to Lewis Cordova,
 Esq., and requests the pleasure
 of his company to dinner on
 Monday evening, 8th instant, at
 six o'clock.
 To-day, 5th.

Aceptacion.

Amigo mio: Acabo de recibir la de V., por la que veo la gracia que V. se sirve á hacerme. Iré á las seis, para decir á V. verbalmente que nadie es tanto como yo S. S. S.,

Q. S. M. B.,

Hoy 5. LUIS CÓRDOVA.

Para rehusar.

Luis Córdova B. L. M. al Señor Don Federico Nuñez, y siente muchísimo no poder gozar de su amable compañía la noche señalada, por hallarse comprometido de antemano.

Hoy 5.

Acceptance.

My dear Friend: I have just received your note, in which you do me the honor to invite me to dinner; and I shall take pleasure in coming at six o'clock, as directed, in order to present to you personally my compliments.

To-day, 5th. LEWIS CORDOVA.

Refusal.

Lewis Cordova presents his compliments to Frederic Nunez, Esq., and regrets sincerely that a previous engagement prevents his accepting the kind invitation extended to him. To-day, 5th.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿ Que leccion es esta ?

¿ Que contiene esta leccion ?

¿ Cuantas esquelas hay en ella ?

¿ De que se habla en la primera ?

¿ Quien escribe esta esquela ?

¿ A quien la escribe ?

¿ Que le dice ?

¿ Cuando ?

¿ A que hora quiere que venga ?

¿ De que se habla en la esquela segunda ?

¿ Y que le escribe ?

¿ Le da las gracias ?

¿ Para que ?

La trigésima primera.

Esquelas ó billetes.

Tres.

De un amigo que convida á otro para la comida.

El Señor Don Federico Nuñez.

Al Señor Don Luis Córdova.

Que agradecerá mucho que el Señor Don Luis le favorezca con su compañía para la comida.

El Lunes 8 del corriente.

A las seis de la tarde.

El Señor Don Luis acepta e. convite.

Que ha recibido su billete.

Si, señor, y le dice que irá á las seis.

Para decirle verbalmente que nadie es tan su seguro servidor como él.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿De que se habla en la escuela tercera? | El Señor Don Luis rehusa el convite. |
| Porqué? | Por hallarse comprometido de antemano. |
| No dice que lo siente? | Lo siente muchísimo. |
| Que fecha tienen estas esquelas? | El cinco. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

- ¿Que papel se usa generalmente para la correspondencia?
- El papel doblado en cuarto mas ó ménos reducido.
- ¿Cuales cartas pueden escribirse en hojas sencillas de cualquier tamaño?
- Las cartas de negocios y de comercio.
- ¿Cuales otras cartas admiten el octavo ó la carta pequeña?
- Las cartas familiares y esquelas.
- ¿Que se coloca en cabeza de las cartas de negocios?
- La fecha.
- ¿Donde se pone en otras cartas?
- Al pié de la carta y al costado izquierdo de la firma.
- ¿Para que?
- Para dar una marca de respeto.
- De que debe ir acompañada la fecha?
- De la indicacion del lugar, del mes y del año.
- Con que se encabezan ordinariamente las cartas?
- Con el nombre de la persona á quien se dirigen.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- What paper is generally used for letter-writing?
- Double sheets of greater or smaller size.
- What kind of letters can be written on small sheets of any size?
- Business and commercial letters.
- What other letters may be written on small paper?
- Familiar letters and notes.
- What is placed at the head of all business letters?
- The date.
- Where is this placed in other letters?
- At the foot and to the left of the signature.
- Why?
- As a mark of respect.
- What must be added to the date?
- The name of the place in which the letter is written, the month, and the year.
- With what do letters generally begin?
- With the name of the person to whom they are addressed.

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿Que debe preceder al nombre? El tratamiento que le correspondía. | What must precede the name? The title. |
| ¿Cuales frases preceden generalmente al entrar en materia? Señor mio, muy señor mio, ó mi estimado amigo. | How are persons generally addressed? My dear sir, my very dear sir, or my esteemed friend. |
| El mayor ó menor blanco que se deja entre el nombre y la primera línea es tambien un signo de mas ó ménos consideracion. | The greater or less amount of blank left between the name and the first line of the letter is also a sign of more or less consideration. |
| ¿Que se pone al pié de la carta? | What is placed at the bottom of the letter? |
| La formula "que besa sus manos" indicada con las iniciales Q. B. S. M. | The formula—who kisses your hands, generally represented by the letters Q. B. S. M. |
| ¿Donde va la firma? Invariablymente en un renglon separado. | Where is the signature placed? Invariably on a line by itself. |
| ¿Como deben doblarse las cartas? De manera que formen un cuadrilongo. | How should letters be folded? So as to form an oblong square. |
| ¿En que se incluyen las cartas? En un sobre. | In what are letters inclosed? In an envelope. |
| ¿Con que se cierran finalmente? Con una oblea, lacre, ó goma. | With what are they sealed? With a wafer, sealing-wax, or gum. |
| La direccion debe escribirse en el sobre, á fin que sea fácil leerla al primer golpe de vista. | The direction must be put on the envelope, so that it may be readily seen. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Convidando á otro,
inviting another.

304. *Convidar*, to invite, is followed by the preposition *á*, in accordance with Rule 140

B. L. M.

305. **B. L. M.**, an abbreviation of *besa las manos*, literally *kisses the hands*, is an expression of politeness which corresponds to *presents his compliments* in English.

Señor Don Luis Córdova.

306. We have already seen that *señor* and *don* may be used together. This reduplication of titles could, however, not take place unless the Christian name of the person addressed is expressed.

Ex. *Señor Don Luis Córdova,*
Señor Córdova,
Don Luis.

Amigo mio,
 my friend.

307. The most usual modes of address in Spanish letters are :

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Muy señor mio,</i> | Dear sir. |
| <i>Muy señora mía,</i> | Dear madam. |
| <i>Querido or caro amigo,</i> | Dear friend. |
| <i>Mi estimado amigo,</i> | My esteemed friend. |

It is to be observed that these expressions vary, contrary to English usage, according to the number of persons writing or addressed.

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| Ex. <i>Muy señor mio,</i> | My dear sir. |
| <i>Muy señores míos,</i> | My dear gentlemen. |
| <i>Muy señor nuestro,</i> | Our dear sir |
| <i>Muy señores nuestros,</i> | Our dear gentlemen. |

S. S. S.

308. **S. S. S.**, an abbreviation of *su seguro servidor*, literally, *your true servant*, is an expression of politeness which corresponds in English to *your obedient servant*, *yours truly*, or *yours respectfully*.

Q. S. M. B.

309. **Q. S. M. B.** stands for *que sus manos besa*, who kisses your hands. This abbreviation is found at the end of almost all Spanish letters.

Siente no poder,
regrets not to be able.

To before an infinitive is left out after *sentir*, to regret. See Rule 166.

Gozar de su amable compañía,
enjoy his amiable company.

310. *Gozar*, to enjoy, when followed by a noun, which is its regimen, requires the preposition *de*.

Acabar, to finish; *besar*, to kiss; *convidar*, to invite; *hallar*, to find; and *señalar*, to signalize, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *comprometer*, to compromise, is of the second, and *recibir*, to receive, of the third.

Agradecer, to please; *favorecer*, to favor, go like *compadecer* (147); *gozar*, to enjoy, like *rechazar* (187); and *servir*, to serve, follows Rule 162.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

1. Mr. Paul presents his compliments to Miss Virginia, 305, 306.—2. He requests the pleasure of her company to tea.—3. Miss Virginia is previously engaged, 306.—4. She will not be able to come.—5. We all regret it very much.—6. Mr. and Mrs. Joseph Solis, 306.—7. Dear friends, 307.—8. Ladies, 307.—9. Yours respectfully, 308.—10. Yours truly, 308.—11. I regret having* made a mistake.—12. He regrets having* gone out.—13. We regret having* spoken.—14. You enjoy this very much, do you not? 310.—15. They enjoy it also, 310.—16. We all enjoy it, 310.—17. Why should we not enjoy it? 310.

* The participle present is less frequently used in Spanish than in English; and the infinitive is invariably used instead of it in sentences like the following:

Yo siento haber hecho una falta,
I regret having made a mistake;
Me-ally,
I regret to have made a mistake.

THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima segunda.

Lesson thirty second.

Recibo.

Receipt.

Nueva York, 9 de Mayo, 18—. Recibido

New York, 9 of May, 18—. Received

del Sr. Don Fulano la cantidad de mil
from the Mr. Fulano the sum of thousand

cuatro cientos veintidos pesos tres y medio
four hundred twenty-two dollars three and half

reales, por saldo de todas nuestras cuentas
shillings, as balance of all our accounts

hasta hoy.

till to-day.

Pedro Esteban.

Peter Esteban.

Son pesos 1422.3.6, ó \$1422.43½.

Are dollars 1422 . 3/6, or \$1422 . 43½.

Un Pagaré.

A Promissory Note.

Nueva York, 10 de Marzo, 18—.

New York, 10 of March, 18—.

Pagaré á sesenta dias contados desde la

I shall pay, at sixty days, counted from the

fecha, al Señor Don José Bueno, ó su
date, to the Mr. Joseph Bueno, or his

órden, la cantidad de quinientos pesos,
order, the sum of five hundred dollars,

valor recibido de dicho señor en dinero

value received from said gentleman in money

efectivo á toda mi satisfaccion.

cash to entire my satisfaction.

Son \$500.

Antonio Flores.

Are \$500.

Anthony Flores.

Avisos.

Advertisements.

Se vende, una casa magnifica de dos

For sale, a house magnificent of two

pisos, que tiene seis ventanas enfrente,

stories, which has six windows in front,

situada en el Cerro á la esquina de la calle

situated in the Cerro at the corner of the street

de Perla. Sobre ella informará el corredor

of Pearl. About it will inform the broker,

Alfredo Quevedo, calle de la Muralla, No. 6.

Alfred Quevedo, street of the Wall, No. 6.

Se necesita, un buen calesero de veinte

Wanted, a good coachman of twenty

años, poco mas ó ménos, para conducir

years, little more or less, in order to conduct

una volanta de dos mulas.

a volante with two mules.

Un cocinero frances, que ha servido en

A cook French, who has served in

unos de los primeros hoteles de Paris, desean

some of the first hotels of Paris, wishes

una colocacion en una familia particular.

a situation in a family private.

A. B., caja No. 2356

A. B. box No. 2356

del Correo de la Habana

of the Post-office of Havana.

The same in good English.*Recibo.*

Nueva York, 9 de Mayo, 18—.
Recibido del Señor Don Fulano
la cantidad de mil cuatrocientos
veintidos pesos tres y medio
reales, por saldo de todas nues-
tras cuentas hasta hoy.

PEDRO ESTEBAN.

Son pesos 1422.8.6, ó \$1422.43 $\frac{1}{2}$.

Un Pagaré.

Nueva York, 10 de Marzo, 18—.
Pagaré á sesenta días contados
desde la fecha, al Señor Don José
Bueno, ó su orden, la cantidad
de quinientos pesos, valor reci-
bido de dicho señor en dinero
efectivo á toda mi satisfaccion.

Son \$500. ANTONIO FLORES.

Aviso.

Se vende, una casa magnífica
de dos pisos, que tiene seis ven-
tanás enfrente, situada en el Cerro
á la esquina de la calle de Perla.
Sobre ella informará el corredor
Alfredo Quevedo, calle de la
Muralla, No. 6.

Se necesita, un buen calesero
de veinte años, poco mas ó ménos,
para conducir una volanta de
dos mulas.

Un cocinero frances, que ha
servido en unos de los primeros
hoteles de Paris, desea una colo-
cacion en una familia particular.

A. B., caja No. 2856 del Correo
de la Habana

Receipt.

Received, New York, May 9th,
18—, from Mr. N., the sum of
One thousand four hundred
twenty-two dollars, three shil-
lings and sixpence, in full of all
demands up to date.

PETER ESTEBAN.

\$1422.43 $\frac{1}{2}$.

Promissory Note.

New York, March 10th, 18—.
Sixty days after date, I promise
to pay to Joseph Bueno, Esq., or
order, the sum of Five hundred
dollars, for value received.

\$500. ANTHONY FLORES.

Advertisements.

For sale, a handsome two-
story house, six windows wide,
situated in the Cerro, corner
of Pearl-street. For further
particulars, call on, or address,
Alfred Quevedo, agent, No. 6
Wall-street.

Wanted, a young man, about
twenty years old, to drive a vo-
lante with two mules.

A French cook, who has served
in some of the first hotels in
Paris, wishes a situation in a
private family.

Address A. B., box 2856, Ha-
vana Post-office.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿ Que lección es esta ? | La trigésima segunda. |
| ¿ Que contiene esta lección ? | Un recibo, un pagaré, y unos avisos. |
| ¿ Que fecha tiene el recibo ? | Nueva York, 9 de Mayo, 18—. |
| ¿ Quien es el recibidor ? | El Señor Don Pedro Esteban. |
| ¿ Cuanto dinero ha recibido ? | Mil cuatrocientos veintidos pesos tres y medio reales. |
| ¿ Porqué ? | Por saldo de todas sus cuentas hasta hoy. |
| ¿ De quien ha recibido el dinero ? | Del Señor Don Fulano. |
| ¿ Que fecha tiene el pagaré ? | Nueva York, 10 de Marzo, 18—. |
| ¿ A cuantos dias vista vencerá ? | A sesenta dias contados desde la fecha. |
| ¿ Cuanto dinero pagará ? | Quinientos pesos. |
| ¿ A quien pagará este ? | Al Señor Don José Bueno, ó su órden. |
| ¿ Quien le pagará ? | El Señor Don Antonio Flores. |
| ¿ Cuantos avisos hay en esta lección ? | Hay tres. |
| ¿ Que se vende ? | Una casa magnífica de dos pisos. |
| ¿ Cuantas ventanas tiene enfrente ? | Seis. |
| ¿ Donde está situada la casa ? | En el Cerro á la esquina de la calle de Perla. |
| ¿ Quien informará sobre ella ? | El corredor Alfredo Quevedo. |
| ¿ Donde vive ? | En la calle de la Muralla, No. 6. |
| ¿ Que se necesita ? | Un buen calesero. |
| ¿ Cuantos años debe tener ? | Veinte años, poco mas ó ménos. |
| ¿ Para que ? | Para conducir una volanta de dos mulas. |
| ¿ Quien ofrece sus servicios ? | Un cocinero frances. |
| ¿ Donde ha servido ántes ? | En unos de los primeros hoteles de Paris. |
| ¿ Que desea ? | Una colocacion en una familia particular. |
| ¿ Cual es su direccion ? | A. B., caja No. 2856 del correo de la Habana. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

¿De que metales se hacen las monedas españolas?

De oro, de plata y de cobre.

¿Cuales son las monedas de oro?

La onza de diez y seis pesos, la media onza de ocho pesos, el doblon de á dos de cuatro pesos, el dobloncito ó escudo de dos pesos y el escudito ó durillo de un peso.

¿Cual es la moneda de plata?

El duro, peso fuerte, peso, ó escudo de plata; el medio peso, la peseta, el real y el medio real.

¿Cual es la moneda de cobre?

El cuartillo y el maravedi.

¿Cuales son las principales medidas españolas?

El quintal, la arroba, la libra, y la onza.

¿Cuantas libras tiene una arroba?

Una arroba tiene veinticinco libras.

¿Cuantas arrobas tiene el quintal?

Cuatro.

¿Cuantas onzas tiene la libra?

La libra tiene diez y seis onzas.

De que medida se sirven en España para medir el paño?

De la vara.

¿En cuales otros estados se usan las mismas medidas y el mismo dinero?

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

Of what metals is Spanish money made?

Of gold, silver, and copper.

Which coins are made of gold?

The ounce, worth 16 dollars the half ounce, worth 8 dollars; the doubloon, worth 4 dollars; the small doubloon, worth 2 dollars; and the 1 dollar gold piece.

Which are made of silver?

The dollar, the half dollar, the quarter of a dollar, the shilling, and the sixpenny piece.

Which are made of copper?

The three cent piece and the single cent.

Which are the principal measures in Spain?

The hundredweight, the quarter, the pound, and the ounce.

How many pounds are there in a quarter?

Twenty-five.

How many quarters are there in a hundredweight?

Four.

How many ounces are there in a pound?

The pound has sixteen ounces.

Which is the cloth measure in Spain?

The yard.

In what other countries do they use these same measures and coins?

| | |
|--|--|
| En todas las rep  licas hispano-americanas, en las Antillas,   saber, en Cuba y Puerto Rico. | In all the Spanish American republics, in the West Indies, to wit: in Cuba and Porto Rico. |
|   Tienen tambien moneda de papel? | Have they also paper money? |
| Si, se or, pero la m nima es el billete de cien pesos. | Yes, sir; but nothing smaller than a hundred dollar bill. |
|   Qual es el banco mas importante de la Habana? | Which is the principal bank in Havana? |
| El Gran Banco Espa ol. | The Great Spanish Bank. |

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

9 de Mayo, May 9th.

311. The cardinal numbers are generally used instead of the ordinal, in speaking of the days of the month, and of sovereigns and princes; but *first* is never so changed, and forms, therefore, an important exception to this rule.

May 1st, *primero de Mayo*. Henry the 1st, *Enrique primero*.

May 2d, *dos de Mayo*. Henry the 2d, *Enrique dos*.

May 3d, *tres de Mayo*. Henry the 3d, *Enrique tres*.

Fulano.

312. **Fulano** answers to SUCH A ONE in English. It is used whenever the name of the person spoken of is not known or purposely kept back. Its feminine is **fulana**.

1422 pesos, 3 reales, 6 centavos.

1422 dollars, 3 shillings, 6 cents.

313. The **peso**, *dollar*; **real**, *shilling*; and **centavo**, *cent*, are the denominations used in computing sums of money in Spanish. There are 8 reals in a peso and $12\frac{1}{2}$ centavos in a real.

En efectivo.

314. *En efectivo* means *in cash*. Should the value received be merchandise, *en generos*, *en efectos*, or *en mercancias*, would have to be used instead.

A toda mi satisfaccion,
to my entire satisfaction.

315. This expression is indispensable to give validity to a note in Spain.

Calle de la Muralla No. 6,
No. 6 Wall-street.

316. In Spanish, the number of the house is generally placed after the name of the street.

Desear, to desire; *informar*, to inform; and *necesitar*, to want, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

Conducir, to conduct, goes like *traducir*, see page 134; and *servir*, to serve, follows Obs. 162.

Exercises,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

1. Received, May 4th, the sum of three hundred dollars, 311.
- 2. In full of all demands.—3. Thirty days after date, I promise to pay to Lewis Concha, Esq., the sum of four hundred dollars and fifty cents, 313.—4. For sale, a carriage and two horses.—5. Wanted, a good Spanish teacher, to instruct a class of boys.—6. A good servant wants a situation.—7. Address C. D., New York Post-office.—8. He always pays cash, 314.—9. He never buys on credit.—10. I have received an account.—11. We will collect the remainder in a few days.—12. Good cooks are much in demand now.—13. No. 53 14th-street, 316.—14. No. 21 23d-street, 316.—15. No. 9 Grand-street, 316.—16. A dollar has 8 reals, and a real 12½ cents.—17. Would you lend* some money to this gentleman?—18. I never borrow* any thing from any one.—19. Lend me your ruler, if you please.—20. I don't know where it is.—21. Some one has borrowed it.—22. No one ever lends me any thing.—23. You are right.

* To LEND is translated into Spanish by *prestar algo á alguno*; and to BORROW, by *pedir prestado á alguno*; literally, to ask a loan from some one.

THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima tercera.

Lesson thirty third.

Arte de la Correspondencia Comercial.

Art of the Correspondence Commercial.

Circular

Circular

para el establecimiento de una Casa de
for the establishment of a House of

Comercio.

Commerce.

Cardenas, 20 de Agosto, 18—.

Cardenas, 20 of August, 18—.

A los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca.,

To the Messrs. Joseph Ruiz and Co.,

Nueva York.

New York.

Muy Señores nuestros:

Very Gentlemen our:

Tenemos el honor de participar

We have the honor to inform

á Vs. que acabamos de formar una
your honors that we have just formed a

sociedad mercantil bajo la razon de J. M.
society mercantile under the firm of J. M.

Morales y Ca., para el desempeño del

Morales and Co., for the carrying on of the

ramo de comisiones, y toda otra clase
 branch of commissions, and every other kind
de transacciones comerciales.
 of transactions commercial.

Nos lisonjamos de que nuestros fondos,
 Ourselves we flatter that our funds,
nuestra experiencia y conocimiento de
 our experience and knowledge of
negocios, nos proporcionaran los medios de
 business, us will afford the means to
satisfacer completamente á todos los que
 satisfy completely all those who
se sirvan honrarnos con su confianza.
 may avail themselves to honor us with their confidence.

Para informes acerca de nuestro carác-
 For informations respecting our character,
ter, nos referimos á nuestros amigos, los
 we refer to our friends, the
Señores Mora Norvales y hermanos de esa;
 Messrs. Mora Norvales and brothers of this;
y quedamos, con la mayor consideracion,
 and we remain, with the greatest consideration,

S. S. S.,
 Your faithful servants,

Q. S. M. B.,
 Who your hands kiss,

J. M. Morales y Ca.
 J. M. Morales and Co.

Don José María Morales firmará —
 Mr. Joseph Maria Morales will sign —

Don Guillermo Rahé firmará —
 Mr. William Rahé will sign —

The same in good English.

ARTE DE LA CORRESPONDENCIA
COMERCIAL.*Circular para el establecimiento
de una Casa de Comercio.*

Cardenas, 20 de Agosto, 18—.

A los Señores

Don José Ruiz y Ca.,
Nueva York.

Muy Señores nuestros:

Tenemos el honor de participar á Vs. que acabamos de formar una sociedad mercantil bajo la razon de J. M. Morales y Ca., para el desempeño del ramo de comisiones, y toda otra clase de transacciones comerciales.

Nos lisonjeamos de que nuestros fondos, nuestra experiencia y conocimiento de negocios, nos proporcionaran los medios de satisfacer completamente á todos los que se sirvan honrarnos con su confianza.

Para informes acerca de nuestro carácter, nos referimos á nuestros amigos, los Señores Mora Norvalles y hermanos de esa; y quedamos, con la mayor consideracion,

S. S. S.,
Q. S. M. B.,
J. M. MORALES Y CA.

Don José María Morales
firmará —

Don Guillermo Rahé
firmará —

COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENCE.

*Circular on establishing a
new House.*

Cardenas, August 20, 18—.

Messrs. Joseph Ruiz & Co.,
New York:

Gentlemen:

We would respectfully inform you that we have established a copartnership, under the firm of J. M. Morales and Co., for the carrying on of a wholesale and general commission business.

We think our capital and experience will enable us to give entire satisfaction to all who may honor us with their confidence.

For further particulars we would refer to our friends, Messrs. Mora Norvalles and Bros., of your city, and remain

Yours respectfully,

J. M. MORALES & Co.

Joseph Maria Morales, Esq.,
will sign —

William Rahé, Esq.,
will sign —

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿ Que lección es esta ? | La trigésima tercera. |
| ¿ De cual arte se hablará en las lecciones siguientes ? | Del arte de la correspondencia comercial. |
| ¿ Como se llama una carta como esta primera ? | Una circular. |
| ¿ Cual es su objeto ? | El aviso del establecimiento d una casa de comercio. |
| ¿ De donde viene esta circular ? | De Cardenas. |
| ¿ Que fecha tiene ? | 20 de Agosto, 18—. |
| ¿ Como se llama la nueva firma ? | Los Señores J. M. Morales y Ca. |
| ¿ Que clase de negocios quieren hacer ? | Comisiones y toda otra clase de transacciones comerciales. |
| ¿ Que dicen respecto de sus fondos ? | Se lisonjean de que sus fondos, su experiencia y conocimiento de negocios, les proporcionaran los medios de satisfacer completamente á todos los que se sirvan honrarles con su confianza. |
| ¿ A quienes nos refieren para informes acerca de su carácter ? | A sus amigos los Señores Mora Norvaes y hermanos de esa. |
| ¿ Como se llaman los dos socios ? | El Señor Don José María Morales y el Señor Don Guillermo Rahé. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

- ¿ Como se llama el arte de tener las cuentas de un comerciante en buen orden ?
 La teneduría de libros.
 ¿ A que dos métodos se reduce la teneduría de libros ?
 A la partida simple y á la partida doble
 ¿ De que partida hablaremos en estas lecciones ?
 De la partida doble.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- How do you call the art of keeping in good order the accounts of a merchant ?
 The art of book-keeping.
 Which are the two best methods of keeping books ?
 Single and double entry
 Of what kind are we going to speak in these lessons ?
 Of double entry.

| | |
|---|--|
| ¿Que libros son indispensables para ella? | Which books are indispensable for it? |
| Un libro de facturas, de caja, de ventas, de ventas á comision, de pagarés, el diario, el jornal y el libro mayor. Los tres últimos son los libros principales. | An invoice-book, a cash-book, a sales-book, a commission sales-book, and a bill-book; a day book, a journal, and a ledger. the last three are the principal books. |
| Para que sirve el libro de facturas? | What is the use of the invoice book? |
| Para dar una descripcion completa de todas las mercancías que se compran. | To keep a complete list of all the goods bought. |
| ¿Como se hacen las entradas en él? | How are the entries made in it? |
| Se copian de las facturas de los efectos que compramos. | They are copied from the bills of goods received. |
| ¿Que debemos hacer con las facturas originales? | What must we do with the original invoices? |
| Debemos conservarlas como documentos justificativos. | We must preserve them as vouchers. |
| ¿Para que sirve el libro de caja? | What is the use of the cash book? |
| Para manifestar las cantidades de dinero que se reciben y las que se pagan. | To show the amount of money received and paid out. |
| ¿Con que debe cargarse la cuenta de caja? | With what must the cash account be charged? |
| Con todo el dinero que se recibe. | With all the money received. |
| ¿Con que debe abonarse la cuenta de caja? | With what must the cash account be credited? |
| Con todo el dinero que se paga. | With all the money paid out. |
| ¿Cuándo debe balancearse este libro? | When must this book be balanced? |
| Debe balancearse al fin de cada semana. | It must be balanced at the end of every week. |
| ¿Para que sirve el libro de ventas? | What is the use of the sales-book? |
| Para apuntar todas las mercaderías que se venden por nuestra cuenta. | To keep an exact list of all the goods sold for ourselves. |

Para que sirve el libro de ventas á comision?

Para especificar todas las mercancías que vendemos por cuenta de otros.

¿Que apuntamos en el libro de pagarés?

Todos los pagarés que damos y que recibimos.

¿Como se llaman los primeros? Obligaciones á pagar.

¿Y como se llaman los segundos? Obligaciones á cobrar ó á recibir.

¿Que se apunta en el diario?

En el diario ó borrador se apuntan sin excepcion todas las transacciones que se hacen diariamente en una casa de comercio sean al contado ó á crédito.

¿Para que sirve el jornal?

Para distinguir claramente quienes son los deudores y quienes son los acreedores en cada transaccion.

Expliqueme V. que es el libro mayor.

El libro mayor es el mas importante de la casa.

Cada deudor y cada acreedor de la casa tiene cuenta abierta en él.

Estas cuentas se cargan o se abonan segun las entradas hechas en el jornal.

El libro mayor debe balancearse al fin de cada mes.

Sirve para mostrarnos el resultado final de nuestros negocios.

Este resultado debe ser una ganancia ó una perdida.

What is the use of the commission sales-book?

To keep a list of the goods we sell for others.

What do we put in the bill-book

All the notes we give and receive.

How are the first called?

Bills payable.

And how are the others called?

Bills receivable.

What is put in the day-book?

In the day-book or blotter we put every transaction that takes place, be it for cash or on credit.

What is the use of the journal?

To show clearly who are the debtors and who are the creditors in each transaction.

Tell me what the ledger is.

The ledger is the most important book of all.

Each debtor and each creditor of the house has his account in it.

These accounts are debited and credited with all the entries made in the journal.

The ledger must be balanced at the end of every month.

It serves to show the final result of the business.

This result must be a profit or a loss.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

Circular.

317. *Circular*, when used as a noun, is of the feminine gender, *carta*, letter, being understood.

A los Señores Don José Ruiz y Cu.

318. The title of the person or persons addressed is generally preceded by the article *THE* at the beginning of a letter.

Ex. *Al Señor Don José Ruiz*, To Joseph Ruiz, Esq.

Participar á Vs., to inform you.

319. *Participar* is here followed by the preposition *á*, in accordance with Rule 140.

Satisfacer, to satisfy.

320. *Satisfacer* is conjugated like *hacer* (see page 132), except in the 2d person singular of the imperative, which is *satisface*, and not *satisfaz*.

Se sirvan.

321. *Servirse* is an idiomatic expression, which corresponds to PLEASE in English. It should, however, not be confounded with *hagame V. el favor*, explained in Rule 30. *Servirse* can only be used when the thing desired is a politeness to the person addressed.

Sírvase V. sentarse, please to sit down.

Haga me V. el favor de serrar la puerta, please to shut the door.

De esa.

322. *Esa* stands here for New York, the place of residence of the gentlemen addressed, in accordance with Rule 277.

Firmará —, will sign —.

323. The lines — stand for the autograph signatures of the partners of the house, all of which are generally appended to circulars of this kind.

Formar, to form; *honrar*, to honor; *lisonjear*, to flatter; *participar*, to participate; and *proporcionar* to procure, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Referir*, to refer, follows Rule 162.

THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima cuarta.

Lesson thirty fourth.

Nueva York, 19 de Setiembre, 18—.

New York, 19 of September, 18—.

A los Señores Don J. M. Morales y Ca.,

To the Messrs. J. M. Morales and Co.,

Cardenas.

Cardenas.

Muy Señores nuestros : Hemos tenido

Very Gentlemen our: We have had

el honor de recibir su carta, fecha 20 del
the honor to receive your letter, date 20 of the

mes pasado. Deseamos toda clase de pros-
month past. We wish every kind of pros-

peridad á la nueva casa; y animados por
perity to the new house; and encouraged by

los buenos informes de nuestros amigos,
the good informations of our friends,

los Señores Mora Norvales y hermanos de
the Messrs. Mora Norvales and brothers of

esta, quienes nos han asegurado que no
here, who us have assured that not

podíamos confiar nuestros intereses á
we could confide our interests to

una casa mas respetable que la de Vs.,
a house more respectable than that of your honora,

desearíamos ejecutasen la orden adjunta,
 we could wish that they would execute the order adjoined,
en la que hemos fijado los precios y la
 in which we have fixed the prices and the
calidad, mas bien para que les sirvan
 quality, more well in order that they may serve
á Vs. de gobierno que para que se
 to your honors as a government than in order that themselves
atengan rigurosamente á ellos; pues
 they may bind rigorously to them; for
confiamos enteramente á Vs. este nego-
 we trust entirely to your honors this business
cio, aprobando todo lo que hagan.
 approving all what they may do.

Expedicion, por buque americano, y á
 Expedition, by vessel American, and to
nuestra orden.
 our order.

Seguro en la Habana, por los Señores
 Insurance in Havana, through the Messrs.

Balbiani y Ca., á quienes se servirán
 Balbiani and Co., to whom will please

Vs. avisar del importe de la factura,
 your honors to advise of the amount of the invoice
luego que hayan efectuado el embarque
 after that they may have effected the shipment
de las mercancías.
 of the goods.

Reembolso, á sesenta días vista, sobre
 Reimbursement, at sixty days' sight, on
nosotros mismos.
 our selves

Confiamos que este primer ensayo tendrá

We trust that this first trial will have

un éxito á nuestra satisfaccion, y espera-

a result to our satisfaction, and we hope

mos activar nuestras relaciones tanto

to enliven our relations as much

cuanto sea posible.

as it may be possible.

Agradecerémos á Vs. se sirvan con-

We will be thankful to your honors they may please to

testarnos por el correo próximo, dándonos

answer us by the mail next, giving us

noticias exactas del estado de esa plaza.

notices exact of the state of that place.

Tenemos la satisfaccion de ser de Vs.,

We have the satisfaction to be of your honors,

con la mayor consideracion,

with the greatest consideration,

S. S. S.,

Your faithful servants,

Q. S. M. B.,

Who your hands kiss,

José Ruiz y Ca.

Joseph Ruiz and Co.

Orden.

Order.

300 Trescientos quintales de café, á 8 ctvs.

300 Three hundred cwts. of coffee, at 8 cents.

800 Ochocientos bocoyes de azúcar, No. 10 á 12, á 87½.

800 Eight hundred hhds. of sugar, No. 10 to 12, at 87½.

5000 Cinco mil tabacos, Londres 1ª, á \$35.00.

5000 Five thousand cigars, London 1ª, at \$35.00.

The same in good English.

Nueva York,
19 de Setiembre, 18—.

A los Señores Don J. M. Morales
y Ca., Cardenas.

Muy Señores nuestros: Hemos tenido el honor de recibir su carta, fecha 20 del mes pasado. Deseamos toda clase de prosperidad á la nueva casa; y animados por los buenos informes de nuestros amigos los Señores Mora Norvales y hermanos de esta, quienes nos han asegurado que no podíamos confiar nuestros intereses á una casa mas respetable que la de Vs., deseáramos ejecutasen la órden adjunta, en la que hemos fijado los precios y la calidad, mas bien para que les sirvan á Vs. de gobierno que para que se atengan rigurosamente á ellos; pues confiamos enteramente á Vs. este negocio, aprobando todo lo que hagan.

Expedicion, por buque americano, y á nuestra órden.

Seguro en la Habana, por los Señores Balbiani y Ca., á quienes se servirán Vs. avisar del importe de la factura, luego que hayan efectuado el embarque de las mercancías.

Reembolso, á sesenta dias vista, sobre nosotros mismos.

Confiamos que este primer ensayo tendrá un éxito á nuestra satisfaccion, y esperamos activar nuestras relaciones tanto cuanto sea posible.

New York, Sept. 19, 18—.

Messrs. J. M. Morales & Co.,
Cardenas.

Gentlemen: We have had the honor of receiving your esteemed favor of the 20th ult., and we wish you every possible success in your new undertaking. Encouraged by the warm recommendation of our friends Messrs. Mora Norvales and brothers, who have assured us that we could not trust our interests to a more respectable house than yours, we hand you the order here below.

The prices specified are offered as approximations rather than strict limits, inasmuch as we have the utmost confidence in your judgment, and approve beforehand every thing you may do.

Shipment: on board an American vessel, and to our order.

Insurance: in Havana, through Messrs. Balbiani & Co., to whom you will please send the invoice as soon as the goods are shipped.

You may draw on us for the amount, at 60 days' sight.

We trust we shall be satisfied with the execution of this first order, and hope to give you more considerable ones in future.

Agradecerémos á Va. se sirvan contestarnos por el correo próximo, dándonos noticias exactas del estado de esa plaza.

Tenemos la satisfaccion de ser de Vs., con la mayor consideracion, S. S. S.,

Q. S. M. B.,
José Ruiz y Ca.

Orden.

800 Trescientos quintales de café, á 8 ctvs.

800 Ochocientos bocoyes de azúcar, No. 10 á 12, á 87½.

5000 Cinco mil tabacos, Londres 1ª, á \$35.00.

You will oblige us by acknowledging the receipt of this by return steamer, and by keeping us advised regularly of the state of your market.

Yours respectfully,

JOSEPH RUIZ & Co

Order.

800 Three hundred cwts. coffee at 8 cents.

800 Eight hundred hhds. sugar No. 10 to 12, at 87½ cts.

5000 Five thousand cigars, London 1ª, at \$35.00.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿ Que leccion es esta ?

La trigésima cuarta.

¿ Ha llegado el correo de los Estados Unidos ?

Si, señor.

¿ Hemos recibido cartas de importancia ?

Una carta muy importante de Nueva York.

¿ Que fecha tiene la carta ?

El 19 de Setiembre.

¿ De cual casa de Nueva York ?

De la de los Señores José Ruiz y Ca.

¿ Han recibido ellos ya nuestra circular ?

La han recibido.

¿ Que desean ?

Nos desean todos los adelantamientos posibles en nuestro establecimiento.

¿ Han tomado informes relativos á nuestros medios ?

Han tomado informes de los Señores Mora Norvaes y Ca.

¿ Cuales informes les han dado estos señores ?

Los mejores asegurandoles que no podian confiar sus intereses á una casa mas respetable que la nuestra.

Y que efecto ha tenido esta seguridad ?

Que nos han cometido una órden de compra.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>¿Que quieren que compramos para ellos?</p> <p>¿Han fijado los precios y la calidad?</p> <p>Entonces nos confían ellos este negocio enteramente?</p> <p>¿Que precio han fijado por el café?</p> <p>¿Y por el azúcar?</p> <p>¿Cual límite nos dan por los tabacos?</p> <p>¿Que escriben respecto de la expedición?</p> <p>¿Quieren que aseguremos el cargamento?</p> <p>¿Y como nos reembolsaremos?</p> | <p>Tres cientos quintales de café ochocientos bocoyes de azúcar y cinco mil tabacos.</p> <p>Si, señor, pero mas bien para que nos sirvan de gobierno que para que nos atengamos rigurosamente á ellos.</p> <p>Enteramente aprobando todo lo que hagamos.</p> <p>Ocho centavos la libra.</p> <p>Siete reales fuertes la arroba.</p> <p>Treinta y cinco pesos fuertes el mil de Londres primera.</p> <p>Que se haga por buque americano á su orden.</p> <p>Quieren que le aseguremos por los Señores Balbiani y Ca., de la Habana.</p> <p>A sesenta dias vista sobre ellos.</p> |
|--|---|

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

- ¿Que ha comprado V. hoy?
- Tres cientos sacos de café.
- ¿Cuanto ha pagado V. por el café?
- Ocho centavos la libra, en todo cuarenta y seis mil ochocientos diez y nueve libras importando tres mil setecientos cuarenta y cinco pesos y cincuenta y dos centavos.
- A quien ha comprado V. este café?
- Al Señor Don Tomas Urieta.
- En que libro debe V. hacer la primera entrada?
- Copiaré la factura en mi libro de facturas.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- What have you bought to-day?
- Three hundred bags of coffee.
- How much did you pay for the coffee?
- Eight cents a pound, amounting to three thousand seven hundred and forty-five dollars and fifty-two cents, for forty-six thousand eight hundred and nineteen pounds.
- From whom have you bought this coffee?
- From Mr. Thomas Urieta.
- In which book must you make your first entry?
- I will copy the invoice into my invoice-book.

Luego tomaré nota de esta transaccion en mi diario.

¿ Quien es el deudor en esta transaccion ?

Yo ó mi existencia de mercancías.

¿ Y quien es el acreedor ?

El Señor Don Tomas Urieta.

¿ Como hara V. pues la entrada en el jornal ?

Mercancías deben á Tomas Urieta 300 sacos de café segun libro de facturas No. 1, \$3745.52.

¿ Porqué dice V. segun libro de facturas No. 1 ?

Porque todas las facturas tienen un número, y esta factura es la primera.

¿ Como pasará V. esta entrada del jornal al libro mayor ?

Cargaré la cuenta de mercancías con \$3745.52, y abonaré la misma cantidad á Tomas Urieta.

¿ Cuando le pagará V ?

Mañana.

¿ Que entrada hará V. entónces ?

Abonaré mi libro de caja con dicha suma.

Luego tomaré noticia de este pago en mi diario y haré la siguiente entrada en mi jornal: Tomas Urieta debe á caja.

Recibido en efectivo para saldar su cuenta \$3745.52.

Al fin traspasaré esta entrada al libro mayor abonando la cuenta de caja y cargando la cuenta de Urieta con dicha cantidad.

V. tiene razon.

Then I shall enter this transaction into my day-book.

Who is the debtor in this transaction ?

I or my stock of goods.

And who is the creditor ?

Mr. Thomas Urieta.

How will you then journalize this entry ?

Merchandise to Thomas Urieta 300 bags of coffee, as per invoice-book No. 1, \$3745.52.

Why do you say as per invoice-book No. 1 ?

Because all invoices are numbered, and this is the first one.

How will you transfer this entry from the journal into the ledger ?

I shall debit general merchandise with \$3745.52, and credit the same amount to Thomas Urieta.

When will you pay him ?

To-morrow.

What entry will you then make ?

I will credit my cash account with this amount.

I shall also enter this payment in my day-book, and make the following entry in my journal: Thomas Urieta to cash.

Received cash to balance account, \$3745.52.

I will finally transfer this entry to the ledger, crediting cash account, and debiting Urieta with the said amount.

You are right.

THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima quinta.

Lesson thirty fifth.

Cárdenas, 4 de Octubre, 18—.

Cardenas, 4 of October, 18—.

A los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca.,

To the Messrs. Joseph Ruiz and Co.,

Nueva York.

New York.

Muy Señores nuestros : En contestacion

Very Gentlemen our: In reply

á la de Vs. de 19 del pasado, les damos

to that of yours of 19 of the past, to them we give

las debidas gracias por la órden que Vs.

the due thanks for the order which your honors

han tenido á bien confiarnos. Vamos á

have held for well to confide to us. We are going to

ocuparnos de ella sin la ménos dilacion,

occupy ourselves with it without the least delay,

afin de poder darles aviso del resultado de

in order to be able to give them notice of the result of

nuestras operaciones dentro de pocos dias

our operations inside of few days.

Esten Vs. seguros de que pondrémos todo

May be your honors sure that we will apply all

nuestro esmero en su cumplimiento, en la

our care in their accomplishment, in the

persuasion de que nos continuarán honran-

persuasion that us they will continue honoring

do con la misma confianza, y no dudandos
 with the same confidence, and not doubting
que quedarán satisfechos como lo han
 that they will remain satisfied, as it have
stado siempre nuestros corresponsales.
 been always our correspondents.

Adjunta remitimos á Vs. nuestra
 Adjoined we remit to your honors our
última revista del mercado; y tendremos
 last review of the market; and we shall have
la satisfaccion de continuar remitiendo á
 the satisfaction to continue remitting to
Vs. cada quincena nuestros avisos
 your honors each fortnight our advices
acerca del estado de esta plaza, esperando
 respecting the state of this place, hoping
que sea de su aprobacion.
 that it may be with your approbation.

Entretanto, que Vs. se sirvan contes-
 Meanwhile, that your honors may please to answer
tarnos, somos **S. S. S.,**
 us, we are Your faithful servants,

Q. S. M. B.,
 Who your hands kiss,

J. M. Morales y Ca.
J. M. Morales & Co.

The same in good English.

Cárdenas, 4 de Octubre, 18—.
 A los Señores
 Don José Ruiz y Ca.,
 Nueva York.
 Muy Señores nuestros: En
 sortestacion á la de Vs. de 19
 del pasado, les damos las debidas

Cardenas, October 4, 18—.
 Messrs. Joseph Ruiz & Co.,
 New York.
 Gentlemen: In reply to your
 favor of the 19th ult., we would
 thank you for the order you

gracias por la órden que Vs. han tenido á bien confiarnos. Vamos á ocuparnos de ella sin la ménos dilacion, afín de poder darles aviso del resultado de nuestras operaciones dentro de pocos dias. Esten Vs. seguros de que pondremos todo nuestro esmero en su cumplimiento, en la persuasíon de que nos continuarán honrando con la misma confianza, y no dudandos que quedarán satisfechos como lo han estado siempre nuestros correspondientes.

Adjunta remitimos á Vs. nuestra última revista del mercado; y tendremos la satisfaccion de continuar remitiendo á Vs. cada quincena nuestros avisos acerca del estado de esta plaza, esperando que sea de su aprobacion.

Entretanto, que Vs. se sirvan contestarnos, somos

S. S. S.,
Q. S. M. B.,
J. M. MORALES Y CA.

have honored us with, and assure you that we will attend to it without delay, so as to be able to send full particulars in a few days.

You may rest assured also that we will spare no pains in your service, in the hope of securing thereby a continuance of that confidence which you have been pleased to accord us, and which we have so far succeeded in retaining with all our correspondents.

Attached to this you will find our last market report, which we will forward you regularly every fortnight as desired. In the mean time awaiting an answer, we remain

Yours respectfully,

J. M. MORALES & Co.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que leccion es esta?
¿Ha llegado el correo de la Isla de Cuba?
¿Han llegado algunas cartas?
¿Que fecha tiene la carta?
¿Han recibido nuestra última?
¿Que dicen de nuestra órden?
¿Cuando nos darán noticia del resultado de sus operaciones?

La trigésima quinta.
Si, señor, ha llegado.
Algunas y entre otras una de lo Señores J. M. Morales y Ca.
El 4 de Octubre, 18—.
Contestan nuestra última del 19 del pasado.
Nos dan las debidas gracias por ella.
Dentro de pocos dias.

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿ Cree V. que podemos estar seguros de su esmero ? | Ellos lo aseguran. |
| ¿ Que dicen respecto de esto ? | Que aplicarán todo su esmero en el cumplimiento de nuestra órden. |
| ¿ Que dicen mas ? | Que no dudan que quedarán satisfechos así como lo han estado siempre sus correspondientes. |
| ¿ Nos remiten su revista del mercado ? | Si, señor, y continuarán remitiendonos cada quince dias sus avisos. |
| ¿ Cree V. necesario contestar á esta carta ? | Si, señor, porque ellos nos piden que les contestemos. |
| ¿ Quien de los socios ha escrito la carta ? | El Señor Don José María Morales mismo. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

| TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH. | TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH. |
|---|--|
| ¿ Ha comprado V. una partida de tabacos ? | Have you bought a lot of cigars ? |
| Si, señor, diez mil Conchas y Londres. | Yes, sir, 10,000 Conchas and Londres. |
| ¿ De que fábrica ? | Whose make ? |
| De la de los Señores Cabañas Carbajal y Ca. | From Messrs. Cabañas Carbajal & Co. |
| ¿ Como ha pagado V. estos tabacos ? | How have you paid for these cigars ? |
| No los he pagado todavía, daré un pagaré. | I have not yet paid for them. I am to give my note. |
| ¿ Cuanto cuestan los Conchas ? | How much do the Conchas cost ? |
| Treinta pesos el millar. | Thirty dollars the thousand. |
| ¿ Y los Londres ? | And the Londres ? |
| Veinte pesos el millar. | Twenty dollars a thousand. |
| ¿ En que libro hará V. la primera entrada. | In which book will you make your first entry ? |
| Copiaré la factura de los tabacos bajo No. 2 en mi libro de facturas. | I will copy the invoice of the cigars as No. 2 in my invoice-book. |

¿Y que entrada se hará entonces?

Copiaré en el libro de pagarés el pagaré que daré á los Señores Cabañas Carbajal y Ca., bajo No. 1.

En que libro debe V. entónces tomar nota de estas dos transacciones?

En mi diario, del cual las pasaré al jornal.

¿Como las pasará V. á este libro?

Mercancias deben á Cabañas Carbajal y Ca., \$500.00.

Cabañas Carbajal y Ca., deben á obligaciones á pagar, \$500.00.

¿A cuantos dias vista dará V. el pagaré?

A noventa dias vista.

¿Que entrada hará V. cuando V. pagé el pagaré?

Abonaré mi libro de caja con \$500.00, apuntaré el pago en mi diario y entraré en el jornal como sigué: Obligaciones á pagar deben á caja, \$500.00.

¿Que cuentas se saldan de esta manera en el libro mayor?

La de Cabañas Carbajal y Ca., y la de obligaciones á pagar.

¿Y cuales quedarán abiertas?

La de mercancias que queda cargada y la de caja que queda abonada con \$500.00.

Despues venderé mis tabacos, y si recibiese mas de \$500.00, será una ganancia, si recibiere ménos, será una pérdida.

And what entry will follow?

I will copy into my bill-book the note which I give to Messrs. Cabañas Carbajal & Co., numbering it No. 1.

In what book must you then enter these two transactions?

In my day-book, from which I will pass them into the journal.

How will you pass them into that book?

General merchandise to Cabañas Carbajal & Co., \$500.00.

Cabañas Carbajal & Co., to bills payable, \$500.00.

At how many days' sight will you give your note?

At 90 days' sight.

What entry will you make on the payment of the note?

I will credit my cash account with \$500.00, enter the payment in my day-book, and pass it over into my journal, as follows: Bills payable, to cash, \$500.00.

Which accounts are thus balanced in the ledger?

That of Cabañas Carbajal & Co., and that of bills payable.

And which will remain open?

That of general merchandise, which is debited; and that of cash, which is credited with \$500.00.

I shall then sell my cigars; and if I receive more than \$500.00, the surplus will be profit, but if sold for less, the deficit will be a loss.

• Que significa descontar un pagaré?

Pagar el pagaré hoy en vez de pagarle en noventa días.

¿Cua. sería la consecuencia si V. le pagase hoy?

Ganaría el descuento del día.

¿Cuanto es el descuento del día? Seis por ciento anual.

¿Cuanto será seis por ciento de \$500.00 por noventa días?

Siete pesos y cincuenta centavos.

¿Como encuentra V. esta cantidad?

Multiplicando los \$500.00 por seis y partiendo el producto por cuatro.

¿Porqué por cuatro?

Porque noventa días es la cuarta parte de un año.

¿Cuantos días tiene el año comercial?

Trescientos sesenta.

¿En todos los países?

No, señor, solamente en los Estados Unidos.

¿Cuantos días tiene el año comercial en otros países?

Trescientos sesenta y cinco.

¿Que significa descontar un pagaré á premio?

Venderle con una ganancia.

¿Se hacen muchos negocios en la Bolsa aquí?

Muchísimos.

¿En la Inglaterra, la Francia, y los Indias Occidentales.

Hay muchos bancos aquí?

Más que en cualquier otro país del mundo.

What do you mean by discounting a note?

To pay the note to-day, instead of waiting until the 90 days shall have come round.

What would be the consequences if you should pay it to-day?

I would gain the discount.

How much does it amount to?

Six per cent. a year.

How much will that be on \$500.00, at 90 days?

Seven dollars and fifty cents.

How do you find this out?

By multiplying the \$500.00 by 6 and dividing the product by 4.

Why by 4?

Because 90 days are the quarter of a year.

How many days are reckoned to the year in business?

Three hundred and sixty.

In all countries?

No, sir; only in the United States.

How many days has it in other countries?

Three hundred and sixty-five.

What do you mean by discounting a note at a premium?

Selling it with profit.

Do they do much business at the Exchange here?

A great deal.

With England, France, and the West Indies.

Are there many banks here?

More than in any other country in the world.

THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima sexta.

Lesson thirty sixth.

Revista del Mercado.

Review of the Market.

Cárdenas, 4 de Octubre, 18--.

Cardenas, 4 of October, 18--.

Estado de la plaza: De algunos dias á

State of the place: Since a few days at

esta parte, ha habido en ella mas movi-

this place, there has been in it more move-

miento que de ordinario en el mercado

ment than of ordinary in the market

de frutos coloniales, y especialmente en

of products colonial, and especially in

el melado, de que hay muchos pedidos,

the molass, of which there are many demands,

á pesar de la subida considerable que ha

in spite of the advance considerable which it has

tenido. Este artículo está muy escaso, y

had. This article is very scarce, and

los arribos no son bastante numerosos

the arrivals not are enough numerous

para ocasionar una baja. El purgado

in order to occasion a decline. The purged

apenas se encuentra, y obtiene un alto

hardly is met, and obtains a high

precio. El ordinario mascabado se vendió
 price. The ordinary muscovado itself sold

ayer desde 3½ á 4 reales fuertes á bordo.
 yesterday from 3½ to 4 reals full on board.

Dentro de pocos dias tendrá lugar otra
 Within of few days will take place other

venta de cerca de 2000 bocoyes, que,
 sale of about 2000 hogsheads, which,

segun las apariencias, no se colocarán á
 according to the appearances, not will be disposed at

ménos, porque esta calidad está muy
 less, because this quality is very

solicitada para los Estados del Norte y
 demanded for the States of the north and

para Inglaterra.
 for England.

El azúcar en bruto está muy abundante;
 The sugar in rough is very abundant;

y aunque ha salido mucho para Europa,
 and although there has gone off much for Europe,

como continuan los pedidos, es de esperar
 as continue the demands, it is to expect

que suba en lugar de bajar. El azúcar
 that it may advance instead of to decline. The sugar

mascabado tiene poca demanda, y son
 muscovado has little demand, and are

moderados sus precios; el de tercera
 moderate its prices; that of third

calidad y el ordinario abundan mucho
 quality and the ordinary abound much;

el florete escasea.
 the florete is scarce.

El tabaco sube de día en día; escasea,
 The tobacco advances from day to day; is scarce,
y por consiguiente hay poca probabilidad
 and in consequence there is little probability

de que baje, á ménos de que no llegue
 that it may decline, unless that not may arriv

mucho de las vueltas; lo que no es de espe-
 much from the districts; what not is to expect,
rar, segun las noticias que tenemos de allí.
 according to the notices which we have from there.

Los fletes estan bajos, pues hay bastantes
 The freights are low, because there are enough
buques en la bahía.
 vessels in the bay.

Cambios, Lóndres, de 11 á 12 %; Paris,
 Exchange, London, from 11 to 12 %; Paris,
de 3 á 4 % de premio; Nueva York, de
 from 3 to 4 % of premium; New York, from
2½ á 3½ % de descuento.
 2½ to 3½ % of discount.

J. M. Morales y Ca.
 J. M. Morales and Co.

The same in good English.

REVISTA DEL MERCADO.

Cárdenas, 4 de Octubre, 18—.

ESTADO DE LA PLAZA: De algunos días á esta parte, ha habido en ella mas movimiento que de ordinario en el mercado de frutos coloniales, y especialmente en el

MARKET REPORT.

Cardenas, October 4, 18—.

STATE OF THE MARKET: There is of late greater activity in colonial products here than is usual at this period of the year, and especially in MOLASSES, which

MELADO, de que hay muchos pedidos, á pesar de la subida considerable que ha tenido. Este artículo está muy escaso, y los arribos no son bastante numerosos para ocasionar una baja. El purgado apenas se encuentra, y obtiene un alto precio. El ordinario mascabado se vendió ayer desde $3\frac{1}{2}$ á 4 reales fuertes á bordo. Dentro de pocos dias tendrá lugar otra venta de cerca de 2000 bocoyes, que, segun las apariencias, no se colocarán á ménos, porque esta calidad está muy solicitada para los Estados del Norte y para Inglaterra.

El **AZÚCAR** en bruto está muy abundante; y aunque ha salido mucho para Europa, como continúan los pedidos, es de esperar que suba en lugar de bajar. El azúcar mascabado tiene poca demanda, y son moderados sus precios; el de tercera calidad y el ordinario abundan mucho. El *florete* escasea.

El **TABACO** sube de dia en dia; escasea, y por consiguiente hay poca probabilidad de que baje, á ménos de que no llegue mucho de las vueltas; lo que no es de esperar, segun las noticias que tenemos de allí.

Los **FLETES** estan bajos, pues hay bastantes buques en la bahía.

CAMBIOS, Lóndres, de 11 á 12 %, París, de 3 á 4 % de premio; Nueva York, de $2\frac{1}{2}$ á $3\frac{1}{2}$ % de descuento.

J. M. MORALES Y CA.

is much in demand, in spite of its upward tendency.

This article is, in fact, very scarce, and arrivals few. As to the refined, it is not to be had; while common muscovado fetched yesterday $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 reals the cask of $5\frac{1}{2}$ gallons, delivered on board.

There is another sale of about 2000 hogsheads announced for to-morrow, but that is not likely to change hands at lower rates either, for this quality is much sought after for the United States and England.

Unrefined **SUGAR** is quite plenty; and although much has been shipped to Europe, it will advance rather than decline in price, inasmuch as new orders continue to come in. Muscovado is very little in demand; prices are moderate. No. 3 and common are abundant, but *florets* is getting scarce.

TOBACCO rises every day; and as there is not much on hand, it offers but little chance of a decline in price, unless new arrivals should increase—a thing not probable, however, if our advices be correct.

FREIGHTS are low, there being many vessels in the harbor.

EXCHANGE—on London, from 11 to 12 %, on Paris, from 3 to 4 % premium; New York, from $2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$ % discount.

J. M. MORALES & CO.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que lección es esta?

¡Nos han remitido los Señores J. M. Morales y Ca. la última revista?

¿Que dicen del estado de la plaza?

¿Con respecto á que clase de mercancías?

¿Que dicen especialmente del melado?

¿Hay habido muchos arribos del interior?

¿Que dicen del azúcar purgado?

¿Y el mascabado?

¿Y no hay ningunas apariencias que se despachará á ménos?

¿Es abundante el azúcar en bruto?

¿Y el azúcar mascabado?

¿Y las calidades inferiores?

¿Ha bajado el tabaco?

¿Porqué?

Que noticias tienen de las vueltas?

Como estan los fletes?

Como cotizan los cambios extranjeros y como los sobre Nueva York?

La trigésima sexta.

Si, señor, tiene fecha de 4 de corriente.

Que desde algunos dias ha habido en ella mas movimiento que de ordinario.

Con respecto á los géneros coloniales.

Que hay muchos pedidos á pesar de la subida considerable que ha tenido.

No son bastantes para ocasionar una baja.

Apenas se encuentra y es muy caro.

Se vendió desde $3\frac{1}{2}$ á 4 reales abordo.

No, señor, esta calidad está demasiado apetecida aquí y en Inglaterra.

Si, señor, aunque mucho ha salido para Europa.

Está poco buscado y sus precios son moderados.

Abundan, pero el florete escasea.

Sube de dia en dia.

Porque escasea y por consiguiente hay poca probabilidad de que baje.

Que no llegará mucho de ellas.

Estan bajos, pues hay muchos buques en la bahía.

Lóndres de 11 á 12% y Paris de 8 á 4% de premio, Nueva York de $2\frac{1}{2}$ á $3\frac{1}{2}$ % de descuento.

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

Ha vendido V. hoy alguna partida de mercancías?

He vendido los mismos 300 sacos de café, que compré al Señor Don Tomas Urieta hace pocos días.

¿A quien los vendió V?

Al Señor Don Jayme Phillips.

¿A que precio?

A nueve centavos la libra.

Con un beneficio de un centavo.

¿A cuanto monta toda la suma?

A \$4,213.71.

¿En que libro hará V. la primera entrada?

En mi libro de ventas, en el cual apuntaré esta venta bajo el No. 1.

Entonces haré la entrada en mi diario como sigue: Vendido en esta fecha 300 sacos de café segun libro de ventas No. 1, al Señor Don Jayme Phillips, \$4,213.71.

Del diario pasará la transaccion al jornal, Jayme Phillips debe á mercancías \$4,213.71.

Anotaré mi cuenta de mercancías en el libro mayor con dicha suma y abriré otra cuenta al Señor Don Jayme Phillips, la cual cargaré con los \$4,213.71.

¿Le pagará al contado el Señor Phillips?

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

Have you sold any goods to-day?

I have sold the 300 bags of coffee which I bought from Mr. Thomas Urieta a few days ago.

To whom did you sell them?

To Mr. James Phillips.

At what price?

At nine cents a pound.

At one cent profit.

How much does the whole amount to?

To \$4,213.71.

In what book will you make your first entry?

In my sales-book, as sale No. 1.

Then I shall make the following entry in my day-book: Sold this day 300 bags of coffee, as per sales-book No. 1, to Mr. James Phillips, \$4,213.71.

From the day-book I shall pass the transaction to the journal. James Phillips to general merchandise, \$4,213.71.

I shall credit general merchandise in ledger with said amount, and open another account to Mr. James Phillips, which I will debit with \$4,213.71.

Will Mr. Phillips pay you cash?

Me pagará al contado, con cuyo pago cargaré mi libro de caja, tomando al mismo tiempo noticia de él en mi diario, del cual lo pasaré al jornal como sigue: Caja debe á Jayme Phillips, \$4,218.71

¿Que cuenta se salda ahora en el libro mayor?

La cuenta del Señor Don Jayme Phillips.

¿Cuanto ha ganado V. en esta venta?

\$468.19.

¿Que entrada debe V. hacer en razon de esta ganancia?

Una sola entrada en el jornal, como sigue: Mercancías á ganancias y perdidas, \$468.91.

Cargaré la cuenta de mercancías en el libro mayor con dicha suma y abriré otra cuenta de ganancias y perdidas, la cual abonaré con la misma cantidad.

Y suponiendo que el Señor Phillips le hubiese dado su pagaré?

Entónces le habria copiado en el libro de pagarés como una obligacion á recibir No. 1, y habiendo tomado nota de la transaccion en el diario la habria pasado al jornal como sigue: Obligaciones á recibir á Jayme Phillips, \$4,218.71, y despues de 3 ó 4 meses, cuando él me pagará, entraria el pago cargando e libro de caja y el jornal como sigue: Caja á obligaciones á recibir, \$4,218.71.

Muy bien, yo veo que V. comprende todo esto.

He will pay me cash, which I will enter into my cash-book and day-book, from which I will pass it into the journal as follows: Cash to James Phillips, \$4,218.71.

Which account is balanced by it in the ledger?

The account of Mr. James Phillips.

How much have you made by this sale?

\$468.19.

What entry must you make in consequence of this gain?

A single entry in the journal, as follows: General merchandise to profit and loss, \$468.19.

I shall debit general merchandise in the ledger with the said amount, and will open another account for profit and loss, which I will credit with the same.

Supposing Mr. Phillips had given you his note?

Then I would have copied it into the bill-book as bill receivable No. 1, and having entered the transaction into the day-book, I would have passed it into the journal as follows: Bills receivable to James Phillips, \$4,218.71; and after 3 or 4 months, when he would have paid me, I would have entered the payment in the cash-book and journal as follows: Cash to bills receivable \$4,218.71.

Very well, I see you understand all this.

THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima séptima.

Lesson thirty seventh.

Cárdenas, 14 de Octubre, 18—.

Cardenas, 14 of October, 18—.

A los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca.,

To the Messrs. Joseph Ruiz and Co.,

Nueva York.

New York.

Muy Señores nuestros : Confirmamos á

Very Gentlemen our : We confirm to

Vs. la nuestra del 4 del corriente.

Your honors ours of the 4 of the instant.

Desde aquella fecha hemos ejecutado su

Since that date we have executed your

órden, é incluimos á Vs. el conoci-

order, and we inclose to your honors the bill of

miento y la factura, cuyo importe es de

lading and the invoice, whose amount is of

\$15,120.52, que dejamos cargados en su

\$15,120.52, which we leave charged in your

cuenta. Hemos embarcado los efectos en

account. We have embarked the goods in

el velero bergantin americano "Latona,"

the fast brig American "Latona,"

su capitan Martin. El buque es nuevo,

her captain Martin. The vessel is new,

y el capitan de mucha experiencia; se
 and the captain of much experience; herself
hará á la vela mañana.
 she will set to the sail to-morrow.

Hemos remitido el conocimiento y una
 We have remitted the bill of lading and one
copia de la factura á los Señores Balbiani
 copy of the invoice to the Messrs. Balbiani
y Ca. de la Habana, y dado orden de
 and Co. of Havana, and given order to
efectuar el seguro en aquella plaza.
 effect the insurance in that place.

Para reembolsarnos, acabamos de girar
 In order to reimburse us, we have just drawn
sobre Vs., á sesenta dias vista,
 on your honors, at sixty days' sight,

\$5000.00 á la orden de los S^{res} Echarte y Ca. de esta;
 \$5000.00 to the order of Messrs. Echarte and Co., of this place;

\$5000.00 á la orden de los S^{res} Burnham y Ca. de esta;
 \$5000.00 to the order of Messrs. Burnham and Co., of this place

\$5120.52 á la orden de los S^{res} Sama y Ca. de esta;
 \$5120.52 to the order of Messrs. Sama and Co., of this place;

que hemos asentado á su crédito en cuenta.
 which we have put to your credit in account.

Esperamos que nuestros giros tendrán la
 We hope that our drafts will have the
buena proteccion que merecen.
 good protection which they deserve.

Si Vs. se sirviesen confiar otra espe-
 If your honors should please to confide another specu-
culacion á nuestro cuidado, la desempeña-
 lation to our care, it we would dis-

rémos de un modo capaz de asegurarnos
 charge in a manner able to assure us

la continuacion de su confianza.

the continuation of your confidence.

Sin otro motivo, somos, con la mayor

Without other motive, we are, with the greatest

consideracion, S. S. S.,

consideration,

Your faithful servants,

Q. S. M. B.,

Who your hands kiss,

J. M. Morales y Ca.

J. M. Morales and Co.

Factura de Mercancias embarcadas por

Invoice of Merchandise embarked for

órden, cuenta y á la consignacion de los

order, account, and to the consignment of

Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca., por el

Messrs. Joseph Ruiz and Co., by the

bergantin americano "Latona," su capi-

brig American "Latona," her captain

tan Martin, con destino á Nueva York :

Martin, with destination to New York :

300 Sacos de Café, conteniendo 46,819 lbs.,

300 Sacks of Coffee, containing 46,819 lbs.,

á 8 cts., \$ 3,745.52

at 8 cents, ... 3,745.52

800 Bocoyes de Azúcar, No. 10 á 12, ó 12,800

800 Hogsheads of Sugar, No. 10 to 12, or 12,800

arrobas, á 7 reales, 11,200.00

arrobas, at 7 reals, 11,200.00

5000 Tabacos, Londres 1ª, á \$35.00, 175.00

5000 Cigars, London 1ª, at \$35.00, 175.00

S. E. y O.

Total..... \$15,120.52

Except Errors and Omissions.

Altogether... 15,120.52

The same in good English

Cárdenas, 14 de Octubre, 18—.

A los Señores

Don José Ruiz y Ca.,
Nueva York.

Muy Señores nuestros: Confirmamos á Vs. la nuestra del 4 del corriente. Desde aquella fecha hemos ejecutado su orden, é incluimos á Vs. el conocimiento y la factura, cuyo importe es de \$15,120.52, que dejamos cargados en su cuenta.

Hemos embarcado los efectos en el velero bergantin americano "Latona," su capitán Martin. El buque es nuevo, y el capitán de mucha experiencia; se hará á la vela mañana.

Hemos remitido el conocimiento y una copia de la factura á los Señores Balbiani y Ca. de la Habana, y dado orden de efectuar el seguro en aquella plaza.

Para reembolsarnos, acabamos de girar sobre Vs., á sesenta días vista,

\$5000.00 á la orden de los Señores Echarte y Ca. de esta;

\$5000.00 á la orden de los Señores Burnham y Ca. de esta;

\$5120.52 á la orden de los Señores Sama y Ca. de esta;

que hemos asentado á su crédito en cuenta. Esperamos que nuestros giros tendrán la buena protección que merecen.

Si Vs. se sirviesen confiar otra

Cardenas, Oct. 14, 18—.

Messrs. Joseph Ruiz & Co.,
New York:

Gentlemen: Confirming on respects of the 4th inst., we would inform you that we have executed your order, and inclose herein the bill of lading and invoice, whose amount of \$15,120.52 we have charged to your account.

The goods have been shipped on board the American brig "Latona," a new and fast sailing vessel, commanded by Captain Martin, who is an experienced officer. She will sail to-morrow.

A copy of the bill of lading and invoice have also been forwarded to Messrs. Balbiani & Co., of Havana, with the request that they will effect the insurance there.

We have drawn upon you at sixty days' sight, as follows:

\$5,000.00 to the order of Messrs. Echarte & Co. of this place;

\$5,000.00 to the order of Messrs. Burnham & Co. of this place.

\$5,120.52 to the order of Messrs. Sama & Co. of this place;

all placed to your credit, and which you will please duly honor.

Should you favor us with another order, you may re-

especulacion á nuestro cuidado, a desempeñarémos de un modo capaz de asegurarnos la continuacion de su confianza.

Sin otro motivo, somos, con la mayor consideracion,

S. S. S.,

Q. S. M. B.,

J. M. MORALES Y CA.

assured that we will attend to it in such a manner as to deserve a continuance of your confidence.

Yours respectfully,

J. M. MORALES & Co.

Factura de Mercancias embarcadas por orden, cuenta y á la consignacion de los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca., por el bergartin americano "Latona," en capitán Martin, con destino á Nueva York :

800 Sacos de Café, conteniendo 46,819 lbs., á 8 ctvs., \$3,745.52
800 Bocoyes de Azúcar, No. 10 á 12, 6 12,800 arrobas, á 7 reales, 11,200.00
5000 Tabacos, Londres 1^a, á \$35.00, 175.00

S. E. y O. Total..\$15,120.52

Invoice of goods shipped on board the American brig "Latona," Captain Martin, consigned to Messrs. Joseph Ruiz & Co., of New York, pursuant to their order and for their account.

800 Bags of Coffee, containing 46,819 lbs., at 8 cents \$3,745.52
800 hhds. of Sugar, No. 10 to 12, or 12,800 arrobas, at 7 reals ... 11,200.00
5000 Cigars, Londres 1^a, at \$35.00 175.00

E. & O. E. \$15,120.52

Questions and Answers for Conversation

Que leccion es esta ?
Hemos recibido cartas de Cárdenas ?
Que fecha tiene la carta ?
Que escriben ?
Nos han mandado los documentos del embarqué ?
A cuanto monta la factura ?
En que buque han embarcado los efectos ?

La trigésima séptima.
Hemos recibido una de los Señores Don J. M. Morales y Ca
Fecha 14 del corriente.
Que han ejecutado nuestra orden.
Nos han mandado el conocimiento y la factura.
A \$15,120.52 que han cargado á nuestra cuenta.
En el velero bergartin americano "Latona."

| | |
|--|--|
| ¿ Quien es el capitan ? | El capitan Martin. |
| ¿ Que dicen del buque ? | Que es nuevo. |
| ¿ Y que dicen del capitan ? | Que es de mucha experiencia. |
| ¿ Cuando se hará á la vela el buque ? | Se ha hecho á la vela el 15 de corriente. |
| ¿ Han escrito á los Señores Balbiani y Ca. ? | Les han remitido el corocimiento y una copia de la factura. |
| ¿ Que dicen del seguro del cargamento ? | Han dado orden de efectuar el seguro en la Habana. |
| ¿ Como se han reembolsado ? | Han girado sobre nosotros por todo el montante. |
| ¿ A cuantos dias vista ? | A sesenta dias vista. |
| ¿ A la orden de quien ? | A la orden de los Señores Echarte y Ca., Burnham y Ca., y Sama y Ca. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

¿ Que haria V. si V. recibiese mercancías á consignacion ?
Procuraria venderlas á flote.

Y si V. no pudiera venderlas á flote ?

Las descargaria para ponerlas en almacen.

¿ Que debe hacerse si las mercancías se han vendido ?

Una cuenta de venta para saber el neto producido.

Esta cuenta de venta con el montante del neto producido, sea en dinero ó sea en buenas letras se remite al comerciante, que ha hecho la consignacion.

¿ Cuantas entradas se hacen en los libros ?

Se hacen dos entradas.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

What would you do if you received a consignment of goods ?
I would endeavor to sell them afloat.

And if you could not do this ?

I would have them brought to the store.

What has to be done when the goods are sold ?

An account-sale has to be made out, in order to ascertain the net proceeds.

This account-sale, together with the net proceeds, be they money or good paper, has to be sent to the merchant who has made the consignment.

How many entries have to be made in the books ?

Two.

¿Cuáles son?

La primera es: Caja á ventas á comision.

La segunda es: Ventas á comision á caja.

Estas entradas se hacen, si el pago se hace en dinero, pero si el pago se hace en letras, el montante debe cargarse y abonarse á la cuenta de pagarés.

¿Que es hacer el balance general de las cuentas en el libro mayor?

Cerrar todas las cuentas.

¿Para qué?

Para conocer el resultado de cada una en particular y de todas en general.

¿Que entiende V. por cerrar una cuenta?

Cargar una cuenta con la cantidad que falta á su cargo para igualar su débito, y al contrario abonar una cuenta con lo que falta á su haber para igualar su cargo.

Todas las cuentas que presentan ganancia ó pérdida se saldan por ganancias y pérdidas.

¿Que se reúne por este medio en esta cuenta?

Todas las ganancias y pérdidas de las otras cuentas.

¿Por que cuenta se salda al fin la cuenta de ganancias y pérdidas?

Por la del capital.

¿Como puede verse si hay ganancia ó no?

Which are they?

The 1st is, Cash to commission sales.

The 2d is, Commission sales to cash.

These entries are made if the payment is in cash; but if notes are given, the amount is charged and credited to the account of bills payable and receivable.

What do you call a general balance of the ledger?

Closing all the accounts of this book.

For what purpose?

In order to know the result of each account in particular, and of all in general.

What do you call closing an account?

Adding as much to the debit side as will equalize it with the credit side, or to the credit side as much as will equalize it with the debit side.

All accounts which show a profit or a loss are balanced by profit and loss.

What is collected together thus in this account?

All the profits and losses of the other accounts.

By what is the profit and loss account finally balanced?

By the capital.

How can we see if there is a profit or not?

Si el débito de esta cuenta es mas que el haber, es ganancia; y si el haber es mas que el débito, es pérdida.

¿No hay otros libros en una casa de comercio que los dichos?

Hay algunos otros libros auxiliares.

¿Como se llaman?

Un libro de almacen, un libro de cuentas corrientes y un copiadore de cartas.

¿Que contiene el libro de almacen?

Un inventario de todas las mercancías que se hallan en el almacen.

¿Que son cuentas corrientes?

Las cuentas abiertas de todas las personas con quienes se hacen negocios.

¿Que es el copiadore de cartas?

Un libro en el cual se copian todas las cartas que se escriben en la casa.

Que significan las cuatro letras al pié de la factura S. E. y O?

Salvo errores y omisiones.

¿Cuántos vapores corren entre la Isla de Cuba y los Estados Unidos?

Siete.

Cuales son?

Dos entre Nueva York y la Habana, dos entre Nueva Orleans y la Habana, uno entre Charleston y la Habana, otro entre Mobile y la Habana, y uno entre Nueva York y Matanzas.

If the debit of this account is greater than the credit, there is a profit; and if the credit is greater than the debit, there is a loss.

Are there no other books in commercial house than those mentioned above?

There are a few auxiliary books.

How are they called?

A store-book, an account-current book, and a letter-book.

What does the store-book contain?

An inventory of all the merchandise in the store.

What are accounts current?

The accounts opened with all those who do business with the house.

What is the letter-book?

A book in which is kept a copy of every letter sent.

What do the letters S. E. y O. at the foot of the bill mean?

Errors and omissions excepted.

How many steamers ply between Cuba and the United States?

Seven.

Which are they?

Two between New York and Havana, two between New Orleans and Havana, one between Charleston and Havana, one between Mobile and Havana, and one between New York and Matanzas.

THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima octava

Lesson thirty eighth.

Nueva York, 5 de Noviembre, 18—.

New York, 5 of November, 18—.

A los Señores J. M. Morales y Ca.,

To the Messrs. J. M. Morales and Co.,

Cárdenas.

Cardenas.

Muy Señores nuestros : Hemos recibido

Very Gentlemen our: We have received

las cartas de Vs. del 4 y 14 del pasado,

the letters of your honors of the 4 and 14 of the ultimo,

y la factura de café y de azúcar que

and the invoice of coffee and of sugar which

acompañaba la última : está exacta, á

accompanied the latter: it is exact,

excepcion de un déficit de 5 á 6 libras en

excepting a deficit of 5 to 6 pounds in

el peso de cada bocoy de azúcar.

the weight of each hogshead of sugar.

Los efectos han llegado : la calidad del

The goods have arrived: the quality of the

azúcar es bastante buena, pero no podemos

sugar is enough good, but not we can

decir lo mismo del café ; es muy ordinario

say the same of the coffee; it is very ordinary.

Otra casa de esa nos ha enviado por el

Other house of that place us has sent by the

mismo buque una partida de la misma clase
 same vessel a lot of the same quality

á 1 centavo ménos la libra. Esperamos
 at 1 cent less the pound. We hope

que Vs. no rehusarán hacernos alguna
 that your honors not will refuse to make us some

rebaja en atencion á esta gran diferencia.
 reduction in consideration to this great difference.

Incluimos á Vs. muestras de su café y
 We inclose to your honors samples of their coffee and

del de nuestros amigos, para que Vs.
 of that of our friends, in order that your honors

puedan hacer comparacion entre uno
 may be able to make comparison between one

y otro.
 and other.

Estamos muy contentos del embase del
 We are very content with the packing of the

azúcar, y les recomendamos el mismo
 sugar, and to them we recommend the same

cuidado para nuestras órdenes futuras.
 care for our orders future.

Han sido bien acogidas sus letras de
 Have been well accepted your drafts of

\$15,120.52; é incluyendo nuestra última
 \$15,120.52; and inclosing our last

revista del mercado, quedamos, sin otro
 review of the market, we remain, without other

particular,
 particular,

S. S. S.,
 Your faithful servants,

Q. S. M. B.,
 Who your hands kiss,

José Ruiz y Ca.
 Joseph Ruiz and Co.

The same in good English.

Nueva York,
5 de Noviembre, 18—.

A los Señores J. M. Morales y Ca.,
Cárdenas.

Muy Señores nuestros: Hemos recibido las cartas de Vs. del 4 y 14 del pasado, y la factura de café y de azúcar que acompañaba la última: está exacta, á excepción de un déficit de 5 á 6 libras en el peso de cada bocoy de azúcar.

Los efectos han llegado: la calidad del azúcar es bastante buena, pero no podemos decir lo mismo del café; es muy ordinario. Otra casa de esa nos ha enviado por el mismo buque una partida de la misma clase á 1 centavo ménos libra. Esperamos que Vs. no rehusarán hacernos alguna rebaja en atencion á esta gran diferencia. Incluimos á Vs. muestras de su café y del de nuestros amigos, para que Vs. puedan hacer comparacion entre uno y otro.

Estamos muy contentos del embase del azúcar, y les recomendamos el mismo cuidado para nuestras órdenes futuras.

Han sido bien acogidas sus letras de \$15,120.52; é incluyendo nuestra última revista del mercado, quedamos, sin otro particular;

S. S. S.,

Q. S. M. B.,

JOSÉ RUIZ Y CA.

New York, Nov. 5, 18—.

Messrs. J. M. Morales & Co.,
Cárdenas.

Gentlemen: We have received your favors of the 4th and 14th ult., together with the invoice of coffee and sugar sent. Every thing came to hand in good order, with the exception of a deficit in weight of 5 to 6 pounds in each hogshead. The quality of the sugar is satisfactory, but not that of the coffee, which is very common compared with a parcel forwarded to us by another house in the same vessel, and at one cent less a pound. We hope that you will not refuse to make us some reduction in consideration of this great difference; and in order that you may be the better able to judge for yourselves, we inclose a sample of both coffees.

The packing of the sugar pleased us very much, and we should like you to be as careful in future.

Your drafts for \$15,120.52 have been accepted, and will be duly honored. Inclosing our latest report, we remain,

Yours respectfully,

JOSEPH RUIZ & CO

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ¿ Que lección es esta ? | La trigésima octava. |
| ¿ De donde ha llegado esta carta ? | De Nueva York. |
| Que fecha tiene ? | El 5 de Noviembre, 18—. |
| ¿ De cual casa viene ? | De la de los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca. |
| ¿ Han recibido nuestras últimas cartas ? | Han recibido las cartas del 4 y 14 del mes pasado. |
| ¿ Que dicen de la factura de azúcar y de café ? | Que está exacta á excepcion de un déficit de 5 á 6 libras en el peso de cada bocoy. |
| ¿ Han llegado ya los efectos ? | Si, señor. |
| ¿ Que dicen del azúcar ? | Que la calidad es bastante buena. |
| ¿ Que dicen del café ? | Que no pueden decir lo mismo del café. |
| ¿ Porque ? | Porque es muy ordinario. |
| ¿ Como pueden decir esto ? | Porque otra casa les ha enviado por el mismo buque una partida de la misma calidad á 1 centavo ménos en libra. |
| ¿ Quieren por eso que les hagamos una rebaja ? | Esperan que no rehusaremos hacerles alguna rebaja en atencion á esta gran diferencia. |
| ¿ Nos han mandado muestras ? | Nos han incluido una muestra del nuestro y otra del café de sus amigos. |
| ¿ Para qué ? | Para que podamos hacer comparacion entre uno y otro. |
| ¿ Que dicen del embase del azúcar ? | Que están muy contentos y nos recomiendan el mismo cuidado para sus órdenes futuras. |
| ¿ Han aceptado nuestros giros ? | Han acojido bien nuestras letras de \$15,120.52. |
| ¿ Que escriben del mercado ? | Nos incluyen su última revista. |
| ¿ Ha leído V. esta revista ? | Si, señor. |
| ¿ Dónde está ? | En la lección trigésima sexta. |
| En que página ? | En la página tricentésim octava. |
| ¿ Como está escrita ? | Está muy bien escrita. |
| ¿ Quien la ha firmado ? | José Ruiz y Ca. |

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

- Ha estado V. en la Bolsa esta mañana ?
 Si, señor, y he visto á algunos corredores.
 ¿ Cual es el estado de la plaza ?
 Ha habido una alteracion en frutos coloniales.
 ¿ Como está el café ?
 El café está muy solicitado.
 ¿ Han llegado muchas remesas del campo ?
 Las remesas no han sido de consideracion.
 ¿ A que precio se vendió el ordinario ?
 Ayer se vendió á 8 centavos la libra.
 ¿ Para que pais hay mas pedidos ?
 Para la Holanda.
 ¿ Hay mucho azúcar en el mercado ?
 Hay azúcar mascabado en abundancia.
 ¿ Para donde se embarcan muchas partidas ?
 Para Amsterdam y Lóndres.
 ¿ Que se dice del tabaco ?
 Sube y escasea diariamente.
 ¿ Han llegado muchas mercancías de los Estados Unidos ?
 Si, señor, y especialmente arroz de la Carolina del Sur.
 ¿ Y se vende fácilmente ?
 Varias partidas se han comprado por especulacion.
 ¿ A que precio ?

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

- Have you been to the Exchange this morning ?
 Yes, sir, and I have seen some brokers.
 What is the state of the market ?
 There has been a change in colonial products.
 How is coffee ?
 Coffee is much in demand.
 Have there been many arrivals from the country ?
 The arrivals have been few.
 How much did common sell for ?
 Yesterday it sold for 8 cents per lb.
 For which countries are the greatest orders ?
 For Holland.
 Is there much sugar in the market ?
 There is much muscovado.
 Whither is most of it shipped ?
 To Amsterdam and London.
 What do they say of tobacco ?
 It rises daily and is scarce.
 Have many goods come from the United States ?
 Yes, sir, and especially much rice from South Carolina.
 And does it sell readily ?
 Several lots have been bought on speculation.
 At what price ?

A 7 reales fuertes la arroba.

¿ Como se vende la manteca ?

De \$17 á \$18 el casco.

¿ Como están los cambios ?

Sobre Lóndres á premio y sobre Nueva York á descuento.

¿ Cual es el cambio sobre Lóndres ?

El once por ciento de premio.

¿ Y sobre Nueva York ?

El cinco por ciento de descuento.

¿ Hay muchos buques ahora en el puerto ?

No, señor, y los fletes están bastante altos.

¿ Quanto se paga para Inglaterra ?

Una y media libra esterlina por tonelada.

¿ No podria fletar una goleta ?

Tengo una bonita goleta holandesa de doscientas toneladas, la cual le daré á V. por la suma redonda de cuatrocientas libras esterlinas.

¿ Para que puerto quiere V. despachar el buque ?

Para Cowes y un mercado.

Muy bien, le enviaré á V. el contrato de fletamento.

¿ Conoce V. al capitán ?

Es un hombre de mucha experiencia.

¿ Que mercancías quiere V. embarcar ?

Poco mas ó ménos ochocientas cajas de azúcar.

¿ No quiere V. embarcar otras mercancías ?

Algunos millares de tabacos.

Pueden muy bien embarcarse en la camara del capitán.

Si, señor.

At 7 reals the arroba.

How does lard sell ?

From 17 to 18 dollars the firkin.

How is the exchange ?

On London at a premium and on New York at a discount.

What is the exchange on London ?

At 11 % premium.

And on New York ?

At 5 % discount.

Are there many vessels in the harbor now ?

No, sir, and freight is tolerably high.

What is the freight for England ?

One pound sterling and a half per ton.

Could I not charter a schooner ?

I have a nice Dutch schooner of two hundred tons, which I will give you for the round sum of 400 pounds sterling.

For which port will you clear the vessel ?

For Cowes and a market.

Very well, I will send you the charter-party.

Do you know the captain ?

He is a man of much experience.

What kind of goods do you wish to send ?

About eight hundred boxes of sugar.

Do you not wish to send any thing else ?

A few thousand cigars.

They can be put in the captain's cabin.

Yes, sir.

THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.

Literal Translation.

Leccion trigésima nona

Lesson thirty ninth.

Cárdenas, 15 de Noviembre, 18—.

Cardenas, 15 of November, 18—.

A los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca.,

To the Messrs. Joseph Ruiz and Co.,

Nueva York.

New York.

Muy Señores nuestros : Vemos con senti-

Very Gentlemen our : We see with regret,

miento, por la suya de 5 del corriente,

by yours of 5 of the instant,

que atendido el precio Vs. encuentran

that respecting the price, your honors find

nuestro café inferior al que les ha enviado

our coffee inferior to the which them has sent

otra casa de esta ciudad por el mismo

other house of this city by the same

buque. Una plaza como la nuestra, que

vessel. A place like ours, which

hace un comercio considerable, está por

makes a commerce considerable, is for

la misma razon sujeta necesariamente á

the same reason subject necessarily to

continuas fluctuaciones, y presenta cada

continual fluctuations, and presents each

semana variaciones en el precio de los
week variations in the price of the

frutos. Aunque nuestros vecinos hayan
fruits. Although our neighbors may have

cargado su café en el mismo buque que
shipped their coffee in the same vessel as

nosotros, es probable que hayan recibido
we, it is probable that they may have received

antes las órdenes de Vs., porque nosotros
before the orders of your honors, for we

compramos inmediatamente despues del
did buy immediately after the

recibo de la suya; y estando seguros de
receipt of yours; and being sure of

que desde aquel dia hasta el de la salida
that since that day till that of the sailing

del buque no se ha hecho ninguna compra
of the vessel not itself has made any purchase

á ménos que la nuestra, no podemos
at less than ours, not we can

convenir con Vs. que la desproporcion
agree with your honors that the disproportion

en el precio debe estimularnos á hacer
in the price must induce us to make

acrificios. No podemos explicar la causa
sacrifices. Not we can explain the cause

del déficit en el peso del azúcar; ponemos
of the deficit in the weight of the sugar; we put

siempre la mayor atencion para precaver
always the greatest diligence in to prevent

semejantes ocurrencias, pero repetidas
 similar occurrences, but repeated

experiencias nos han convencido de que
 experiences us have convinced that

es imposible evitarlas. Este déficit no se
 it is impossible to avoid them. This deficit not itself

ha causado en el almacén, no podemos
 has caused in the store, not we can

probar que lo haya sido abordo, mas al
 prove that it may have been on board, but to the

fin, supuesto que el hecho es positivo, pues
 end, supposed that the fact is positive, for

tenemos la mayor confianza en la palabra
 we have the greatest confidence in the word

de Vs., nos sometemos á esta pérdida,
 of your honors, us we submit to this loss,

y hemos abonado la diferencia á Vs.
 and we have credited the difference to your honors

en cuenta, por cuyo medio viene á quedar
 in account, by which mean comes to remain

terminado este desagradable asunto.
 terminated this disagreeable affair.

Tenemos el honor de ser
 We have the honor to be

S. S. S.,
 Your faithful servants,

Q. S. M. B.,
 Who your hands kiss,

J. M. Morales y Ca
J. M. Morales & Co.

The same in good English.

Cárdenas,

15 de Noviembre, 18—.

A los Señores

Don José Ruiz y Ca.,
Nueva York.

Muy Señores nuestros: Vemos con sentimiento, por la suya de 5 del corriente, que atendido el precio Vs. encuentran nuestro café inferior al que les ha enviado otra casa de esta ciudad por el mismo buque. Una plaza como la nuestra, que hace un comercio considerable, está por la misma razon sujeta necesariamente á continuas fluctuaciones, y presenta cada semana variaciones en el precio de los frutos. Aunque nuestros vecinos hayan cargado su café en el mismo buque que nosotros, es probable que hayan recibido ántes las órdenes de Vs., porque nosotros compramos inmediatamente despues del recibo de la suya; y estando seguros de que desde aquel dia hasta el de la salida del buque no se ha hecho ninguna compra á ménos que la nuestra, no podemos convenir con Vs. que la proporcion en el precio debe estimularnos á hacer sacrificios.

No podemos explicar la causa del déficit en el peso del azúcar; ponemos siempre la mayor atencion para precaver semejantes ocurrencias, pero repetidas experiencias nos han convencido de

Cardenas, November 15, 18—.

Messrs. Joseph Ruiz & Co.,
New York.

Gentlemen: We are very sorry to see, by your letter of the 5th instant, that you find our coffee inferior in quality to that sent to you at a lower price by another house, on board of the same vessel. A place doing so large a business as ours is in consequence subject to continual fluctuations, and presents every week changes of price in the different staples on hand.

Although our neighbors may have shipped by the same vessel as we did, it is more than probable that they have received their order some days before us, for we bought immediately on receipt of your favor; and being sure that from that day to the sailing of the vessel no purchase has been made at a lower figure than ours, we do not feel called upon to make the desired deduction.

The deficit in weight of sugar surprises us also: doing our utmost to avoid these leakages, experience has taught us that it is impossible to escape them

que es imposible evitarlas. Este déficit no se ha causado en el almacén, no podemos probar que lo haya sido abordo, mas al fin, supuesto que el hecho es positivo, pues tenemos la mayor confianza en la palabra de Vs., nos sometemos á esta pérdida, y hemos bonado la diferencia á Vs. en cuenta, por cuyo medio viene á quedar terminado este desagradable asunto.

Tenemos el honor de ser,

S. S. S.,

Q. S. M. B.,

J. M. MORALES Y CA.

wholly. We are sure that it has not taken place in our store, but we could not trace it on board. Feeling, however, the greatest confidence in your word, we have assumed the loss upon ourselves, by crediting your account with the difference, hoping thereby to set this matter to rest.

We have the honor to remain

Yours respectfully,

J. M. MORALES & Co.

Questions and Answers for Conversation.

¿Que lección es esta?

¿De quienes hemos recibido esta carta?

¿Que fecha tiene la carta?

¿Contestan ellos á nuestra última?

¿Que dicen?

¿Quieren hacer alguna rebaja?

¿Que dicen del otro café que hemos recibido á 1 centavo ménos por el mismo buque?

Que dicen mas?

¿Como explican el déficit en el peso del azúcar?

La trigésima nona.

De los Señores J. M. Morales y Ca., de Cárdenas.

El 15 de Noviembre, 18—.

Si, señor.

Que ven con sentimiento que hemos encontrado su café inferior.

No, señor, dicen que era el mejor que podia obtenerse á este precio en el mercado.

Que aquella órden debe haber sido dada con anterioridad, porque ellos han comprado inmediatamente despues del recibo de la que á ellos d'rijimos.

Dicen que están seguros que ninguna compra á ménos se ha hecho desde aquel dia hasta el de la salida del buque.

No pueden explicarle.

¿Como se excusan?

¿No puede haberse causado este déficit en el almacén?

¿Y abordo del buque?

¿Quieren hacernos por eso una rebaja?

¿Que dicen al fin?

Diciendo que ponen siempre la mayor diligencia en precaver semejantes ocurrencias.

Escriben que no se ha causado allí.

Dicen que no pueden probar que haya sido causado abordo.

Nos han abonado la diferencia en nuestra cuenta.

Que por esto medio vendrá á quedar terminado este desagradable asunto.

Sentences for Oral Translation.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

¿Ha tomado el bergantin "Latona" todo su cargamento?

Ha acabado de cargar desde esta mañana.

¿Y cuando le despachará V.?

Le despacharé esta tarde.

¿Que debe hacerse para despachar un buque?

Primero el capitán debe despacharse del consul de su nación?

¿Y que debe V. hacer?

Pediré al capitán del puerto un permiso de salida.

¿No hay otros documentos que arreglar?

Si, señor, daré al capitán una cuenta de venta del cargamento que ha traído y que hemos vendido por cuenta del buque.

Luego le daré una factura del cargamento que llevará de aquí.

Y finalmente le entregaré una cuenta de todos los gastos que hemos pagado por el buque en este puerto.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO SPANISH.

Has the brig "Latona" taken in all her freight?

She is loaded since this morning.

And when will you clear her?

I will clear her this afternoon.

What has to be done to clear a vessel?

The captain must first report himself to his consul.

And what have you to do?

I must ask a permit of the captain of the port.

Are there no other papers to be made out?

Yes, sir; I must give to the captain an account sale of his inward cargo, which we have sold for account of the vessel.

Then I shall give him an invoice of the outward cargo.

And finally I shall give him a bill of all the expenses we have incurred in behalf of the vessel in this port.

De todas estas cuentas se hace una cuenta corriente entre el buque y nosotros.

¿Que documentos debe firmar el capitán?

Cuatro conocimientos.

¿Que contiene un conocimiento?

Una lista exacta del cargamento y el nombre de los consignatarios.

¿Porqué se firman cuatro conocimientos?

Uno se da al capitán, otro se manda al consignatario, el tercero se queda en la casa que despacha el buque y el cuarto se hace para si uno de los otros se perdiese.

No hay otras formalidades?

Es conveniente hacer legalizar por el consul del país para donde sale el buque la factura del cargamento que lleva.

¿Porqué?

Afin de que el buque no tenga ningunas dificultades con la aduana del puerto de su destino.

¿No se entrega una carta al capitán?

Si, señor, una carta de recomendación al consignatario.

Para qué?

Para que le pague el flete.

¿Que debe V. hacer si hay pasajeros a bordo?

Debo hacerles pagar su pasaje.

¿Y que documentos debe V. proporcionarles?

Sus pasaportes.

Of all these an account current has to be made between the vessel and ourselves.

What papers has the captain to sign?

Four bills of lading.

What does a bill of lading contain?

An exact statement of the cargo and the names of the consignees.

Why are four bills of lading signed?

One is given to the captain, one is sent to the consignee, the third remains with the house which clears the vessel, and the fourth is made out in case any of the others should be lost.

Are there no other formalities to be complied with?

It is usual to have the invoice of the outward cargo certified by the consul for the place to which the vessel is going.

Why?

So that the vessel may not have any difficulty with the custom-house officers of the place to which it is destined.

Must not a letter be given to the captain?

Yes, sir, a letter of recommendation to the consignee.

For what purpose?

That he may pay him for the freight.

What must you do if there are passengers on board?

I must collect their fare.

And what paper have you to get for them?

Their passports.

LECCION CUADRAGESIMA.

Extracto de los Libros de José Ruiz y Ca.

LIBRO DE FACTURAS.

1. *Factura de 800 sacos de café vendidos á los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca.*

800 sacos de café con peso neto de 46,819 libras á 8 ctvs. \$8,745.52

S. E. y O.

THOMAS URIETA.

Nueva York, 9 de Octubre, 18—.

2. *Factura de 20,000 tabacos vendidos á los Señores Don José Ruiz y Ca.*

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| 10,000 tabacos, Londres 1 ^a , á \$20..... | \$200.00 |
| 10,000 tabacos, Conchas, á \$80..... | 800.00 |
| | <u>\$500.00</u> |

S. E. y O.

CABAÑAS CARBAJAL Y CA.

Nueva York, 15 de Octubre, 18—.

LIBRO DE VENTAS.

Nueva York, 11 de Octubre, 18—.

1. Vendido al Señor Don Jayme Phillips, 800 sacos de café, conteniendo en todo 46,819 libras, á 9 ctvs... \$4,213.71

17

Vendido á los Señores Don G. Smith y Ca. 10,000 tabacos, Londres 1^a, á \$25..... \$250.00

18

2. Vendido al Señor Don José Aldama 10,000 tabacos, Conchas, á \$40..... \$400.00

FORTIETH LESSON.

Extract from the Books of Joseph Ruiz & Co.

INVOICE-BOOK

1. *Invoice of 800 bags of coffee sold to Messrs. Joseph Ruiz & Co.*

800 bags of coffee, weighing net 46,819 lbs., at 8 cts. \$3,745.52

E. & O. E.

THOMAS URIETA.

New York, October 9, 18—.

2. *Invoice of 20,000 cigars sold to Messrs. Joseph Ruiz & Co.*

10,000 cigars, Londres 1°, at \$20 \$200.00

10,000 cigars, Conchas, at \$30..... 300.00

\$500.00

E. & O. E.

CABAÑAS CARBAJAL & Co.

New York, October 15, 18—.

SALES-BOOK

New York, October 11, 18—.

1. Sold to James Phillips, Esq., 800 bags of coffee, weighing net 46,819 lbs., at 9 cts..... \$4,218.71

17

2. Sold to Messrs. W. Smith & Co. 10,000 cigars, Londres 1°, at \$25.00 \$250.00

18

3. Sold to Joseph Aldama, Esq., 10,000 cigars, Conchas, at \$40.00..... \$400.00

15

LIBRO DE CAJA.

| Debe. | | Nueva York, 18—. | | Haber. | | | |
|--------|--|------------------|----|--------|------------------------------------|---------|----|
| Oct. 1 | A José Ruiz depositado en efectivo | \$10,000 | 00 | Oct. 9 | Por Mercancías pagadas á T. Urieta | \$3,745 | 52 |
| " 11 | A Mercancías vendidas á J. Phillips..... | 4,218 | 71 | | | | |

LIBRO DE PAGARES.

Obligaciones á recibir.

| No. | Fechas. | Libradores. | Cargo de | A favor de | Plazos. | Vencimientos. | Sumas. |
|-----|----------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|
| 1. | N. Y., 17 Oct. | G. Smith y Ca. | Los mismos. | J. Ruiz y Ca. | 30 días. | 16 Nov. | \$250.00 |
| 2. | N. Y., 18 Oct. | J. Aldama | Del mismo. | " " | " " | 17 Nov. | 400.00 |

Obligaciones á pagar.

| No. | Fechas. | Libradores. | Contra de. | A favor de | Plazos. | Vencimientos. | Sumas. |
|-----|---------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------------|----------|---------------|----------|
| 1. | N. Y. 18 Oct. | José Ruiz y Ca. | Los mismos. | C. Carbajal y Ca. | 30 días. | 14 Nov. | \$300. X |

DIARIO.

Nueva York, 1° de Octubre, 18—.

Habiendo José Ruiz y su hermano, Pedro Ruiz, formado una sociedad mercantil bajo la razon de José Ruiz y Ca., segun los artículos de convenio, José Ruiz contribuye:

Efectivo depositado en banco segun libro de caja. \$10,000.00

9

Comprado al contado á Tomas Urieta 300 sacos de café, segun libro de facturas No. 1. \$3,745.52

11

Vendido al contado á Jayme Phillips 300 sacos de café, segun libro de ventas No. 1. \$4,218.71

15

Comprado 20,000 tabacos á Cabañas Carbajal y Ca., por nuestro pagaré No. 1, á 30 dias vista, segun libro de facturas No. 2, importe \$500.00

17

Vendido 10,000 tabacos á G. Smith y Ca., por su pagaré No. 1, á 30 dias vista, segun libro de ventas No. 2, importe \$250.00

18

Vendido 10,000 tabacos á J. Aldama, por su pagaré No. 2, á 30 dias vista, segun libro de ventas No. 3, importe \$400.00

CASH-BOOK.

| Dr | | New York, 18—. | Cr. | | |
|--------|--|----------------|--------|--|------------|
| Oct. 1 | To Joseph Ruiz, deposited Cash..... | \$10,000 00 | Oct. 9 | By Merchandise, bought from T. Urieta..... | \$3,745 52 |
| " 11 | To Merchandise sold to J. Phil- lips | 4,218 71 | | | |

BILL-BOOK.

Bills Receivable.

| No. | Drawn at | Date. | Drawn by | On whom. | Whose favor. | Time. | Due. | Amount |
|-----|----------|---------|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------|---------|----------|
| 1. | N. York. | 17 Oct. | W. Smith & Co. | on themselves | J. Ruiz & Co. | 30 days. | 16 Nov. | \$250.00 |
| 2. | " | 18 " | J. Aldama. | on himself. | " | " | 17 " | 400.00 |

Bills Payable.

| No. | Drawn at | Date. | Drawn by | On whom. | Whose favor. | Time. | Due. | Amount |
|-----|----------|---------|------------------|---------------|----------------------|----------|---------|----------|
| 1. | N. York. | 15 Oct. | Jose. Ruiz & Co. | on themselves | C. Carbajal & Co. | 30 days. | 14 Nov. | \$600.00 |

DAY-BOOK.

New York, October 1st, 18—.

Joseph Ruiz and his brother, Peter Ruiz, having, as per articles of agreement dated 1st inst., entered into partnership, advance the following as capital:

Joseph Ruiz, by Cash deposited as per Cash-book\$10,000.00

9

Bought 800 bags of coffee of Thomas Urieta, for cash, as per Invoice-book No. 1 \$3,745.52

11

Sold 300 bags of coffee to James Phillips, for cash, as per Sales-book No. 1. \$4,218.71

15

Bought 20,000 cigars of Cabañas Carbajal & Co., on our note No. 1, at 30 days' sight, as per Invoice-book No. 2 \$500.00

17

Sold 10,000 cigars to W. Smith & Co., on his Note No. 1, at 30 days' sight, as per Sales-book No. 2..... \$250.00

18

Sold 10,000 cigars to J. Aldama, on his note No. 2, at 30 days' sight, as per Sales-book No. 3 \$400.00

JORNAL

Nueva York, 1^o de Octubre, 18—.

| | | | |
|----|---|---------------------|---------------------|
| 2. | Caja..... | \$ 10,000 00 | |
| 1. | á José Ruiz | | |
| | Depositado en efectivo..... | | \$ 10,000 00 |
| | ———— 9 ———— | | |
| 3. | Mercancías..... | 8,745 52 | |
| 2. | á Caja, | | |
| | Comprado á Tomas Urieta, segun libro | | |
| | de facturas No. 1 y libro de caja folio 1 | | 8,745 52 |
| | ———— 11 ———— | | |
| 2. | Caja..... | 4,218 71 | |
| 3. | á Mercancías, | | |
| | Vendido á Jayme Phillips, segun libro de | | |
| | ventas No. 1 y libro de caja folio 1... | | 4,218 71 |
| | ———— 15 ———— | | |
| 3. | Mercancías..... | 500 00 | |
| 4. | á Obligaciones á pagar, | | |
| | Comprado á Cabañas Carbajal y Ca., se- | | |
| | gun libro de facturas No. 2 y libro de | | |
| | Pagarés No. 1..... | | 500 00 |
| | ———— 17 ———— | | |
| 5. | Obligaciones á recibir..... | 250 00 | |
| 3. | á Mercancías, | | |
| | Vendido á G. Smith y Ca., segun libro de | | |
| | ventas No. 2 y libro de pagarés No. 1. | | 250 00 |
| | ———— 18 ———— | | |
| 5. | Obligaciones á recibir..... | 400 00 | |
| 3. | á Mercancías, | | |
| | Vendido á J. Aldama, segun libro de ven- | | |
| | tas No. 2 y libro de pagarés No. 2.... | | 400 00 |
| | ———— " ———— | | |
| 3. | Mercancías..... | 618 19 | |
| 6. | á Ganancias y Pérdidas, | | |
| | Lo que hemos ganado en las ventas del | | |
| | café y de los tabacos..... | | 618 19 |
| | | <u>\$ 19,727 42</u> | <u>\$ 19,727 42</u> |

JOURNAL.

New York, October 1st, 18—.

| | | | |
|----|---|-------------|-------------|
| 2. | Cash | \$10,000 00 | |
| 1. | to Joseph Ruiz, | | |
| | Deposited in cash | | \$10,000 00 |
| | 9 | | |
| 3. | Merchandise | 3,745 52 | |
| 2. | to Cash, | | |
| | Bought of Thomas Urieta, as per Invoice- | | |
| | book No. 1, and Cash-book, fol. 1 | | 3,745 52 |
| | 11 | | |
| 2. | Cash | 4,218 71 | |
| 3. | to Merchandise, | | |
| | Sold to James Phillips, as per Sales-book | | |
| | No. 1, and Cash-book, fol. 1 | | 4,218 71 |
| | 15 | | |
| 3. | Merchandise | 500 00 | |
| 4. | to Bills-payable, | | |
| | Bought of Cabañas Carbajal & Co., as | | |
| | per Invoice-book No. 2 and Bill-book | | |
| | No. 1 | | 500 00 |
| | 17 - | | |
| 5. | Bills receivable | 250 00 | |
| 3. | to Merchandise, | | |
| | Sold to W. Smith & Co., as per Sales-book | | |
| | No. 2 and Bill-book No. 1 | | 250 00 |
| | 18 | | |
| 5. | Bills receivable | 400 00 | |
| 3. | to Merchandise, | | |
| | Sold to J. Aldama, as per Sales-book No. | | |
| | 3 and Bill-book No. 1 | | 400 00 |
| | " | | |
| 2. | Merchandise | 618 19 | |
| 6. | to Profit and Loss, | | |
| | What we have gained in our sales of | | |
| | coffee and cigars | | 618 19 |
| | | \$19,727 42 | \$19,727 42 |

LIBRO MAYOR.

| Debe. | | 1.—José Ruiz. | | Haber. | |
|-------|--|---------------|--------|---------------|--------------|
| | | | | | |
| | | | Oct. 1 | Por Caja..... | 1. 10,000 00 |

2.—Caja.

| | | | | | | | |
|---------|--------------|----|-----------|--------|----------------|----|----------|
| Oct. 1 | A José Ruiz | 1. | 10,000 00 | Oct. 1 | Por Mercancías | 2. | 8,745 52 |
| Oct. 11 | A Mercancías | 3. | 4,213 71 | | | | |

3.—Mercancías.

| | | | | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------------|----|----------|---------|--------------------------------|----|----------|
| Oct. 9 | A Caja | 2. | 8,745 52 | Oct. 11 | Por Caja..... | 3. | 4,213 71 |
| Oct. 15 | A Obligaciones á pagar | 4. | 500 00 | Oct. 17 | Por Obligaciones á recibir.... | 5. | 250 00 |
| Oct. 18 | A Ganancias y Pérdidas.... | 7. | 618 19 | Oct. 18 | Por Obligaciones á recibir.... | 6. | 400 00 |

4.—Obligaciones á pagar.

| | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|--------|
| \| | \| | \| | Oct. 15 | Por Mercancías | 4. | 500 00 |
|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|--------|

5.—Obligaciones á recibir.

| | | | | | | |
|---------|-----------------|----|--------|--|--|--|
| Oct. 17 | A Mercancías... | 5. | 250 00 | \| | \| | \| |
| Oct. 18 | A Mercancías... | 6. | 400 00 | \| | \| | \| |

6.—Ganancias y Pérdidas.

| | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|--------|
| \| | \| | \| | Oct. 18 | Por Mercancías | 7. | 618 19 |
|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|--------|

BALANCE GENERAL DEL LIBRO MAYOR.

| No. | Títulos. | Debe. | | Haber. | |
|-----|------------------------------|----------|----|----------|----|
| 1 | José Ruiz | | | \$10,000 | 00 |
| 2 | Caja..... | \$14,213 | 71 | 8,745 | 52 |
| 3 | Mercancías..... | 4,863 | 71 | 4,863 | 71 |
| 4 | Obligaciones á pagar. | | | 500 | 00 |
| 5 | Obligaciones á recibir | 650 | 00 | | |
| 6 | Ganancias y Pérdidas | | | 618 | 19 |
| | | \$19,727 | 42 | \$19,727 | 42 |

LEDGER.

Dr.

1—Joseph Ruiz.

Cr.

| | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--------|--------------|----|--------|----|
| \| | \| | \| | \|\| | Oct. 1\| | By Cash..... | \|1.\| | 10,000\| | 00 |
|--|--|--|--|--------|--------------|----|--------|----|

2—Cash.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|----------------|----|--------|----|--------|----------------|----|-------|----|
| Oct. 1\| | To Joseph Ruiz | \|1.\| | 10,000\| | 00\| | Oct. 9\| | By Merchandise | \|2.\| | 3,745\| | 50 |
| Oct. 11\| | To Merchandise | \|3.\| | 4,918\| | 71\| |  |  |  |  |  |

3.—Merchandise.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|------------------|----|-------|----|---------|------------------|----|-------|----|
| Oct. 9\| | To Cash..... | \|2.\| | 3,745\| | 50\| | Oct. 11\| | By Cash..... | \|3.\| | 4,918\| | 71 |
| Oct. 15\| | To Bills Payable | \|4.\| | 500\| | 00\| | Oct. 17\| | By Bills Receiv- | | | |
| Oct. 18\| | To Profit & Loss | \|7.\| | 618\| | 19\| |  | able..... | \|5.\| | 250\| | 00 |
| | | | | | Oct. 18\| | By Bills Receiv- | \|6.\| | 400\| | 00 |
| | | | | | | able..... | | | |

4.—Bills Payable.

| | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|-----|----|
| \| | \| | \| | \|\| | Oct. 15\| | By Merchandise | \|4.\| | 500\| | 00 |
|--|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|-----|----|

5.—Bills Receivable.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|----------------|----|-----|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| Oct. 17\| | To Merchandise | \|5.\| | 250\| | 00\| |  |  |  |  |  |
| Oct. 18\| | To Merchandise | \|6.\| | 400\| | 00\| |  |  |  |  |  |

6.—Profit and Loss.

| | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|-----|----|
| \| | \| | \| | \|\| | Oct. 18\| | By Merchandise | \|7.\| | 618\| | 19 |
|--|--|--|--|---------|----------------|----|-----|----|

GENERAL BALANCE OF THE LEDGER.

| No. | Title. | Dr. | | Cr. | |
|-----|----------------------|----------|----|----------|----|
| 1. | Joseph Ruiz..... | | | \$10,000 | |
| 2. | Cash..... | \$14,218 | 71 | 3,745 | 50 |
| 3. | Merchandise..... | 4,868 | 71 | 4,868 | 71 |
| 4. | Bills payable..... | | | 500 | 00 |
| 5. | Bills receivable.... | 650 | 00 | | |
| 6. | Profit and Loss..... | | | 618 | 19 |
| | | \$19,727 | 42 | \$19,727 | 42 |

FORTY-FIRST LESSON.

MERCANTILE VOCABULARY.

| A | | | |
|---------------------------|--|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Abono, | credit, payment. | arancel, | tariff. |
| abastos, | supplies. | agencia, | agency. |
| ajuste, | bargain. | adición, | addition. |
| alcance, | balance. | alcance de cuen- ta, | balance of an ac- count. |
| almacen, | store house. | | |
| almacen de gé- neros, | dry-goods store. | B | |
| almacen de fan- tasía, | fancy store. | Bandera, | flag. |
| almacen de mue- bles, | furniture store. | baja, | decrease, fall. |
| almacen de ví- veres, | grocery store. | barril, | barrel. |
| almacen de ro- pa, | clothing store. | balance, | balance. |
| almacen de quincallería, | hardware store. | banco, | a bank. |
| almacen de loza, | crookery store. | bergantin, | brig. |
| asiento, | entry in a book. | beneficio, | benefit. |
| abandono, | abandonment. | borrador, | blotter. |
| avalúo, | appraisement. | buque de vapor, | steamship. |
| aviso, | notice. | buque, | ship. |
| acopio, | a provision. | buque de guerra, | man-of-war. |
| aros, | hoops. | buque mercante, | merchant ves- sel. |
| aduana, | custom house. | balanza, | balance, scales. |
| accion, | share. | balijas, | letter bags. |
| accionista, | stockholder. | bote de pasaje, | ferry boat. |
| almoneda, | auction. | bolsa, | exchange. |
| arbitracion, | arbitration. | buque, | vessel. |
| avería, | average. | | |
| avería y capa, | primage, and average accus- tomed. | C | |
| arroba, | 25 lbs. weight. | Cambio, | exchange. |
| | | camino de hier- ro, | railroad. |
| | | capital, | capital. |
| | | cargo, | a cargo. |
| | | carretaje, | cartage. |
| | | casa de correos, | post-office. |
| | | cobro, | collection. |

| | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| contedido, | contents. |
| contrabando, | smuggling. |
| correo, | mail. |
| crédito, | credit. |
| por ciento, | per cent. |
| consumo, | consumption. |
| consignar, | to consign. |
| certificado, | certificate. |
| al contado, | for cash. |
| convenio, | agreement. |
| comercio, | commerce. |
| costos y cargos, | costs & charges. |
| contestacion, | answer. |
| carestía, | scarcity. |
| caja, | box, case. |
| compra, | purchase. |
| compañía, | company. |
| contrato, | contract. |
| copia, | copy. |
| cuenta, | account. |
| calidad, | quality. |
| coleccion, | file (of papers). |
| correspondencia | correspondence. |
| condicion, | condition. |
| comision, | commission. |
| consignador, | consigner. |
| consignacion, | consignment. |
| consignatario, | consignee. |
| contribucion, | assessment. |
| cotizacion, | quotation. |
| carta, | letter. |
| cuarta, | quarter of a |
| | yard. |
| cuantía, | quantity. |

D

| | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| Daño, | damage, injury. |
| darse á la vela, | to set sail. |
| derechos, | duties. |
| descuento, | discount. |
| desembarque ó | landing. |
| desembarco, | |
| desembolso, | disbursement. |
| despacho de a- | clearance. |
| duana, | |

| | |
|--------------|--------------|
| despachado, | cleared. |
| destino, | destination. |
| duplicado, | duplicate. |
| dique, | dock. |
| diario, | journal. |
| demanda, | demand. |
| dueda, | debt. |
| descarga, | unlading. |
| desgracia, | misfortune. |
| demora, | delay. |
| deduccion, | deduction. |
| declaracion, | declaration. |

E

| | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Efectos, | goods. |
| embarcar, | to ship. |
| endoso, | indorsement. |
| en lastre, | in ballast. |
| extracto, | extract. |
| embarcacion, | a vessel of any |
| | kind. |
| envoltorio, | wrapper. |
| embarque, ó em- | embarking, |
| barco, | shipping. |
| envase, | packing, case, |
| | covering. |
| envio, | shipment. |
| entrada, | entry. |
| entrega, | delivery. |
| exigencia, | exigency. |
| escasez, | scarcity. |
| exportacion, | exportation. |
| extorcion, | extortion. |
| existencia, | stock on hand. |

F

| | |
|-----------|----------------|
| Fondos, | funds. |
| fanal, | lighthouse. |
| fardo, | bale. |
| flete, | freight. |
| fraude, | fraud. |
| fomento, | encouragement. |
| frutos, | produce. |
| factoría, | factory. |
| factura, | invoice. |

| | |
|----------------|------------------|
| fábrica, | manufactory. |
| falta, | want. |
| falta de pago, | non-payment. |
| fecha, | date. |
| fianza, | security. |
| firma, | signature, firm. |

G

| | |
|-----------|-----------|
| Ganancia, | gain. |
| gastos, | grains. |
| géneros, | goods. |
| giro, | draft. |
| goleta, | schooner. |
| granos, | expenses. |
| guía, | permit. |

H

Hacerse á la ve- to set sail.

| | |
|-----------|-----------|
| la, | |
| hacienda, | estate. |
| haciend, | treasury. |
| hipoteca, | mortgage. |

I

| | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| Impuestos, | imports. |
| importe, | amount. |
| importe líquido, | net amount. |
| incremento, | increase. |
| ingreso, | entry. |
| interés, | interest. |
| interesados, | concerned. |
| inventario, | inventory. |
| insolvente, | insolvent. |
| insolvenia, | insolvency. |
| ida y vuelta, | out and home. |
| izar la bandera, | to hoist the flag, |
| | or colors. |
| industria, | industry. |

J

| | |
|------------------|------------------|
| Jornal, | journal. |
| juramento, | oath. |
| junta, | meeting. |
| junta de comer- | board of com- |
| cio, | merce. |
| junta de sanidad | board of health. |

L

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Lacre, | sealing wax. |
| lastre, | ballast. |
| legajo, | a bundle. |
| legajo de cartas, | bundle of letters |
| libro, | book. |
| libro de cuentas, | account book. |
| libro de caja, | cash book. |
| libro mayor, | ledger. |
| libro de mues- | pattern card. |
| tra, | |
| letra de cambio, | bill of exchange. |
| libranza, | draft. |
| lio, | bundle. |
| licencia, | license. |
| libra, | a pound. |
| lencería, | linen goods. |
| llegada, | arrival. |

M

| | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Manuscrito, | manuscript. |
| mostrador, | counter. |
| manejo, | management. |
| montante, | amount. |
| muelle, | wharf. |
| moratoria, | respite. |
| moneda, | coin. |
| maleta, | valise. |
| merma, | waste. |
| mercado, | market. |
| mercancías, | merchandise. |
| mercaderías, | wares. |
| medida, | measure. |
| muestra, | sample. |

N

| | |
|------------|------------|
| Navegable, | navigable. |
| neutral, | neutral. |

O

| | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Oblea, | wafer. |
| oferta, | proposal. |
| orden, | order. |
| oportunidad, | opportunity. |
| obligacion, | bond. |

P

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Puerto, | port. |
| pago, | payment. |
| un pagaré, | a promissory note. |
| paquete, | packet, parcel. |
| pie cúbico, | cubic foot. |
| paquete de cartas, | packet of letters. |
| pedido, | order. |
| peso, | dollar. |
| peso, | weight. |
| peso bruto, | gross weight. |
| peso neto, | net weight. |
| producto, | proceeds. |
| porte, | postage. |
| precio, | price. |
| poder, | power of attorney. |
| premio, | premium. |
| premio de seguros, | premium of insurance. |
| préstamo, | loan. |
| provecho, | benefit. |
| peligro, | danger. |
| perjuicio, | damage. |
| á plazo, | on credit, on time. |
| pliego de papel, | sheet of paper. |
| partida, | lot. |
| pérdida, | loss. |
| promesa, | promise. |
| protesta, | protest. |
| puntualidad, | punctuality. |
| proporción, | proportion. |
| pluma, | pen. |
| poliza, | policy. |
| póliza de seguros, | policy of insurance. |
| página, | page. |
| paca, | bale. |
| parte, | party, part. |
| papelera, | writing desk. |
| provisiones, | provisions. |
| producciones, | productions. |

Q

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| Quintal, | hundred weight |
| quiebra, | bankruptcy. |
| quincallería, | hardware. |

R

| | |
|----------------|---------------------|
| Resguardo, | security. |
| residuo, | residue, remainder. |
| retazo, | remnant. |
| recibo, | receipt. |
| renglon, | line of writing. |
| renglones, | articles, goods. |
| recambio, | re-exchange. |
| riesgo, | risk. |
| real, | a shilling. |
| renta, | revenue. |
| rentas reales, | royal revenue. |
| remesa, | remittance. |
| riquezas, | riches. |
| resma, | ream. |
| respuesta, | answer. |
| rebaja, | deduction. |

S

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| Salvamento, | safety. |
| seguros, | insurance. |
| sobrescrito, | direction. |
| saco, | bag. |
| saco de jenuen, | gunny bag. |
| saldo, | balance. |
| subasta, | public sale. |
| subida, | rise, advance. |
| subida de precios, | rise in prices. |
| salida, | departure, sailing. |
| surtido, | supply. |

T

| | |
|-----------|------------|
| Tonelaje, | cooperage. |
| trueque, | barter. |
| tercio, | bale. |
| tonel, | cask. |
| tonelada, | ton. |

traspaso,
tienda,
tanteo,
tarifa,
talega,
tara,
tasa,
tasacion,
tonelería,
tinta,

assignment.
shop.
computation.
tariff.
money bag.
tare.
rate.
valuation.
cooperage.
ink.

V

Vale,
valor,
viaje,
varios,
vendedor,
venta,
ventaja,
vara,
valuacion,
á vista,
vuelta,

note.
value.
voyage, trip.
sundries.
salesman.
sale.
advantage.
yard.
valuation.
at sight.
return.

U

Uso,
á dos usos,
utilidad,
usura,

use.
double use.
utility.
usury.

GÉNEROS.

DRY GOODS.

A

Algodon,
alepin,
arabias,

cotton.
bombazine.
persian, Arabias

B

Barragan,
bayeta,
bayeton,
brin,
bocafí,
brocado,
batista,
boquin,
bramante,

coarse camblet.
flannel.
baize.
sail cloth.
buckram.
brocade.
linen cambric.
coarse baize.
pack thread.

burato,
brocatel,
bucaran,
bordadu,

Calicot,
cambray,
cambrayona,
camelote,
cañamo,
cañamazo,
calanclan,
casimir,
caniza,
caserillas,
cendal,
coleta,
coton,
cotonada,
cotonía,
cintas,

canton crape.
linsey woolsey.
buckram.
embroidery.

C

calico.
cotton cambric.
coarse combric.
camblet.
hemp.
canvas.
chintz.
cashmere.
coarse linen.
homespun linen
crape.
canvas.
printed calico.
a sort of calico.
dimity.
ribbons.

D

Damasco,
drogas,
droguete,

damask.
drugs.
drugget, a light
sort of woollen
stuff.

E

Estofa,
escarlata,
estameña,
estambre,
encaje,

stuff.
scarlet.
bombazine.
worsted.
silk lace.

F

Fardo,
felpa,
fieltro,
fustan,
frasada,
florete,
franela,
filigrana,

a bale.
plush.
felt.
fustian.
blanket.
flowered muslin.
flannel.
filigree work.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|--|---|---|---|
| Grana, gorgoran, gasa, gorbion, | G | cochineal. grogam. gauze. striped taffeta. | Quitasol, | Q | sun umbrella. |
| | H | ferret silk. thread. pack thread. | Ropa blanca, raso, ribete, ruan, | R | linen made up. satin. edging. French linen. |
| Hiladillo, hilo, hilo acarrete, | I | prints. | Sayaí, seda, sederías, servilletas, sarga, | S | sack cloth. silk. silk goods. napkins. serge. |
| Indianas, | L | wool. swan skin. sail cloth. ribbon. lawn, flax. linen. stripes. book muslin. | Tela, toallas, terciopelo, tafetán, tripo, tela de oro, torzal, trencilla, un tercio, tapiz, | T | cloth, linen. towels. velvet. taffeta. plush. cloth of gold. twist, cord. braid. a bale. carpet. |
| Lana, lanilla, lona, liston, lino, lienzo, listados, librete, | M | muslin. tablecloths. table linen. nankeen. thibet cloth. | Vuelos, velillo, vellorí, vesfalia, vueltos, | V | ruffles. fine gauze. cloth undyed. German linen. facings, ruffles. |
| Muselina, manteles, mantelería, mahon, merino, | O | cambric. hollands. sail cloth. tinsel. listing of cloth. | Zaraza, | Z | printed calico. |
| Olan, olanda, olona, oropel, orillo, | P | silesia hollands. printed cotton. handkerchiefs. cloth. parasol. umbrellas. cords and gimps cuffs. lacing point. | <hr/> <p>PESO Y MEDIDAS. WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.</p> | | |
| Platillas, prusiana, pañuelos, pañó, parasol, paraguas, pasamanería, puños, puntas, | | | Azumbre, arroba, adarme, balanza, braza, barrica, barril, | | pint. twenty-five lbs. drachm. scales. fathom. barrel. barrel. |

| | | | |
|-------------|----------------|------------------|----------------------------------|
| bocoy, | hogshead. | accionista, | shareholder. |
| cuarteron, | quarter pound. | actuario, | scrivener. |
| cuarterola, | quarter cask. | albacea, | executor, or ad- ministrador. |
| cuarta, | quarter. | banquero, | banker. |
| cuarta, | quart. | cajero, | cashier. |
| cuartilla, | gallon. | cobrador, | receiver. |
| codo, | cubit. | compañero, | partner. |
| celemin, | peck. | comprador, | purchaser. |
| cuñete, | keg. | contrabandista, | smuggler. |
| dracma, | drachm. | corredor, | broker. |
| estadio, | furlong. | corredor de cam- | exchange bro- |
| escrúpulo, | scruple. | bios, | ker. |
| fanega, | bushel. | corresponsal, | correspondent. |
| grano, | grain. | cargador, | shipper. |
| legua, | league. | comerciante, | merchant. |
| libra, | pound. | consignatario, | consignee. |
| medida, | measure. | demandante, | claimant, plain- tiff. |
| milla, | mile. | deudor, | debtor. |
| onza, | ounce. | defendiente, | defendant. |
| pulgada, | inch. | diezmero, | titheman. |
| pié, | foot. | dueño, | owner. |
| paso, | pace. | dependiente, | clerk. |
| palmo, | span. | escribiente, | clerk, ingrosser. |
| pértiga, | perch. | endosador, | indorser. |
| peso, | weight. | encargado de, | agent for. |
| pinta, | pint. | portador, | exporter. |
| pipa, | pipe. | estivador, | stevedore. |
| quintal, | hundred weight | fiador, | security, bail. |
| quilate, | carat. | fletador, | freighter. |
| romanas, | steelyards. | guardas vijeas, | tide waiters. |
| tercio, | tierce. | dores, | |
| tonel, | cask. | guarda de navío, | tidesman. |
| tonelada, | ton. | interesados, | parties con- cerned. |
| vara, | yard. | juez, | a judge. |
| yugada, | acre. | juez árbitro, | an arbitrator. |

EMPLEOS RELATIVOS AL COMERCIO. OFFICES CONNECTED WITH COMMERCE.

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Agente, | agent. | librador, | drawer of a bill. |
| acreedor, | creditor. | merchante, | customer. |
| administrador, | administrator. | marinero, | seaman. |
| apoderado, | attorney. | mercader por | wholesale deal- |
| asegurador, | underwriter. | mayor, | er. |
| armador, | shipper. | monopolista, | monopolist. |
| | | mercader, | dealer. |

FORTY-SECOND LESSON.

MERCANTILE PHRASES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Acusar el recibo de, | To acknowledge receipt of. |
| Del 19 del pasado, | Of the 19th ultimo. |
| Del 10 del corriente, | Of the 10th instant. |
| Confirmando, | Confirming. |
| Refiriéndonos á nuestra última.. | Referring to our last of. . . |
| Por conducto particular, | By private hand. |
| El objeto principal de la presente es. . . | The immediate object of this is. . . |
| Tenemos el honor, ó la satisfacción, de participar á Vd. . . | We have the honor or the satisfaction to inform you. . . |
| Sentimos noticiar á Vd. . . | We are sorry to inform you. . . |
| Participo ó participamos á Vd... | I or we beg to inform you. . . |
| La apreciable de Vds. del — fué recibida á su debido tiempo, | Your favor of — was duly received. |
| La carta inclusa, | The enclosed letter. |
| Cotizacion, | Quotation. |
| Cotizamos, | We quote. |
| Precios corrientes, | Prices current. |
| A precios sostenidos, | At firm prices. |
| Corredores, | Brokers. |
| El estado de la plaza ó del mercado, | The state of the market. |
| El mercado de algodón, | The cotton market. |
| Muy velero, | Very fast sailer. |
| Una libranza, | A draft. |
| Letra de cambio, | Bill of exchange. |
| El conocimiento, | The bill of lading. |
| La factura, | The invoice. |
| S. E. ú O. (Salvo error ú omisión), | E. & O. E. (Errors and omissions excepted). |
| Sus muy apreciables de Vd., | Your valued favors. |
| Los tenedores, | The holders. |
| Los compradores, | The purchasers, buyers. |
| Vd. puede girar contra mí, ó nosotros, á pocos días, | You may draw on me, or us, at short date. |

El año ó mes pasado,
Hacer una remesa,
Llenar los conocimientos,
Muy ordinario,
Buen ordinario,
Mediano,

AL COMENZAR LA CARTA.

1a (original) por Oscar,
1a por la vía de Liverpool,
Londres, 1.º de Julio, 18—
New York, Junio 15/8—
Paris, 15 de Abril, 18—
Madrid, 21 de Febrero de 18—
Bilbao, y 23 de Mayo, de 18—
Buenos Ayres, á 22 de Enero de
18—

Sr. Don Samuel Davis,
Charleston,
Sr. Don Balt. Burgo y Carranza,
Santiago,

Srs. Acuña y Gomez,
Barcelona,

Muy Sr. mio (nuestro),
Muy Sr. mio (Muy Sr. mio y
amigo),

Muy Sres. mios (nuestros),
Muy Sres. mios (Muy Sres. mios
y amigos),

Muy Sr. mio, de todo mi aprecio
(Muy Sr. mio y amigo ó esti-
mado amigo),

A ruego del comun amigo, Dn.
***, nos tomamos la libertad
de...

Conforme nos encarga Dn. ***,
tenemos el gusto (el honor)
de prevenir á V. que...

Consiguiente á las órdenes que
he recibido hoy de los Sres.
***....

Conforme nos ordena Dn. ***,
de Filadelfia....

Por disposicion de Dn. ***....

Last year or month.
To make a remittance.
To fill out the bills of lading.
Ordinary or inferior.
Good ordinary.
Fair, Middling.

TO COMMENCE A LETTER.

Original per Oscar.
Orig. via Liverpool.
London, 1st July, 18—
New York, June 15, 18—
Paris, 15th April, 18—
Madrid, 21st February, 18—
Bilboa, 23rd May, 18—
Buenos Ayres, January 22d,
18—

Samuel Davis, Esq. (Esquire),
Charleston.
Balt. Burgo y Carranza, Esq.,
Santiago.

Messrs. Acuña y Gomez,
Barcelona.

Sir.
Dear Sir.

Gentlemen.
Dear Sirs.

My dear Sir.

At the request (by request) of
our mutual friend, Mr. ***, we
take the liberty of....

By desire of Mr. ***, we have
the pleasure to acquaint you
that....

In consequence of directions I
have this day received from
Messrs. ***....

By directions received from Mr.
***, of Philadelphia....

Agreeably with Mr. ***'s in-
structions....

Con arreglo á las órdenes de Vms. . . .

Por orden de los Sres. ***

Consecuente á lo que nos encargan los Sres. ***

Consecuente con lo que insinuámos en algunas de nuestras anteriores

Conforme al deseo que me manifiestan Vms. en su apble. del . . . , les prevengo que

Consiguiente al convenio que he hecho con los Sres. ***

El mérito de la presente se reduce á prevenirles que . . .

Solo sirve la presente para noticiarles que . . . (La presente no tiene mas objeto que el avisarles que . . .),

Hoy, mi principal objeto es . . .

Tiene la presente por principal motivo el

Sirve la presente á

• Nuestro principal objeto hoy es avisarles que

Ahora, volvemos á molestarles únicamente para

Tengo el honor de noticiar á Vd. que

Participamos á Vms. como

Nos apresuramos á prevenirles que

Siento tener que participarles que

Mucho ántes de recibir la presente habrán

En ausencia de Dn. *** , quien se halla en Falmouth, al lado de su familia, es un deber mio el poner en noticia de V. que

Bajo los suspicios de nuestros

Agreeably to your orders . . .

By order of Messrs. ***

As directed by Messrs. ***

Agreeably to what we intimated to you in several of our former letters

In compliance with the desire you expressed in your favor of the . . . , which is by me, I inform you that

In pursuance of (Pursuant to) an arrangement entered into between Messrs. *** and me

The object of the present is to advise you that

The purport of the present is merely to inform you that

My principal motive in addressing you to-day is

The immediate object of this is

The present will serve to

We trouble you to-day principally for the purpose of informing you that

We now again trouble you merely for the purpose of

I have the honor to inform you that

We beg to inform you that

We hasten to inform you that

I regret that I have to advise that

Long before this reaches you, you will have

Under the authority of M. *** , who is absent on a visit to his friends at Falmouth, I feel it my duty to inform you that . . .

Through the recommendation

apreciables amigos, los Sres.

***

Bajo los auspicios de los comunes amigos los Sres. ***, de París, me tomo la confianza de dirigirles la presente para . . .

Sin tener el gusto de ser conocido de Vd. personalmente, me tomo la libertad de dirigirle la presente, confiado en las relaciones de amistad que me unen con su Sr. hermano Dn. S.

Somos deudores de la dirección de Vms. á los Sres. ***

Somos á 20 de Setiembre 1842.

Precede el duplicado de nuestra carta 30 del ppdo, que confirmamos,

La adjunta es copia de nuestra última del

Nos referimos á nuestra última por el Alexander, cuya copia antecede, y

Acompaña copia de nuestra última 25 del ppdo,

Desde nuestra última del

Confirmamos nuestra anterior del 24 ppdo, que se ha cruzado (se cruzó) con su apble del 23 del mismo,

Confirmando nuestra última del

Nos referimos á nuestra

Ratificando nuestra carta del..., á la que nos referimos

Todo lo cual les reiteramos,

Hace pocos días, tuvimos el gusto de escribirles,

Tuvimos el gusto de escribirles el 15 del corriente,

Hemos tenido ya el gusto de escribirles con esta fecha por una ocasión particular,

of our good friends Messrs.

***

Under the auspices of our mutual friends, Messrs. ***, of Paris, I take the liberty of addressing you for the purpose of . . .

Without the pleasure of being personally acquainted with you, I take the liberty of addressing you, trusting that my intimacy with your brother S. will plead my apology with you.

We are indebted for your address to Messrs. ***

September 20, 1842.

Above is the duplicate of our respects of the 30th ultimo, which we beg to confirm.

Enclosed is a copy of our last respects of the

We beg your reference to the above copy of our last respects per ship Alexander, and

We hand you enclosed a copy of our last of the 25th ult.

Since addressing you on the

Our last of the 24th ult., which we beg to confirm, was crossed by your esteemed favor of the 23rd of same month.

Confirming last respects of the

We crave your reference to our

Referring to and confirming our respects of the

All which we beg to confirm.

We had this pleasure a few days ago.

We did ourselves the pleasure of addressing you on the 15th inst.

We already had this pleasure under this date, by private hand.

Escribimos á Vd. el 15 del corriente,
Escribimos á Vms. detenidamente el 5 del corriente, cuya carta confirmamos,
Nuestra última fué con fha del 21 corriente,
Les dirigimos nra. última el 1.º corriente,

TRANSACCIONES DE BANCO.

Recomiendo á Vd. la buena acogida de mis giros,
Se servirán Vds. honrar como de costumbre,
Hemos conseguido librar á este buen cambio,
Me he abstenido de librar todo el tiempo que me ha sido posible,
He girado á cargo de Vd. á 60 dias vista,
Que le abonamos en cuenta,
Dentro de poco dispondré de mi alcance,
Libren al mas largo plazo posible,
La hemos pagado á presentacion,
Hemos aceptado inmediatamente el giro de Vd.,
He retardado mi aceptacion,
Rehusamos nuestra aceptacion,
Su libranza de Vd. tiene que ser desairada,
Queda á mi cuidado el cubrir las letras,
Que vencen el 21 del corriente,
Estando dichas letras á punto de vencer,
La letra no fué pagada al vencimiento,

We wrote you on the 15th inst.

We wrote you very fully the 5th inst., to which we beg your reference.

We last wrote you the 21st inst.

We last had this pleasure the 1st inst.

BANKING AFFAIRS.

I beg to recommend my drafts to your protection.

You will please to give the usual protection.

We were enabled to draw at this favorable exchange.

I have held off drawing as long as possible.

I have drawn on you at 60 days' sight.

Which we place to your credit. I shall draw shortly for the balance due to me.

Draw at as long a date as you can.

It was paid on presentation.

We have promptly honored your bill.

I have withheld my acceptance. We decline to accept it.

Your draft must remain in sufferance.

I will make timely provision for the drafts.

Which fall due the 21st inst. These bills now becoming due.

The bill was not paid at maturity.

QUIEBRAS.

Ha llegado á mi noticia la desgraciada suspension de pagos nuestros amigos,

Vd. ha sufrido poco menoscabo, Se ha sabido hoy en la Bolsa,

No se hallan Vds. envueltos en su desgracia,

Cada dia se anuncian numerosas quiebras,

Se ha convocado á los acreedores,

Sus deudas pasivas ascienden á poco menos de

Nadie presentia esta quiebra,

CUENTAS, RECIBOS, &C.

Le adjuntamos la cuenta venta de los efectos,

Cargamos á Vd. en nuestra cuenta,

Si está sin error, sirvanse sentarla de conformidad,

Cargamos los gastos en si cuenta,

Arroja un saldo á nuestro favor, No hemos tenido tiempo para

revisar las cuentas,

Sírvase rectificar el error que le he señalado,

No veo dicha cantidad figurar á mi crédito,

No dudo que rebajarán esta comision,

Vd. no tiene derecho á una comision,

Advertirán Vds. que

Abónennos en cuenta dicha cantidad,

Al débito de su cuenta,

BANKRUPTCY.

I have learned the unfortunate stoppage of our friends.

You have suffered but slightly. It has been declared to-day on 'Change.

You are not injured by their misfortunes.

Numerous failures are daily taking place.

A meeting of creditors has been called.

Their outstanding debts fall little short of

The failure was quite unlooked for.

ACCOUNTS, RECEIPTS, &C.

We hand you account of sales of the goods.

We debit you, on our account.

If found correct, please to enter accordingly.

The expenses are placed to your debit.

There is a balance in our favor.

We have not yet had leisure to examine the accounts.

Please correct the error pointed out to you.

I find I am not credited for this sum.

I hope you will withdraw this charge.

You are not entitled to a commission.

You will please observe that...

Carry the amount to our credit.

To the debit of your account.

ORDENES, COMPRAS, VENTAS, &C.

Adjunto nota de varios renglones,
 Por complacer á un amigo á quien deseo servir,
 Por ocasion segura,
 En los términos que calculen mas en mi beneficio,
 En el modo que les parezca mejor,
 Dosempeñarémos con el mayor esmero su orden,
 Cumplirémos á la letra sus instrucciones,
 Se está llenando su nota de pedidos,
 Los efectos serán remitidos sin pérdida de tiempo,
 Están listos los artículos,
 Mi orden queda vigente,

FACTURAS.

Factura de varias mercancías, con la marca y los números del márgen, embarcadas en el buque St. John, su capitán H. M., con destino á Panamá, de cuenta mitad entre los Sres. L. M. y el remitente,
 A la consignacion de los Sres. . . . de orden y cuenta y riesgo de los Sres. . . ., del comercio de Nueva York,

LETRA DE CAMBIO.

Nueva York, y Enero 20,
 A treinta dias vista, mandarán Vds. pagar por esta primera de cambio (no habiéndolo hecho por la segunda y tercera) cuatro mil pesos, á la orden de los Sres. . . . valor recibido, que cargarán Vds. en cuenta segun aviso,

ORDERS, PURCHASES, SALES, &C.

Enclosed you will find memorandum for sundry articles.
 To oblige a friend to whom I could not deny this favor.
 By a safe opportunity.
 As you may deem most to my advantage
 In the manner you judge best.
 The utmost attention will be paid to your order.
 We will punctually follow your direction.
 Your order is in execution.
 The goods shall be forwarded without loss of time.
 The articles are in readiness.
 Consider my order in full force.

INVOICES.

Invoice of sundries, marked and numbered as per margin, shipped by A. on board the St. John, H. M., master, for Panama, on joint account of Messrs. L. M. and shipper.
 Consigned to Messrs. . . . by order and for account and risk of Messrs. . . . merchants, of New York.

BILL OF EXCHANGE.

New York, January 20th.
 At thirty days' sight, pay this our first of exchange (second and third unpaid) to the order of Messrs. . . . four thousand dollars, value received, and place to account as per advice.

Forty-Third Lesson.

TO BE TRANSLATED FROM SPANISH INTO ENGLISH, AND FROM
ENGLISH INTO SPANISH.

PARALELO

DE DOÑA ISABEL DE CASTILLA
CON ISABEL DE INGLATERRA.

Por G. H. PRESCOTT.*

Ambas se educaron en sus primeros años en la dura escuela de la adversidad: ambas sufrieron las mayores humillaciones por parte de aquellos mismos sus mas próximos parientes, que mas debieran haberlas amado y protegido: ambas consiguieron sentarse sobre el tronó, despues de las vicisitudes mas contrarias: ambas condujeron á su pueblo, durante un largo y glorioso reizado, á un grado de prosperidad á que nunca habia llegado antes: ambas vivieron para ver la vanidad de las grandezas terrenales, y para morir víctimas de una tristeza inconsolable: una y otra, por último, dejaron un nombre ilustre; que no ha tenido igual en la historia posterior de sus respectivas naciones.

Desaparece sin embargo, la semejanza entre ambas, fuera de estas pocas circunstancias de su

PARALLEL

OF QUEEN ISABELLA OF SPAIN
WITH QUEEN ELIZABETH OF
ENGLAND.

By G. H. PRESCOTT.

Both were disciplined in early life by the teachings of that stern nurse of wisdom, adversity. Both were made to experience the deepest humiliation at the hands of their nearest relative, who should have cherished and protected them. Both succeeded in establishing themselves on the throne after the most precarious vicissitudes. Each conducted her kingdom, through a long and triumphant reign, to a height of glory which it had never before reached. Both lived to see the vanity of all earthly grandeur and to fall the victims of an inconsolable melancholy; and both left behind an illustrious name, unrivalled in the subsequent annals of their country.

But with these few circumstances of their history the resemblance ceases. Their characters afford scarcely a point of contact. Elizabeth inheriting a

* Traducido por A. C. Iturburu.

historia; y sus caracteres apenas presentan punto alguno de contacto. Isabel de Inglaterra, heredando una gran parte del genio orgulloso y brusco de su padre Enrique VIII., era altiva, arrogante, adusta é irascible, y á estas fieras cualidades reunia el simulacro mas profundo y una extraña irresolucion: y Doña Isabella de Castilla, por el contrario, templaba la dignidad de su elevada categoría con sus maneras mas afables y corteses: una vez resuelta era constante en sus propósitos, y su conducta pública y privada llevaba el sello del candor y la honradez. Una y otra puede decirse que dieron muestras de aquella magnanimidad, que es necesaria para la realizacion de grandes cosas á despecho de los mayores obstáculos: pero la reina de Inglaterra era en extremo egoísta, incapaz de olvidar, no ya una injuria verdadera, sino aun la mas ligera ofensa á su vanidad, y despiadada en el castigo: al paso que la soberana de Castilla vivia solo para los demas, siempre estaba pronta á sacrificarse por el bien público, y lejos de alimentar resentimientos personales, mostraba la mayor bondad hacia aquellos mismos que la habian ofendido en lo mas vivo de su corazon, buscando en su benevolencia medios de mitigar la severidad autorizada por las leyes, aun tratándose de los culpables.

large share of the bold and bluff King Harry's temperament, was haughty, arrogant, coarse, and irascible; while with these fiercer qualities she mingled deep dissimulation and strange irresolution. Isabella, on the other hand, tempered the dignity of royal station with the most bland and courteous manners. Once resolved, she was constant in her purposes, and her conduct in public and private life was characterized by candor and integrity. Both may be said to have shown that magnanimity which is implied by the accomplishment of great objects in the face of great obstacles. But Elizabeth was desperately selfish; she was incapable of forgiving, not merely a real injury, but the slightest affront to her vanity; and she was merciless in exacting retribution. Isabella, on the other hand, lived only for others—was ready at all times to sacrifice self to considerations of public duty; and, far from personal resentments, showed the greatest condescension and kindness to those who had most sensibly injured her; while her benevolent heart sought every means to mitigate the authorized severities of the law, even towards the guilty.

FORTY-FOURTH LESSON.

PARALELO

DE DOÑA ISABEL DE CASTILLA
CON ISABEL DE INGLATERRA,
CONTINUADO.

SEGUNDA PARTE.

Ambas poseían extraordinaria fortaleza de espíritu; porque si bien Doña Isabel de Castilla se halló en situaciones que exigían con mas frecuencia y en mas alto grado el ejercicio de esta virtud, que su rival la de Inglaterra; nadie negará que se halló tambien dotada de igual cualidad, y en su mayor altura, la hija de Enrique VIII. Logró esta mejor educacion, y una instruccion bajo todos aspectos mas elevada que aquella, pero la reina de Castilla tenía la suficiente para desempeñar con dignidad su puesto, y fomentó las letras con generosa munificencia. Las facultades y pasiones varoniles de Isabel de Inglaterra la divorciaron, al parecer, en gran manera de los atributos peculiares de su sexo, al menor de los que constituyen su encanto; porque poseyó en abundancia sus flaquezas, una presuncion y un deseo de ser admirada, que ni aun los años pudieron corregir, una ligereza muy libre, sino ya criminal, y una pasion por las galas y la

PARAILEL

OF QUEEN ISABELLA OF SPAIN
WITH QUEEN ELIZABETH OF
ENGLAND, CONTINUED.

SECOND PART.

Both possessed rare fortitude. Isabella, indeed, was placed in situations which demanded more frequent and higher displays of it than her rival; but no one will doubt a full measure of this quality in the daughter of Henry VIII. Elizabeth was better educated, and every way more highly accomplished than Isabella. But the latter knew enough to maintain her station with dignity; and she encouraged learning by a munificent patronage. The masculine powers and passions of Elizabeth seemed to divorce her, in a great measure, from the peculiar attributes of her sex—at least from those which constitute its peculiar charm, for she had abundance of its foibles;—a coquetry and love of admiration which age could not chill; a levity most careless, if not criminal; and a fondness for dress and tawdry magnificence of ornament, which was ridiculous, or disgusting, according to the different periods of life in which it was indulged. Isabella, on the

magnificencia excesiva en los adornos que era ridicula ó repugnante segun las diferentes épocas de su vida, en que se dejó arrastrar por ella: al paso que Doña Isabel de Castilla, distinguiéndose siempre por sus maneras decorosas y por una pureza que ni aun la calumnia pudo enpañar, se contentaba con el legítimo afecto que podia inspirar dentro del círculo de su familia; y muy distante de la frivola afectacion en sus adornos y tajes, era en extremo sencillo su ordinario vestir, y parecia no prestar atencion á sus joyas, sino en cuanto podian servir para las necesidades del estado, desprendiéndose de ellas, luego que esta utilidad cesaba, para ofrecerlas á sus amigas.

Ambas fueron extraordinariamente acertadas en la eleccion de sus ministros; aunque la de Inglaterra incurrió en algunos errores por causa de su ligereza, así como la de Castilla por sus sentimientos religiosos; los cuales juntamente con su extremada humildad, fueron los que condujeron á esta última á los únicos desaciertos graves de su gobierno. No incurrió su rival en errores semejantes y eran extrañas á su carácter las apreciables cualidades que á ellos conducen: para nada entraba, ciertamente, en su conducta el principio religioso, y aunque fué el baluarte de la religion protestante, difícil seria, en verdad, decir, si era en

other hand, distinguished through life for decorum of manners, and purity beyond the breath of calumny, was content with the legitimate affection which she could inspire within the range of her domestic circle. Far from a frivolous affectation of ornament or dress, she was most simple in her own attire, and seemed to set no value on her jewels but as they could serve the necessities of the state; when they could be no longer useful in this way, she gave them away to her friends.

Both were uncommonly sagacious in the selection of their ministers; though Elizabeth was drawn into some errors in this particular by her levity, as was Isabella by religious feeling. It was this, combined with her excessive humility, which led to the only grave errors in the administration of the latter. Her rival fell into no such errors, and she was a stranger to the amiable qualities which led to them. Her conduct was certainly not controlled by religious principle; and though the bulwark of the Protestant faith, it might be difficult to say whether she were at heart most a Protestant or a Catholic. She view-

su corazón mas protestante que católica: miraba la religion en sus relaciones con el estado, ó, en otras palabras, consigo misma; y adoptó medidas, para obligar á la conformidad con sus planes, casi tan despóticas y sanguinarias como las que por motivos de conciencia dictara su mas supersticiosa rival.

ed religion in its connection with the state—in other words, with herself; and she took measures for enforcing conformity to her own views, not a whit less despotic, and scarcely less sanguinary, than those countenanced for conscience' sake by her more bigoted rival.

FORTY-FIFTH LESSON.

PARALELO

DE DOÑA ISABEL DE CASTILLA
CON ISABEL DE INGLATERRA,
CONCLUIDO.

TERCERA PARTE.

Este rasgo de supersticion que ha arrojado cierta sombra sobre el carácter por lo demas bellissimo de Doña Isabel de Castilla, podria inducirnos á creer que eran sus facultades intelectuales inferiores á las de la reina inglesa; pero para juzgar de esto con acierto, es menester considerar los resultados de sus reinados respectivos. Isabel de Inglaterra encontró á mano todo cuanto necesitaba para hacer la felicidad de su pueblo; y no tuvo, por lo tanto, que hacer mas que aprovecharse hábilmente de ello para construir con solidez el edificio de la grandeza nacional. Doña Isabella de Castilla tuvo que crear estos medios: halló las facultades de su pueblo

PARALLEL

OF QUEEN ISABELLA OF SPAIN
WITH QUEEN ELIZABETH OF
ENGLAND, CONCLUDED.

THIRD PART.

This feature of bigotry, which has thrown a shade over Isabella's otherwise beautiful character, might lead to a disparagement of her intellectual power compared with that of the English queen. To estimate this aright, we must contemplate the results of their respective reigns. Elizabeth found all the materials of prosperity at hand, and availed herself of them most ably to build up a solid fabric of national grandeur. Isabella created these materials. She saw the faculties of her people locked up in a death-like lethargy, and she breathed into them the breath of life for those great and heroic enterprises which terminated in such glo-

sumidas en mortal letargo, y supo infundir en ellas el soplo de la vida, para excitarlas á aquellas grandes y heróicas empresas que tan gloriosas consecuencias produjeron para la monarquía; y estas consecuencias, cuando se consideran desde el punto de vista de la posicion que su creadora ocupaba al principio de su reinado, son casi milagrosas, tales su magnitud. El genio varonil de la reina inglesa aparece mas relevante de lo que naturalmente era, por lo mismo que carecia de las dulces cualidades de su sexo; el de su rival, por el contrario, á manera de una fábrica grande, pero simétrica, pierde en apariencia algo de su verdadera grandeza, por la misma perfeccion de armonía de sus proporciones.

Las circunstancias de la muerte de una y otra, que fueron algun tanto parecidas, pusieron de manifiesto la desemejanza de sus caracteres. Ambas sucumbieron en medio de la pompa de su regio estado: ambas fueron víctimas de un abatimiento incurable, mas bien que de enfermedad alguna física conocida. Nació aquel en la reina de Inglaterra de la herida que en su vanidad causara el triste convencimiento, de que la habia ya abandonado la admiracion con que durante tan largo tiempo se alimentaba, y hasta el afecto de la amistad y la adhesion de sus súbditos; y no buscó consuelos donde únicamente podia hallar-

rious consequences to the monarchy. It is when viewed from the depressed position of her early days, that the achievements of her reign seem scarcely less than miraculous. The masculine genius of the English queen stands out relieved beyond its natural dimensions by its separation from the softer qualities of her sex; while her rival's, like some vast, but symmetrical edifice, loses in appearance somewhat of its actual grandeur, from the perfect harmony of its proportions

The circumstances of their deaths, which were somewhat similar, displayed the great dissimilarity of their characters. Both pined amidst their royal state, a prey to incurable despondency, rather than any marked bodily distemper. In Elizabeth, it sprung from wounded vanity, a sullen conviction that she had outlived the admiration on which she had so long fed,—and even the solace of friendship and the attachment of her subjects. Nor did she seek consolation where alone it was to be found, in that sad hour. Isabella, on the other hand, sunk under a too acute sensibility to the sufferings of

los en aquellos tristes momentos. La reina de Castilla, por el contrario, se doblegó bajo el peso de su exquisita sensibilidad por los padecimientos ajenos; pero en medio de la tristeza que le aquejaba, contemplaba con la confianza de la fé la brillante perspectiva que una vida futura la ofrecia, y lanzó su último aliento, en medio del llanto y del universal lamento de sus pueblos.

En esta adhesión constante y nunca disminuida de la nación española es donde debe encontrarse el testimonio mas evidente de las virtudes de Doña Isabel de Castilla. Sus súbditos la ensalzan como *el ejemplo mas brillante de todas las virtudes*, y lloran el día de su muerte como *el último de la prosperidad y felicidad de su patria*.* El juicio de la posteridad ha venido á confirmar el de los contemporáneos; y los Españoles mas ilustrados de nuestros días, aunque no desconocen los errores de su administración, dan honroso testimonio de sus virtudes; y mientras que dan al olvido la elogiada grandeza de otros reyes posteriores, que traen la atención del vulgo, se extienden en hablar, llenos de entusiasmo, del carácter de Doña Isabella la Católica, reina de Castilla, considerándola como el mas grande que en la historia de todos los príncipes de este reino se presenta.

* L. Marinco, *Cosas memorables*, lib. 21.

others. But amidst the gloom which gathered around her, she looked with the eye of faith to the higher prospects which unfolded of the future: and when she resigned her last breath, it was amidst the tears and universal lamentations of her people.

It is in this undying, unabated attachment of the nation, indeed, that we see the most unequivocal testimony of the virtues of Isabella. Her own subjects extol her as "the most brilliant exemplar of every virtue," and mourn over the day of her death as "the last of the prosperity and happiness of their country."* The judgment of posterity has ratified the sentence of her own age. The most enlightened Spaniards of the present day, by no means insensible to the errors of her government, bear honorable testimony to her deserts; and while they pass over the bloated magnificence of succeeding monarchs who arrest the popular eye, dwell with enthusiasm on Isabella's character, as the most truly great in their line of princes.

* L. Marinco, *Cosas memorables*, lib. 21.

FORTY-SIXTH LESSON.

UNA CARTA DE LORD CHESTERFIELD Á SU HIJO.

Traducida del Ingles por Luis Manero.

Londres, 21 de Diciembre, 1749.

MI QUERIDO HIJO:

Si te está reservada la dicha de poseer grandes talentos y grandes virtudes, recaerá sobre ti el respeto y la admiracion de los hombres, pero para ganar su amor y afecto necesitarás los talentos inferiores, *leniores virtutes*. Los primeros, privados del socorro y de las gracias de los segundos, arrancarán las alabanzas, pero excitarán al mismo tiempo el temor y la envidia, dos sentimientos incompatibles con amor y afecto.

Cesar tuvo los mayores vicios, y Caton las mayores virtudes, que pueden caber en la humanidad; pero Cesar poseia las *leniores virtutes*, que faltaban á Caton, las cuales le procuraron el amor de sus mismos enemigos, y le ganaron el corazon de todos los hombres á despecho de la razon; á la vez que Caton no fué querido ni aun de sus amigos, apesar de la estimacion y respeto que no

A LETTER OF LORD CHESTERFIELD TO HIS SON.

ORIGINAL TEXT.

London, December 21, 1749.

DEAR BOY:

Great talents, and great virtues (if you should have them), will procure you the respect and the admiration of mankind: but it is the lesser talents, the *leniores virtutes*, which must procure you their love and affection. The former, unassisted and unadorned by the latter, will extort praise, but will, at the same time, excite both fear and envy; two sentiments absolutely incompatible with love and affection.

Cæsar had all the great vices, and Cato all the great virtues, that men could have. But Cæsar had the *leniores virtutes*, which Cato wanted; and which made him beloved, even by his enemies, and gained him the hearts of mankind in spite of their reason: while Cato was not even beloved by his friends, notwithstanding the esteem and respect

podian rehusar a sus virtudes; y yo me inclino á creer que si César se hubiese visto privado de estas *leniores virtutes*, y Caton poseído de ellas, no habria el primero atentado, á lo ménos con ~~suceso~~, contra las libertades de Roma, y el segundo las habria protegido eficazmente. Addison, en su tragedia de Caton, dice lo que me parece muy cierto,

"Curse on his virtues, they've undone his country;"*

se refiere en estas palabras á aquellas virtudes pequeñas pero mas persuasivas, como la blandura, la afabilidad, la complacencia y el buen humor. Los conocimientos de un literato, el valor de un héroe, las virtudes de un estóico, excitarán la admiracion; pero si los conocimientos van unidos con la arrogancia, el valor con la ferocidad, y la virtud con una severidad inflexible, nunca llegará el hombre á ser amado. El heroismo de Carlos XII, rey de Suecia, si su valor brutal merece tal nombre, atrajo la admiracion universal, pero su persona fué mal quista de todo el mundo; á la vez que Enrique IV, rey de Francia, que poseyó un valor igual, y sostuvo guerras mucho mas largas fué generalmente amado en consideracion á sus virtudes sociales aunque ménos brillantes.

which they could not refuse to his virtues; and I am apt to think, that if Cæsar had wanted, and Cato possessed, those *leniores virtutes*, the former would not have attempted (at least with success), and the latter could have protected, the liberties of Rome. Addison, in his Cato, says of Cæsar (and, I believe, with truth),

"Curse on his virtues, they've undone his country;"

by which he means, those lesser, but engaging virtues, of gentleness, affability, complaisance, and good humor. The knowledge of a scholar, the courage of a hero, and the virtue of a stoic, will be admired; but if the knowledge be accompanied with arrogance, the courage with ferocity, and the virtue with inflexible severity, the man will never be loved. The heroism of Charles XII. of Sweden (if his brutal courage deserves that name) was universally admired, but the man nowhere beloved; whereas Henry IV. of France, who had full as much courage, and was much longer engaged in wars, was generally beloved, on account of his lesser and social virtues.

* "Malditas sean sus virtudes, porque ellas causaron la ruina de su patria."

FORTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Carta de Lord Chesterfield a su hijo, concluido.

SEGUNDA PARTE.

Todos los hombres nos hallamos formados de tal manera, que nuestra razon es por lo comun el juguete de nuestro corazon, ó lo que viene á ser lo mismo de nuestras pasiones; y el modo mas seguro de chasquear la primera, es ganar al segundo, lo cual solo se consigue por medio de las *leniores virtutes*, y del hábil uso de ellas. Por ejemplo: la insolente cortesía de un hombre orgulloso nos disgusta quizá mas de lo que lo habria hecho su grosería, porque con su modo nos dice que solo por bondad y mera condescendencia nos muestra una cortesía que no tendríamos derecho de reclamar. Nos anuncia su proteccion con un gracioso movimiento de cabeza en lugar de atestiguar nos su amistad por medio de una reverencia comun, y se lee en su aspecto que nos dá permiso para que nos sentemos, comamos ó paseemos con él, en vez de invitarnos á que nos sirvamos hacerlo.

La estudiada liberalidad de un hombre orgulloso insulta muchas veces al desgraciado que socorre, porque tiene cuidado de hacerte sentir la miseria en que te hallas,

LETTER OF LORD CHESTERFIELD TO HIS SON, CONCLUDED.

SECOND PART.

We are all so formed, that our understandings are generally the dupes of our hearts,—that is, of our passions; and the surest way to the former is through the latter, which must be engaged by the *leniores virtutes* alone, and the manner of exerting them. The insolent civility of a proud man is (for example), if possible, more shocking than his rudeness could be; because he shows you, by his manner, that he thinks it mere condescension in him; and that his goodness alone bestows upon you what you have no pretence to claim. He intimates his protection, instead of his friendship, by a gracious nod, instead of an usual bow; and rather signifies his consent that you may, than his invitation that you should sit, walk, eat, or drink with him.

The studied liberality of a purse-proud man insults the distresses it sometimes relieves; he takes care to make you feel your own misfortunes, and the differ-

y la diferencia que hay entre su situacion y la tuya é insinúa que ambas son justamente merecidas, la suya por su saber, la tuya por tu ignorancia. El pedante insolente no comunica su saber, sino que lo promulga; en vez de dárte-lo te lo impone, y se halla mas deseoso, si es posible, de manifestarte tu propia ignorancia que su saber. Maneras como estas, no solo en los ejemplos particulares que llevo señalados, sino en cualquiera otros, chocan é irritan aquel grado de vanidad y de amor propio que todo hombre tiene en su corazon, borran el reconocimiento por el favor recibido trayendo á la memoria el motivo que lo produjo y el modo con que se concedió.

Estos defectos indican las perfecciones opuestas, y tu propio buen sentido te las sugerirá naturalmente.

Pero ademas de estas virtudes menores, hay ciertos talentos mas pequeños, ó llamémosles prendas, que adornan y relevan el mérito de las grandes, tanto mas, cuanto que todo el mundo es apto para juzgar de las unas, y muy pocos para decidir de las otras. Cada uno siente la impresion que sobre él hace una bándara insinuante, un modo de hablar agradable y una urbanidad complaciente, cualidades que allanan el camino y preparan un recibimiento favorable á otras que les son superiores. A Dios.

ence between your situation and his; both which he insinuates to be justly merited: yours, by your folly; his, by his wisdom. The arrogant pedant does not communicate, but promulgates his knowledge. He does not give it you, but he inflicts it upon you; and is, if possible, more desirous to show you your own ignorance than his own learning. Such manners as these, not only in the particular instances which I have mentioned, but likewise in all others, shock and revolt that little pride and vanity which every man has in his heart; and obliterate in us the obligation for the favor conferred, by reminding us of the motive which produced, and the manner which accompanied it.

These faults point out their opposite perfections, and your own good sense will naturally suggest them to you.

But besides these lesser virtues, there are what may be called the lesser talents, or accomplishments, which are of great use to adorn and recommend all the greater; and the more so, as all people are judges of the one, and but few are of the other. Everybody feels the impression which an engaging address, an agreeable manner of speaking, and an easy politeness, makes upon them; and they prepare the way for the favorable reception of their betters.

Adieu.

FORTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

EXTRACTO

DEL CAPITULO 37 DE LA PARTE PRIMERA DEL DON QUIJOTE.

DE MIGUEL DE CERVANTES SAAVEDRA.

ORIGINAL TEXT.

VERDADERAMENTE, si bien se considera, señores míos, grandes é inauditas cosas ven los que profesan la órden de la andante caballería. Si no ¡cual de los vivientes habrá en el mundo que ahora por la puerta deste castillo entrara, y de la suerte que estamos nos viera, que juzgue y crea que nosotros somos quien somos? ¡Quien podrá decir que esta señora que está á mi lado es la gran reina, que todos sabemos, y que yo soy aquel caballero de la Triste Figura que anda por ahí en boca de la fama? Ahora no hay que dudar, sino que esta arte y ejercicio excede á todas aquellas y aquellos que los hombres inventaron, y tanto mas se ha de tener en estima, cuanto á mas peligros

The same, modernized by VICENTE SALVÁ.

VERDADERAMENTE si bien se considera, señores míos, grandes é inauditas cosas ven los que siguen la órden de la andante caballería. Porque ¡quien habría en el mundo, que si ahora por la puerta de este castillo entrara, y de la suerte que estamos nos viera, juzgase y creyese que nosotros somos lo que somos? Quien podría decir que esta señora que está á mi lado, es la gran reina que todos sabemos, y que yo soy aquel caballero de la Triste Figura que anda por ahí en boca de la fama? No hai pues que dudar que esta arte y ejercicio esceden á todos los que inventaron los hombres, y tanto mas se han de estimar, cuanto á mas peligros están sujetos. Quitenseme de

* In order to show practically the difference between the Spanish language of the present day and that of the sixteenth century, Mr. Salvá has transcribed here an extract from Cervantes, the most celebrated and least antiquated writer of that period introducing such changes as he thinks the illustrious author of Don Quixote would adopt himself, were he to write now

esta sujeto. Quitenseme delante los que dijeron que las letras hacen ventaja á las armas, que les diré, y sean quien se fueren, que no saben lo que dicen: porque la razon que los tales suelen decir, y á lo que ellos mas se atienen, es que los trabajos del espíritu exceden á los del cuerpo, y que las armas solo con el cuerpo se ejercitan, como si fuese su ejercicio oficio de ganapanes, para el cual no es menester mas de buenas fuerzas: ó como si en esto que llamamos armas los que las profesamos no se encerrasen los actos de la fortaleza, los cuales piden para ejecutarlos mucho entendimiento; ó como si no trabajase el ánimo del guerrero que tiene á su cargo un ejército ó la defensa de una ciudad sitiada, así con el espíritu como con el cuerpo. Si no, véase si se alcanza con las fuerzas corporales á saber y conjeturar el intento del enemigo, los designios, las estratagemas, las dificultades, el prevenir los daños que se temen, que todas estas cosas son acciones del entendimiento, en quien no tiene parte alguna el cuerpo. Siendo pues así que las armas requieren espíritu como las letras, veamos ahora cual de los dos espíritus, el del letrado ó el del guerrero, trabaja mas: y esto se vendrá á conocer por el fin y paradero á que cada uno se encamina, porque aquella intencion se ha de estimar en mas que tiene por objeto mas noble fin.

delante los que dijeron que las letras llevan ventaja á las armas, que les diré, sean quienes fueren, que no saben lo que dicen: porque la razon que los tales suelen alegar, y á la que ellos mas se atienen, es, que los trabajos del espíritu exceden á los del cuerpo, y que las armas se ejercitan solo con el cuerpo; como si el ejercitarlas fuese oficio de ganapanes para el cual no es menester mas que buenas fuerzas; ó como si en esto que llamamos armas los que las seguimos, no se encerrasen todos los actos de la fortaleza, los cuales piden mucho entendimiento en el que ha de ejecutarlos; ó como si no trabajase el ánimo del guerrero que tiene á su cargo un ejército ó la defensa de una ciudad sitiada, así con el espíritu como con el cuerpo. Si no, véase si se alcanza con las fuerzas corporales á conjeturar y saber la intencion del enemigo, los designios, las estratagemas, las dificultades, el prevenir los daños que se temen; que todas estas cosas son actos del entendimiento, en que no tiene parte alguna el cuerpo. Siendo pues así que las armas requieren entendimiento como las letras, veamos ahora cual trabaja mas, si el del letrado ó el del guerrero; y esto se vendrá á conocer por el fin y paradero á que cada uno se encamina, porque aquella intencion se ha de estimar en mas, que tiene por objeto un fin mas noble,

The same in good English.

EXTRACT

FROM THE 37TH CHAPTER OF THE FIRST PART OF

DON QUIXOTE.

BY MIGUEL DE CERVANTES SAAVEDRA.

IN truth, gentlemen, if it be well considered, great and unheard-of things do they see who profess the order of knight-errantry. If any one thinks otherwise, let me ask him, what man living, that should now enter at this castle-gate, and see us sitting in this manner, could judge or believe us to be the persons we really are? Who could say, that this lady, sitting here by my side, is that great queen that we all know her to be, and that I am that Knight of the Sorrowful Figure, so blazoned abroad by the mouth of fame? There is no doubt, but that this art and profession exceeds all that have been ever invented by men; and so much the more honorable is it, by how much it is exposed to more dangers. Away with those who say, that letters have the advantage over arms: I will tell them, be they who they will, that they do not know what they say. For the reason they usually give, and which they lay the greatest stress upon, is, that the labors of the brain exceed those of the body, and that arms are exercised by the body alone; as if

the use of them were the business of porters, for which nothing is necessary but downright strength; or as if in this, which we, who profess it, call chivalry, were not included the acts of fortitude, which require a very good understanding to execute them; or as if the mind of the warrior, who has an army or the defence of a besieged city committed to his charge, does not labor with his understanding as well as his body. If not, let us see how, by mere bodily strength, he will be able to penetrate into the designs of the enemy, to form stratagems, overcome difficulties, and prevent dangers which threaten: for all these things are acts of the understanding, in which the body has no share at all. It being so, then, that arms employ the mind as well as letters, let us next see whose mind labors most, the scholar's or the warrior's. And this may be determined by the scope and ultimate end of each: for that intention is to be the most esteemed which has the noblest end for its object.

FAMILIAR PHRASES.

TO BE LEARNED BY HEART.

I

Buenos dias, señor; ¿como le va á V.?

Muy bien, para servir á V.

Buenas tardes, señora; ¿como está V.?

Bastante bien, muchas gracias.

Buenas noches, caballeros; ¿como vamos?

Muy bien; ¿y V.?

La cabeza me duele.

¿Como está su señor padre de V.?

Está un poco indispuesto.

¿Y como va su señora madre de V.?

Va un poco mejor.

II

¿Tiene V. noticias de su señor tio?

Si, señor, recibí ayer una carta de él.

¿Dónde está ahora?

Está viajando en Italia.

¿Ha estado en la ciudad de Roma?

Estuvo en ella cuatro semanas.

¿Y adonde ha ido ahora?

A Nápoles.

¿Cuándo piensa volver?

En tres ó cuatro meses.

Adios, señor.

I

Good day, sir; how are you?

Very well, at your service.

Good afternoon, madam; how are you?

Pretty well, I thank you.

Good evening, gentlemen; how do you do?

Very well; and you?

I have a headache.

How is your father?

He is a little indisposed.

And how is your mother?

She is better.

II

Have you any news from your uncle?

Yes, sir, I received a letter from him yesterday.

Where is he now?

He is travelling in Italy.

Has he been in the city of Rome?

He stopped there four weeks.

And where has he gone to now?

To Naples.

When does he intend to come back?

In three or four weeks.

Good-by, sir

III.

¿Puede V. decirme, quien es este señor?
 Es el señor médico, Don Luis de Ortega.
 ¿Es buen médico?
 Si, señor; ha hecho las mas maravillosas curas.
 ¿Donde vive?
 Vive en la calle vigésima prima, No. 12.
 ¿Tiene mucho que hacer?
 Es el médico de mas nombre de la ciudad.
 ¿Hay ahora mucha fiebre amarilla aquí?
 No, señor; no es la temporada de la fiebre.

IV.

¿De donde viene V.?
 De la casa del amigo Pancho.
 ¿Y como está?
 El pobre está muy enfermo.
 ¿Que tiene?
 Una tos muy violenta.
 Entonces iré inmediatamente á verle.
 V. le complacerá muchísimo.
 ¿Está solo, ó hay gente en su casa?
 No habia nadie cuando le dejé.

V.

¿Que hay de nuevo?
 No mucho.
 ¿Ha leído V. los diarios de hoy?
 ¿Que dicen de Garibaldi?
 Que ha entrado en Nápoles.
 ¿Y del rey de Cerdeña, Victor Emanuel?

III.

Can you tell me, who is this gentleman?
 He is the physician, Mr. Louis de Ortega.
 Is he a good doctor?
 Yes, sir; he has made most remarkable cures.
 Where does he live?
 He lives at No. 12, Twenty first-street.
 Has he much to do?
 He is the most popular physician of this city.
 Is there much yellow fever here now?
 No, sir; this is not the fever season.

IV.

Where do you come from?
 From our friend Pancho's house.
 And how is he?
 The poor fellow is very sick.
 What is the matter with him?
 He has a very violent cough.
 Then I will pay him a visit immediately.
 You will do him a great favor.
 Is he alone, or has he company with him?
 There was nobody with him when I left him.

V.

What are the news?
 Nothing in particular.
 ¿Have you read to-day's paper?
 What do they say of Garibaldi?
 That he has entered Naples.
 And of the king of Sardinia, Victor Emanuel?

Que está acercandose á Nápoles tambien.

¿Que hace el rey Bombino?

Está preparandose para marchar.

¿Para donde?

Quien sabe? tal vez se marchará á España.

VI

¿Que quiere V.?

Papel de cartas, una pluma y tinta.

Sientese V. á mi escritorio, V. encontrará en el todo lo que V. quiere.

¿Que fecha tenemos hoy?

El 20 de Noviembre.

Tenga V. la bondad de darme tambien una oblea.

No tengo obleas, sino lacre.

Hagame V. el favor de darme su cortaplumas.

¿No prefiere V. escribir con una pluma de acero?

Las plumas de ave me gustan mas.

VII

¿Que hora es?

No lo sé, mi reloj está parado.

Quiere V. darle cuerda?

i, señor, pero no tengo llave.

Prestaré á V. la mia.

Mi reloj casi siempre está adelantado.

Y el mio siempre está atrasado.

¿Tiene V. un reloj de oro?

¿A quien le compró V.?

Al relojero, Don Enrique Fischer.

That he is also approaching Naples.

What is King Bombino doing?

He is preparing to go.

Where to?

Who knows?—he may go to Spain.

VI

What do you want?

Pen and ink, and letter-paper.

Sit down at my desk; you will find there every thing you want.

What day of the month is it?

November 20th.

Give me also a wafer, if you please.

I have no wafers, but here is sealing-wax.

Lend me your penknife, if you please.

Would you not rather write with a steel-pen?

I prefer goose-quills.

VII

What o'clock is it?

I do not know; my watch has stopped.

Would you wind it up?

Yes, sir; but I have no key.

I will lend you mine.

My watch is almost always too fast.

And mine is always too slow.

Have you a gold watch?

Of whom did you buy it?

Of the watchmaker Henry Fischer.

VIII.

¿Que tiempo hace
Hace muy buen tiempo.
Tendremos luna esta noche?

Si, señor, y habrá música en la plaza.

¿En que plaza?

En la plaza de armas.

¿Donde está situada esa plaza?

Delante de la casa del gobernador.

¿Como se llama el actual capitán-general de Cuba?

El Señor Don Francisco Serrano, conde de San Antonio.

IX.

¿Han dado ya las doce?

Todavía no; faltan cinco minutos.

He de estar en la escuela á las doce.

¿Que lecciones toma V.?

Lecciones de Latin y de Griego.

¿Ha leído V. el Homero?

Si, señor; es bastante difícil.

¿Cuantos cantos tiene la Iliada? Veinticuatro.

¿De cual guerra se habla en este poema?

De la guerra de los Griegos contra los Troyanos.

X.

¿Le gusta á V. esta señorita?

Me gusta mucho, porque tiene gracia para todo.

¿Como ha dormido V.?

He dormido muy bien.

VIII.

How is the weather?

It is very fine.

Shall we have moonlight to-night?

Yes, sir; and there will be music on the square.

On which square?

On the "*Plaza de Armas*."

Where is that square?

It faces the house of the governor.

What is the name of the present captain-general of Cuba?

Mr. Francis Serrano, count of San Antonio.

IX.

Has it already struck twelve o'clock?

Not yet; it lacks five minutes of it.

I have to be at school at twelve o'clock.

What lessons do you take?

Latin and Greek.

Have you read Homer?

Yes, sir; he is a very difficult author.

How many cantos has the Iliad? Twenty-four.

Of what war does this poem treat?

Of the war between the Greeks and the Trojans.

X.

How do you like this young lady?

I like her very well, for she does every thing so gracefully.

How have you slept?

I have slept very well.

¿ Cuando se acuesta V. ?
 Me acuesto tarde.
 ¿ Y cuando se levanta V. ?
 Muy temprano; á las cinco de la mañana.
 ¿ Cuantos años hace que V. está en la Habana ?
 Hace poco mas ó ménos un año.

XI

¿ Tiene V. hambre ?
 No, señor, tengo sed.
 ¿ Quiere V. chocolate ?
 El chocolate no me agrada; prefiero el café.
 Mozo, trae la cafetera.
 Ponga V. la bandeja sobre la mesa.
 El té está muy claro.
 A la verdad, es imposible beberle mejor.
 V. ha de tomar una taza de té.
 Hagame el favor de escusarme.

XII

¿ Como toma V. su café ?
 Muy fuerte.
 ¿ Le echa V. azúcar y crema ?
 Le tomo siempre sin azúcar.
 Cada uno tiene su gusto.
 ¿ No tomará V. otra taza ?
 No mas, gracias; he concluido.
 ¿ Tiene V. sueño ?
 Si, señor, me acostaré.
 ¿ A que hora quiere V. que le llame ?
 A las cinco y media.
 Quiero salir temprano por la mañana.

When do you go to bed ?
 I go to bed late.
 And when do you rise ?
 Very early; at five o'clock in the morning.
 How many years have you been in Havana ?
 About one year.

XI

Are you hungry ?
 No, sir, I am thirsty.
 Would you have some chocolate ?
 I do not like chocolate; I prefer coffee.
 Waiter, bring the coffee.
 Put the tray on the table.
 The tea is very weak.
 It could not be better.
 You must take a cup of tea.
 Please excuse me.

XII

How do you take your coffee ?
 Very strong.
 Do you take sugar and cream ?
 I always drink it without sugar.
 Every one to his taste.
 Will you not take another cup ?
 No more, thank you; I have done.
 Are you sleepy ?
 Yes, sir; I will go to bed.
 At what o'clock shall I wake you ?
 At half-past five o'clock.
 I wish to go out early in the morning.

XIII.

La comida está lista.
 Oaballero, se servirá V. venir á
 comer con nosotros hoy.
 Con mucho gusto, siempre que
 V. no gaste complimientos.
 Entremos al comedor.
 Señoras y señores, sirvanse Vs.
 sentarse.
 Mozo, aquí falta un cubierto;
 pongale V.
 Me parece que tenemos buena
 sopa, ¿quien quiere?
 Por mi parte, no quiero sopa.
 Deme V. un poco de esta gallina
 cocida.
 ¿Que parte ¿refiere V.?

XIV.

Llévate la sopa y el cocido, y trae
 el asado.
 ¿Quien sabe trinchar?
 Sirvase V. trinchar este pato, y
 dar á esta señora un pedacito
 de la pechuga.
 ¿Gusta V. de este fricase?
 Gracias, quiero reservarme para
 el asado..
 ¿Quiere V. carne gorda ó ma-
 gra?
 Permitame V. que le sirva un
 alon de esta perdiz.
 Está muy tierna y tiene muy
 buen gusto.
 Aline V. la ensalada, y sirvase
 V. de ella.
 Señoras, á la salud de Vs.
 Bebo á la salud de toda la com-
 pañia.

XIII.

Dinner is ready.
 I beg you will dine with us to-
 day, sir.
 With much pleasure, provided
 you will use no ceremony.
 Let us go into the dining-room.
 Ladies and gentlemen, please be
 seated.
 Waiter, there is a plate wanting
 here; bring one.
 This soup seems good; who will
 have some?
 For my part, I am not fond of
 soup.
 Help me to some of this boiled
 fowl.
 What part do you prefer?

XIV.

Take away the soup and boiled
 meat, and bring in the roast-
 beef.
 Who understands carving?
 Be so kind as to carve that duck,
 and help this lady to some of
 the breast.
 Will you let me help you to some
 of this fricasee?
 Thank you; I reserve my appe-
 tite for the roast-meat.
 Will you have some fat or some
 lean?
 Let me help you to a wing of this
 partridge.
 It is very tender and good.
 Dress the salad, and help your-
 self.
 Ladies, your health!
 I drink the health of the whole
 company.

XV.

Señora, á los piés de V.
 Vamos, los vasos llenos á la redonda.
 Quizá esas señoras preferirán el vino de champaña.
 ¡Como halla V. este vino?
 Es excelente, pero no soy gran bebedor.
 Mozo, da de beber al señor.

Traiga V. los postres.
 ¡Le gustan á V. las fresas con vino ó con leche?
 Estas fresas tienen un olor que encanta.
 Un vaso de vino encima no hará daño.
 V. dice bien.
 Vamos á dar un paseo en el jardín.

XVI

Ahora llueve muy recio.
 Pongamonos al abrigo.
 No es mas que un chubasco.
 Luego pasará.
 Estoy todo mojado.
 Temo resfriarme.
 El tiempo se aclara, y veo el arco iris.
 Es señal de buen tiempo.
 La lluvia ha hecho cesar la polvareda.
 Las calles están muy enlodadas.
 No se puede salir á la calle?
 El empedrado resbala mucho.
 Hace viento?
 El viento es frio.
 V. hará bien de ponerse su sobretodo.
 Toma V. tambien su paraguas.

XV

Madam, my respects to you.
 Come, fill your glasses all around.
 Perhaps the ladies would prefer champagne.
 What do you think of this wine?
 It is excellent, but I am not a great drinker.
 Waiter, give the gentlemen to drink.
 Bring the dessert.
 Do you like strawberries with wine or cream?
 These strawberries have a fine flavor.
 A glass of wine after this will not be amiss.
 It is a very good thought.
 Let us go and take a turn in the garden.

XVI

It rains now very fast.
 Let us go under shelter.
 It is only a shower.
 It will soon be over.
 I am quite wet.
 I am afraid of catching cold.
 It clears up, and I see the rainbow.
 It is a sign of fair weather.
 The rain has laid the dust.
 The streets are very dirty.
 Is it bad walking?
 The streets are very slippery.
 Does the wind blow?
 The wind blows cold.
 You will do well to put on your overcoat.
 Take also your umbrella.

XVII.

El río se ha helado.
 Se puede patinar sin riesgo.
 Hace un sol hermoso.
 Hace un calor que sofoca.
 Porgamonos á la sombra.
 Habrá tempestad.
 El tiempo está cerrado por todos
 lados.
 Los truenos se oyen.
 ¡Que truéno!
 Tengo mucho miedo á los truenos.
 Hay muy pocos que no le teman.

XVIII.

Aquí está su fraque de V.; va-
 mos á probarle.
 Hacen arrugas los hombros.
 Hagame V. una levita, y cuide
 V. que estén bien hechos los
 ojales, y bien cosidos los bo-
 tones.
 Ese pantalon es demasiado es-
 trecho.
 Venga V. mañana, si puede, y sea
 V. mas puntual que hoy.
 Oiga V.: tome V. la capa que
 llevo puesta para componerla,
 pero ántes lleve V. al quita
 manchas.

XIX.

Estas botas son tan estrechas, que
 no me las podré poner sin tira-
 botas.
 No le habia dicho á V., que me
 gusta llevar un calzado muy
 ancho!
 Estan justas á fin de que sienten
 bien.
 Luego se ensancharán, el becerro
 dará de sí.

XVII.

The river is frozen over.
 One may skate safely upon it
 The sun shines.
 It is excessively hot.
 Let us go into the shade.
 We shall have a storm.
 The whole sky is cloudy.
 It thunders.
 What a clap of thunder!
 I am very much afraid of thunder
 There are few people who are not
 afraid of it.

XVIII.

Here is your dress-coat; please
 try it on.
 It wrinkles on the shoulders.
 Make me a frock-coat. Let the
 button-holes be well made, and
 the buttons well sewed on.
 These pantaloons are too tight.
 Come to-morrow if you can, but
 be more punctual than to-day
 Look here: take this cloak to be
 mended, but bring it first to
 the scourer to be cleaned.

XIX.

These boots are so tight, that I
 cannot put them on without
 hooks.
 Did I not tell you, that I like to
 wear a very wide shoe!
 They are tight, in order to fit
 your foot exactly.
 They will become wider after-
 wards: the leather gives way.

Vaya, no me vienen, está visto.

Lléveselas V., y hágame otras con suelas mas gruesas; y que los zapatos sean de modo que pueda ponerme los sin calzador.

XX

¿Que tragedia hacen hoy?

No lo sé; no he visto los carteles.

Habrà poca entrada hoy, pero mañana habrà muchísima gente.

Porqué?

Porque el famoso actor americano, Forrest, desempeñará su gran papel del rey Lear.

Este actor merece bien los aplausos.

¿Como son los otros artistas?

El gaian es muy bueno, la primera dama desempeña su papel con poca naturalidad; el barba es muy malo, y el cómico es el mejor.

XXI

¿Estuvo V. en el baile anoche?

Si, señor; jamas he visto baile mas concurrido.

El invierno es la estacion mejor para fiestas.

Habia una infinidad de señoritas bonitas.

¿Que traje llevé la novia de Don José?

Un vestido blanco, con encajes primorosos.

¿Ha bailado V. mucho?

It is evident that they do not like me.

Take them back, and make me another pair with thicker soles: the shoes must also be made so that I can put them on without the horn.

XX

What tragedy do they perform to-day?

I do not know; I have not seen the play-bill.

There will be but few people to-day, but to-morrow it will be crowded.

Why?

Because the renowned American actor, Forrest, will perform his great part of King Lear.

This actor really deserves applause.

How are the other players?

The first lover is very good, but the first young lady is somewhat unnatural; the old man is very bad; and the comic is the best performer of them all.

XXI

Were you at the ball last night?

Yes, sir; I never saw a more crowded hall.

The winter is the best season for festivals.

There were many pretty young ladies there.

How was Mr. Joseph's bride dressed?

She wore a white robe, trimmed with rich lace.

Did you dance much?

Algunos rigodones.

¿Con quien?

Con la Señorita Doña Julia de
Claros.

XXII

¿Quien es la señora que está al
piano?

Es mi sobrina.

Toca divinamente.

¿Como se llama la pieza que ha
tocado?

La abertura de Rigoletto.

¿Quiere V. presentarme á ella?

Con mucho gusto.

Anita, permítame V. que le pre-
sente mi amigo el Señor Don
Pedro Alvarez.

Tengo la honra de presentar á
V. el Señor Alvarez.

Me place infinito hacer su cono-
cimiento.

XXIII

Clertamente, V. tiene un jardín
hermosísimo.

Tenemos, como V. ve, flores de
todas especies.

Yo lo veo; aquí hay claveles muy
hermosos.

Permítame V. coger algunos para
hacer un ramo.

Con mucho gusto; sirvase V. re-
cibir esta rosa para la señorita
su hermana.

No faltaré á darsela.

¿Quiere V. pasar al huerto?

V. tiene mucha horta iza en su
huerto.

Estos albaricoques me hacen la
boca agua.

Some country-dances.

With whom?

With Miss Julia de Claros.

XXII.

Who is that lady sitting at the
piano?

My niece.

She plays admirably well.

What is the name of the piece
she has just played?

The overture of Rigoletto.

Will you introduce me to her?

With the greatest pleasure.

Anna, allow me to introduce to
your acquaintance my friend,
Mr. Pedro Alvarez.

I have the honor to present to
you Mr. Alvarez.

I am very glad to make his ac-
quaintance.

XXIII.

You have, indeed, a very fine
garden.

We have, as you see, all sorts of
flowers.

I see it: here are very fine
pinks.

Let me gather some for a nose-
gay.

With all my heart; please accept
this rose for your sister.

I shall not fail to give it to her.

Will you go to the kitchen-
garden?

Your kitchen-garden is well
stocked with vegetables.

These apricots make my mouth
water.

XXIV

¿Quiere V. que vayamos á cazar uno de estos días?

Si, señor; es V. cazador?

Por supuesto, y voy á cazar muy amenudo.

¿Tiene V. buenos perros?

Tengo dos galgos, cuatro podencos, tres perros de muestra, y uno de espera.

¿Hay mucha caza en el parage donde V. vive?

Muchísima: se pueden cazar perdices, faisanes, chocas perdices, gallinetas, codornices, zorzales, merlas, liebres, conejos, etc.

¿Se divierte V. en la pesca?

Muchísimo.

XXV.

¿Como pesca V.?

Unas veces con red y otras con anzuelo.

¿Abunda en pezes el rio?

Oiertamente; hay muchas carpas y truchas, algunos sollos, y abundancia de anguilas.

¿Tiene V. una buena caña de pescar?

Tengo dos.

Tengo tambien una pita excelente, y algunos anzuelos.

¿Que clase de carnada usa V.?

Moscas y gusanos.

¿Como pasa V. el tiempo cuando no va á cazar ó á pescar?

Jugamos á las bochas, al villar, á los bolos, al chaquete, al ajedrez, á las damas ó á los naipes.

XXIV

Will you go shooting with me some day?

Yes, sir; are you a sportsman?

Of course, and I often go hunting.

Have you a good set of dogs?

I have two greyhounds, four terriers, three setting-dogs, and a pointer.

Is there much game in your neighborhood?

A great deal: we have partridges, pheasants, woodcocks, snipes, quails, thrushes, blackbirds, hares, rabbits, etc.

Are you fond of fishing?

I like it very much.

XXV.

How do you fish?

We fish sometimes with a net, and sometimes with a line.

Is the river well stocked with fish?

Yes, indeed; there is plenty of carp and trout in it, a few pikes, and a great many eels.

Have you a good fishing-rod?

I have two.

I have also an excellent line and some fish-hooks.

What bait do you use?

Flies and worms.

How do you spend your time when you neither hunt nor fish?

We bowl, play at billiards, tennis, backgammon, chess, drafts, or cards.

GENERAL INDEX

AND

ALPHABETICAL GRAMMAR,

COMPRISING ALL THE RULES, OBSERVATIONS, AND EXCEPTIONS CONTAINED IN THIS WORK, ARRANGED IN REGULAR ORDER, FOR THE CONVENIENCE OF REFERENCE.

Explanation of the Abbreviations used.

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| adj. stands for Adjective. | masc. stands for Masculine. |
| adv. " " Adverb. | past part. " " Past participle. |
| art. " " Article. | plur. " " Plural. |
| conj. " " Conjunction. | prep. " " Preposition. |
| ex. " " Example. | pres. part. " " Present participle. |
| exc. " " Exception. | pron. " " Pronoun. |
| fem. " " Feminine. | sing. " " Singular. |
| irr. v. " " Irregular verb. | subst. " " Substantive. |
| lit. " " Literally, in a strict sense. | v. " " Verb. |

The figures or numbers refer to the Rules, unless preceded by p. which means page or L. which stands for Lesson.

A is invariably pronounced as *a* in *far*. See Introductory Lesson, page vii.

A corresponds generally to the English preposition *to* or *at*, 183.—When the article *el*, *the*, is joined to the preposition **a**, both small words are contracted into *al*; but **a la**, **a los**, **a las**, are never so changed, 47.—Most active transitive verbs require the preposition **a** before their direct regimen, when that regimen is a person, 140.—The preposition *ro*, before an infinitive, is sometimes expressed by **a**, 166. See, also, *To*.

A, **AN**, is translated by *un* for the masc., and by *una* for the fem., 6.—Before the names of nations, and those of trades and professions, the article **A** or **AN** is omitted, unless followed by a relative pronoun, or if the noun is qualified by an adjective, 76.—**A** or **AN** is suppressed in Spanish before the words *hundred*, *thousand*, and after *what*, in exclamative sentences, 109.

ABBREVIATIONS.—The most necessary abbreviations are:

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| B. L. M. | <i>Besa las manos</i> , kisses the hands, 306. |
| B. L. P. | <i>Besa los pies</i> , kisses the feet. |
| C ^{te} | <i>compañía</i> , company. |
| Corr ^{te} | <i>corriente</i> , current. |
| D. or D ^a | <i>Don</i> , Sir, Mr., 117. |
| D ^a | <i>Doña</i> , Mrs., 117. |
| Doz. | <i>docena</i> , dozen. |
| Flia., fh. | <i>fecha</i> , dated. |
| Fl. | <i>fulano</i> , such a one, 312. |
| Q. S. M. B. | <i>Que sus manos besa</i> , who kisses your hands, 309 |
| R ⁱ | <i>real</i> , real (shilling) |
| R ^{ci} | <i>recibí</i> , received. |
| S ^r | <i>Señor</i> , Mr., Sir, 117. |
| S ^{ra} | <i>Señora</i> , Mrs., 117. |
| S. S. S. | <i>Su seguro servidor</i> , your faithful servant, 106. |
| S. E. Y. O. | <i>Salvo error y omisión</i> , errors and omissions excepted |
| Ult ^o | <i>último</i> , last. |
| V., Vd., Vm., } | <i>Vuestra merced</i> , or Vind. } your honor, 7. |

ABHOR, to, *abhorrecer*, irreg. verb, goes like *compadecer*, 147.

ABLE.—This termination denotes aptness, fitness. It is joined to verbs of which it makes adjectives. It signifies the liability to undergo the action expressed by the verb. About two hundred adjectives ending with **able** are alike in both languages, 81.

ABOUT, *poco mas ó ménos*, 260.

ABOVE, *arriba*, 178.

ABSENT, to, *ausentar*, p. 174.

ACÁ, *here*, 178.

ACABAR, to finish; *acabar de*, joined to an infinitive, forms with it a particular past tense, generally expressed in English by *To have just*, and a past participle, 181.

ACCENT.—The acute accent (') is the only one used in Spanish. It serves to distinguish words of similar orthography, as in

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>dé</i> , give. | <i>de</i> , of. |
| <i>el</i> , he. | <i>el</i> , the. |
| <i>está</i> , is. | <i>esta</i> , this. |
| <i>mí</i> , me. | <i>mí</i> , my. |
| <i>sé</i> , I know. | <i>se</i> , himself. |
| <i>si</i> , himself. | <i>si</i> , if. |
| <i>té</i> , tea. | <i>te</i> , thee. |
| <i>tú</i> , thou. | <i>tu</i> , thy, etc. |

It also shows in some words what syllable has to be uttered with a particular stress: as in *crisis*, crisis; *cantaré*, he will sing; *pérdida*, loss. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

ACCORDING TO, *según*, 183.

ACCOUNT ON, *á cuenta*, p. 46.

ACREDIT, to, *acreditar*, p. 126.

ACOMPAÑADO DE SU PADRE, accompanied by his father.

ACTIVE VERBS.—See **VERBS**.

ADDRESS.—The most usual modes of address in Spanish are: *Muy Señor mío*, *Querido amigo*, etc., 307.

ADJECTIVE.—The adj. is generally placed after the noun in Spanish, 1.—It may sometimes be placed before it when it has fewer syllables, 40.—It is always placed before when emphasized, 153.—The adjective does not change in English, but in Spanish it takes the gender and number of the noun to which it refers, 21.—Most adjectives are alike in the masculine and in the feminine; but those ending with **o** change **o** into **a**, 22, 185. In Spanish, as in English, adjectives generally take an **s** in the plural; but

those ending with an **s** in the singular do not change in the plural, 5.—Adjectives ending with a consonant in the singular take **os** in the pl., 23.—Adjectives ending with **z** change **z** into **ces**, 67.—Review of the formation of the plural of adjectives, 68.

When an adjective refers to two or more nouns or pronouns, either singular or plural, and of different genders, it takes the masculine plural form.—Ex. *Su padre y su madre son buenos*, his father and mother are good, 170.

Some adjectives, as well as verbs, require to be followed by certain prepositions, the use of which cannot always be determined by rules. They will be found explained each in its alphabetical place in the Index.

The degrees of comparison are generally formed by placing before the adjective one of the following words: **Tan**, *as*; **mas**, *more*; **ménos**, *less*; **leat**; **muy**, *very*; **bastante**, *enough*, *tolerably*, etc., 52. For the exceptions to this rule, together with another form of the superlative, by adding **ísimo**, *ísima*, which is less frequently used, see 205 and 296.

When the adjective is one which requires to be placed after the noun, according to Rule 1, the adverbs **tan**, **mas**, **ménos**, **muy**, etc., go over with it, 53.

The possessive adjectives are: **Mi**, *mis*, *my*; **tu**, *tus*, *thy*; **su**, *sus*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*; **nuestro**, *nuestra*, *nuestros*, *nuestras*, *our*; and **vuestro**, *vuestra*, *vuestros*, *vuestras*, *your*, 143.—In Spanish, the possessive adjective agrees in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, 23.—The possessive adjective may be placed before or after the noun which it determines; but when it is placed after it, **mío**, **tuyo**, and **suyo** have to be used instead of **mi**, **tu**, **su**, 142.

The demonstrative adjectives are: **Este**, *esta*, *this*, 2; **estos**, *estas*, *these*; **aquel**, *aquella*, *that*; **aquellos**, *aquellas*, *those*, 14.—**Esto** and **aquello** are used instead of *este* and *aquel* before an adjective, when the noun to which that adjective refers is not expressed. See note f, on page 4.

For the proper use of *ese, esa, ese, esos, esas*, another equivalent of *this, that, these, those*, see 277.

The indefinite adjectives, *algun, a me, or any; cada, each, or every; ningun, no, not any*; together with *que, cual, which, or what*, etc., will be found explained each in its alphabetical place in the Index.

The numeral adjectives are either cardinal or ordinal.

The cardinal are:

1. Uno, una.
2. Dos.
3. Tres.
4. Cuatro.
5. Cinco.
6. Seis.
7. Siete.
8. Ocho.
9. Nueve.
10. Diez.
11. Once.
12. Doce.
13. Trece.
14. Catorce.
15. Quince.
16. Diez y seis.
17. Diez y siete.
18. Diez y ocho.
19. Diez y nueve.
20. Veinte.
21. Veintiuno.
22. Treinta.
23. Cuarenta.
24. Cincuenta.
25. Sesenta.
26. Setenta.
27. Ochenta.
28. Noventa.
29. Ciento (100).
30. Doscientos.
31. Trescientos.
32. Cuatrocientos.
33. Quinientos.
34. Seiscientos.
35. Setecientos.
36. Ochocientos.
37. Novecientos.
38. Mil, etc.

The ordinal are:

- 1st. Primero.
- 2d. Segundo.
- 3d. Tercero.
- 4th. Cuarto.
- 5th. Quinto.
- 6th. Sexto.
- 7th. Séptimo.

- 8th. Octavo.
- 9th. Nono.
- 10th. Décimo.
- 11th. Undécimo.
- 12th. Duodécimo.
- 13th. Décimotercero.
- 14th. Décimocuarto.
- 15th. Décimoquinto.
- 16th. Décimosexto.
- 17th. Décimoséptimo.
- 18th. Décimooctavo.
- 19th. Décimonono.
- 20th. Vigésimo.
- 21st. Vigésimo primero.
- 22nd. Trigésimo.
- 23rd. Cuadragésimo.
- 24th. Quinquagésimo.
- 25th. Sexagésimo.
- 26th. Septuagésimo.
- 27th. Octogésimo.
- 28th. Nonogésimo.
- 29th. Centésimo.
- 300th. Milésimo, etc.

The cardinal numbers are used instead of the ordinal in speaking of the days of the month, and of sovereigns and princes, but *primero* is never so changed, 311.

In English, the fractional numbers are like the ordinal, but in Spanish they have a particular ending, the termination *avo* being added to the cardinal form.

- $\frac{1}{3}$ Un tresavo.
 $\frac{1}{4}$ Un cuatroavo.
 $\frac{1}{5}$ Un cincoavo.
 $\frac{1}{6}$ Un seisavo, etc., 135.

Admirar, to admire, p. 136.

Adornar, to adorn, p. 268.

Adquirir, to acquire. — *Irregular*. — Pres. part. *Adquiriendo*. — Past part. *Adquirido*. — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Yo adquiero, tú adquieres, él adquiere, nosotros adquirimos, vosotros adquirís, ellos adquieren*. — Imperfect: *Yo adquiría, tú adquirías, él adquiría, nosotros adquiríamos, vosotros adquiríais, ellos adquirían*. — Past tense definite: *Yo adquirí, tú adquiriste, él adquirió, nosotros adquirimos, vosotros adquiristeis, ellos adquirieron*. — Future: *Yo adquiriré, tú adquirirás, él adquirirá, nosotros adquiriremos, vosotros adquiriréis, ellos adquirirán*. — Conditional mood: *Yo adquiriría, tú adquirirías, él adquiriría, nosotros adquiriríamos, vosotros adquiriríais, ellos adquirirían*.

quisirais, ellos adquirieran.—Imperative mood: *Adquiere, adquirid*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que yo adquiriera, que tú adquirieras, que él adquiriera, que nosotros adquiráramos, que vosotros adquirierais, que ellos adquirieran*.—Subjunctive past: *Que yo adquiriera, or adquiriese; que tú adquirieras, or adquirieses; que él adquiriera, or adquiriese; que nosotros adquiriéramos, or adquiriésemos; que vosotros adquirierais, or adquirieseis; que ellos adquirieran, or adquiriesen*.—The second future is: *Yo adquiriré, tú adquirirás, él adquirirá, nosotros adquiriremos, vosotros adquiriréis, ellos adquirirán*.

Inquirir, to inquire, is conjugated like *adquirir*.

Adverbs.—A great many adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives by the addition of **mente**, which corresponds to the English ending *ly*. The termination **mente** is always added to the feminine form of the adjective, 20.—The adverb is generally placed after the verb, and before every other kind of words, 177.

The rules for the formation of the comparative and superlative of adjectives apply also to the adverbs, 52, 205.—For a list of those which are irregular, see 293.

When two expressions in the comparative are compared together, the first must be preceded by **cuanto**, and the second by **tanto**, 171.

List of the principal adverbs, 178. Those which require particular notice will be found explained each in its alphabetical place in the Index.

Afecto a su amigo, attached to his friend.

A FEW.—See *Algun*.

Affirmation.—There is no such word as DO or DID to give greater strength to an affirmation in Spanish; so that these two expressions, *I use, and I do use*, have but one translation, *uso*. But the use of the verb TO BE, joined to the present participle to indicate that the action is going on, is quite frequent, 41.

Afligir, to afflict, *afligido de*, afflicted with, 150.

AFRAID, TO BE, tener miedo, 72, or *temer*, 166.

AFTER, as an adverb, *después*; as a prep., *después de*, 178.

AGAIN.—There is no exact equivalent to this word in Spanish, and this deficiency has to be supplied by means of the verb **volver**, to return, or the expression **otra vez**, another time, according to the following model sentences:

To do a thing again,
Volver a hacer una cosa;

literally,

To return to do a thing.

or, *Hacer una cosa otra vez,*

literally,

To do a thing another time.

AGAINST, contra, 183.

AGAINST EACH OTHER, uno con otro, 251.

AGE.—Words ending with **age** in English generally end with **aje** in Spanish, 196.

A GOOD DEAL, A GREAT DEAL, *muchísimo*.

Agradable de, or *para beber*, agreeable to drink.

AGREE, to, convenir, goes like *venir*, 247.

Ahora.—See Now.

Air, aire, is masc. by exception.

Aje.—Words ending with **aje** in Spanish end with **age** in English, 196.

Al.—Many words ending with **al** are alike, or nearly so, in both languages, 19.

ALARM, to, alarmar, p. 245.

Alegre de, or con las noticias glad of the news.

Alguen, anybody, somebody, any one, some one, can be used only with out a substantive.

Algun.—Some or ANY is translated by **alguno** for the masculine singular; by **alguna**, for the fem. sing.; by **algunos**, for the plur. masculine; and by **algunas**, for the fem. plural. **Algun** is used instead of **alguno** before a noun masculine, 12.

ALL is translated by **todo**, before a word masculine singular; by **toda** before a word feminine singular; by **todos**, before a word masc. plural; and by **todas**, before a word feminine plural. It is almost always followed by the article THE, 48.

Allá, there, 178.

Allí, there, 178.

ALMOST, casi.

ALREADY, ya, 178.

Also, también.

ALTHOUGH, *cualquiera*, 215.
ALWAYS, *siempre*, 178.
AMENAZADO de, or **por un peligro**, threatened with danger.
AMONG, *entre*, 183.

AN.—Many words ending with **an** in English end with **ano** in Spanish, and have their feminine in **ana**, 112.

ANNIHILATE, *aniquilar*, p. 222.
ANOS.—Many words ending with **anos** in English end with **ancia** in Spanish, 35.

ANCIA.—Many words ending with **ancia** in Spanish end with **ances** in English, 35.

AND, *y*, 215.—**á** is used instead of **y**, before words beginning with **i** or **hi**.

ANDAR, to walk.—**IRR. V.**—Present part. *Andando*.—Past part. *Andado*.—**INDIC. MOOD, PRES. TENSE**: *Yo ando, tú andas, él anda, nosotros andamos, vosotros andáis, ellos andan*.—**IMPERFECT**: *Yo andia, tú andias, él andia, nosotros andiamos, vosotros andiais, ellos andian*.—**PAST TENSE DEFINITE**: *Yo anduve, tú anduviste, él anduvo, nosotros anduvimos, vosotros anduvisteis, ellos anduvieron*.—**FUTURE**: *Yo andaré, tú andarás, él andará, nosotros andaremos, vosotros andaréis, ellos andarán*.—**CONDITIONAL MOOD**: *Yo andaría, tú andarías, él andaría, nosotros andaríamos, vosotros andaríais, ellos andarían*.—**IMPERATIVE MOOD**: *Anda, andad*.—**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRES. TENSE**: *Que yo ande, que tú andes, que él ande, que nosotros andemos, que vosotros andéis, que ellos anden*.—**SUBJUNCTIVE PAST**: *Que yo anduviera, or anduviese; que tú anduvieras, or anduvieses; que él anduviera, or anduviese; que nosotros anduviéramos, or anduviésemos; que vosotros anduviérais, or anduviéseis; que ellos anduvieran, or anduviesen*.—**THE SECOND FUTURE IS**: *Yo anduviere, tú anduvieres, él anduviere, nosotros anduviéremos, vosotros anduviéreis, ellos anduvieren*.

ANNOUNCE, *anunciar*, 164.
ANO.—Many words ending with **ano** in Spanish end with **an** in English, 112.

ANSIOSO de, or **por la gloria**, ambitious of glory.

ANT.—Many words ending with **ant** in English end with **ante** in Spanish, and from these corresponding nouns may generally be formed by changing

ante into **ancia**, a termination equivalent to **anos** or **ancy** in English, 35.

ANTE.—Many words ending with **ante** in Spanish end with **ant** in English, 35.

ANY or **SOME** is translated by **alguno** for the masculine singular; by **alguna**, for the feminine singular by **algunos**, for the masc. plural and by **algunas**, for the feminine plural.—**Algun** is used instead of **alguno** before a noun masc., 12.

SOME or **ANY** is sometimes translated by **unos, unas**, 204.

ANY THING, *alguna cosa*.
ANYWHERE, *alguna parte*.

APPEAR, TO, *parecer*, goes like *compadecer*, 147.

APPLAUD, TO, *aplaudir*, p. 137.

ARGUIR, here, 178.

ARGUIR, to argue.—**IRR. V.**—Present part. *Arguyendo*.—Past part. *Arguido*.—**INDICATIVE MOOD, PRES. TENSE**: *Yo arguyo, tú arguyes, él arguye, nosotros arguimos, vosotros arguís, ellos arguyen*.—**IMPERF.**: *Yo arguía, tú arguías, él arguía, nosotros arguíamos, vosotros arguiais, ellos arguían*.—**PAST TENSE DEF.**: *Yo arguí, tú arguiste, él arguyó, nosotros arguíamos, vosotros arguisteis, ellos arguieron*.—**FUTURE**: *Yo arguiré, tú arguirás, él arguirá, nosotros arguiremos, vosotros arguiréis, ellos arguirán*.—**CONDITIONAL MOOD**: *Yo arguiría, tú arguirías, él arguiría, nosotros arguiríamos, vosotros arguiríais, ellos arguirían*.—**IMPERAT. MOOD**: *Arguye, arguid*.—**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE**: *Que yo arguya, que tú arguyas, que él arguya, que nosotros arguyamos, que vosotros arguyais, que ellos arguyan*.—**SUBJUN. PAST**: *Que yo arguiera, or arguiese; que tú arguieras, or arguieses; que él arguiera, or arguiese; que nosotros arguviéramos, or arguviésemos; que vosotros arguviérais, or arguviéseis; que ellos arguieran, or arguiesen*.—**THE 2d FUTURE IS**: *Yo arguiere, tú arguieres, él arguiere, nosotros arguiéremos, vosotros arguiéreis, ellos arguieren*.—See note on p. 114.

ARRIVE, TO, *llegar*, 180.—It is generally followed by the prep. **á**, 201.

ARTICLE.—There are two articles in Spanish, the definite and the indefinite. They agree in gender and number with the word before which they stand. **El** is masc. sing.; **la**, fem. sing.; **los**, masc. plural; and

las, fem. plural. All these answer to **THE** in English, 10.—**A** or **AN** is translated by **un** before a word masculine, and by **una** before a word feminine, 6.

When the article **el** is joined to the preposition **de**, both small words are invariably merged into **del**; but **de la**, **de los**, **de las**, are never so contracted, 34.

When the article **el** is joined to the preposition **á**, both small words are invariably merged into **al**; but **á la**, **á los**, **á las**, are never so contracted, 47.

The article **el**, which enters into the composition of the possessive pronouns, continues subject to contraction when joined to the preposition **de** or **á**.—Ex. *Del mio*, of mine; *al mio*, to mine, 58.

THE, **A** or **AN**, and **SOME**, are sometimes introduced and sometimes left out, contrary to English usage, 74.

Titles are preceded by the article **THE**, in emphatic or ceremonious language, 75.

Before names of nations, and those of trades and professions, the article **A** or **AN** is omitted, unless followed by a relative pronoun, or if the noun is qualified by an adjective, 76.

The definite article **THE** is prefixed to all common nouns in Spanish when they are used to express the whole extent of their signification, provided **some** or **any** cannot be added before them without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence, and that they are not preceded by another determinative word, such as *a* or *an*, *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*, *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, *which*, *what*, *every*, *each*, *several*, *a few*, etc.; an adjective indicative of quantity, such as *much*, *many*, *little*, *few*, *more*, *less*, etc.; or the particles *de*, *con*, *sin*, *ni*, or *por*, 289.

The definite article is also used before titles, and then politeness often requires the addition of *Señor*, *Señora*, or *Señorita*, 290.

The definite article is suppressed before the ordinal numbers in sentences like the following: *Libro primero*, Book the first; *Carlos quinto*, Charles the Fifth, 291.

The article and all determinative words, are generally repeated before

each noun in Spanish, especially when these are of different genders, 316.

The article **un**, **una**, **A** or **AN**, being to a degree synonymous with the numeral adjective **uno**, **una**, **ONE**, it is generally left out in Spanish, unless it is required to express more clearly the idea of unity, 246.

The determinatives **THE**, **A**, **AN**, etc., are often used in the masculine, instead of the feminine, before nouns beginning with an accented **á**, for the sake of euphony, and to avoid the too frequent recurrence of two *a*'s following each other, 135.

The definite article **THE** is used instead of the possessive adjective, before a regimen, when the sense clearly shows who the possessor is. This substitution is particularly proper before the name of a part of the body or of a mental faculty; but in order to avoid ambiguity, care must be taken to make use of a pronoun showing who the possessor is:

Ex. *Se ha cortado el dedo*,
He has cut his finger.

Lo is used instead of **el** before an adjective, when the noun to which that adjective refers is not expressed, as in *Lo sublime*. This is what is commonly called the neuter in Spanish. See note on page 4, and Obs. 170.

As.—In the comparative of equality, **as** is translated by **tan** before the adjective, and by **como** after it, 55.

Asir, to seize.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Asiendo*.—Past part. *Asido*.—Indicative mood, present tense: *Yo asgo, tú ases, él ase, nosotros asimos, vosotros asis, ellos asen*.—Imperfect: *Yo asia, tú asias, él asia, nosotros asíamos, vosotros asiais, ellos asían*.—Past tense definite: *Yo así, tú asiste, él asió, nosotros asimos, vosotros asisteis, ellos asieron*.—Future: *Yo asiré, tú asirás, él asirá, nosotros asiremos, vosotros asiréis, ellos asirán*.—Condit. mood: *Yo asiria, tú asirias, él asiria, nosotros asiriamos, vosotros asiriais, ellos asirían*.—Imperative mood: *Asé, asid*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que yo asga, que tú asgas, que él asga, que nosotros asgamos, que vosotros asgaís, que ellos asgan*.—Subjunctive past: *Que yo asiera, or asiese; que tú asieras,*

en asieses; que él asiera, or asiese; que nosotros asiéramos, or asiésemos; que vosotros asiérais, or asiéis; que ellos asieran, or asiesen.—The second future is: *Yo asiere, tú asieres, él asiere, nosotros asiéremos, vosotros asiéreis, ellos asieren.*

As **MANY**, is translated by **tantos** before a word masc., and by **tantas** before a word fem., 250.

As **MUCH**, is translated by **tanto** before a word masc., and by **tanta** before a word fem., 250.

ASSAIL, to, *arremeter*, p. 152.

ATTRACT, to, *atraer*, 288.

ATTRIBUTE, to, *atribuir*, p. 145.

AUGMENT, to, *aumentar*, 99.

AUGMENTATIVES are formed by the addition of **azo**, **on**, or **ote**, for the masc., and **aza**, **ona**, or **ota**, for the fem.: with the only exception that the nouns or adjectives ending with **a**, **e**, or **o**, drop their final vowel. The augmentatives are, however, but little used, inasmuch as they invariably carry with them an idea of reproach or defect, 267.

AUNT, *tía*, 214.

AUXILIARY VERBS.—See *Haber*, 44; *Ser*, 77; and *Estar*, 88. For the proper use of *Ser* and *Estar*, see 28.—Difference between *tener* and *haber*, 44.

AWAKE, to, *despertar*, 88, 99, 122.

B is sounded in Spanish as in English. **B** and **V**. are often used for each other. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

BAD, *mal*, 89, 52.

BAJO, low, 212.

BANK of a river, *la márgen*, 172.

BE, to.—There are two words corresponding to this verb in Spanish, *ser* and *estar*, but they cannot be employed indiscriminately, 28.—Conjugation of *ser*, 77.—Conjugation of *estar*, 88.

The verb **TO BE** is replaced by **tener**, **TO HAVE**, in the following idiomatic expressions:

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Tener calor,</i> | to be warm. |
| <i>Tener sueño,</i> | to be sleepy. |
| <i>Tener frío,</i> | to be cold. |
| <i>Tener miedo,</i> | to be afraid. |
| <i>Tener hambre,</i> | to be hungry. |
| <i>Tener sed,</i> | to be thirsty. |
| <i>Tener vergüenza,</i> | to be ashamed. |
| <i>Tener razón,</i> | to be right, 73. |

The verb **hacer** is used instead of **TO BE**, in speaking of the weather

Ex. *Hace hermoso tiempo,*
it is fine weather.

Hace calor,
it is warm weather.

Hace frío,
it is cold weather, 87.

Conjugation of the impersonal verb **THERE TO BE**, *haber*, 139.

The verb **TO BE** is sometimes translated by **deber**, but only when joined to an infinitive, in which case it forms with it a particular future tense, expressive of duty, necessity, or purpose, as in the following sentence:

¿Que debo hacer?
what am I to do? 227.

BE ABLE, to, *poder*, 206.

BE AFRAID, to, *temer*, 166.

BE BORN, to, *nacer*, p. 192.

BE CALLED, to, *llamarse*, 181.

BECAUSE, *porque*.—*Porque*, why, is distinguished from *porque*, because, by an accent over the *q*, p. 64.

BECOME, to.—There is no exact equivalent to this verb in Spanish, and it has generally to be replaced by a circumlocution, as:

It becomes tiresome
empieza á ser fastidioso,
literally,

It begins to be tiresome.

BECOME FRIGHTENED, to, *acordarse*, p. 155.

BEFORE, *antes*, *delante*.

Delante must not be confounded with *antes*. *Delante* simply denotes place or situation; *antes* marks priority of time, 115, 183.

BEGIN, to, *empezar*, 99, 166.

BEHIND is translated by *tras*, as a preposition, 183, and by *atrás*, as an adverb, 178.

BELIEVE, to, *creer*, is conjugated in accordance with Rule 182.

BELONG, to, *pertenecer*, goes like *compadecer*, 147.

BELOW, *abajo*, 178.

BENDICIR, to bless, goes like *decir*, 294.

BEST, *el mejor* or *el óptimo*, 52.

BETTER, *mejor*, 52.

BETWEEN, *entre*, 183.

BE WILLING, to, *querer*, 114.

BE WORTH, *valer*, 297.

Bien, well.

BLOSSOM, to, *florecer*, goes like *compadecer*, 147.

BORROW, to, is translated into Spanish by *pedir prestado á alguno*; literally, to ask a loan from some one. See note on p. 287.

BOTH, *ambos, uno y otro*.

BREAK, to, *romper*, *irr. v.*, 114.

BREAKFAST, to, *almorzar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 187.

BRIDGE, *punto*, p. 255.—This word may be used either in the masc. or in the fem., but the masc. is preferable.

BRING, to, *llevar*, 140; *traer*, 287.

BRING UP, to, *criar*, p. 202.

BUENO, good, 39.

BUILD, to, *edificar*, goes like *apilar*, 145.

BURN, to, *quemar*, p. 245.

BUT, *pero*, 215; *sino*, see note on p. 182.—In the sense of *only*, it is translated by *solamente, no mas que, or no mas de*, 51.

BUT A FEW, *solo unos pocos*.

BUT A LITTLE, *solo un poco*.

BUY, to, *comprar á alguno, alguna cosa*, 99.

BY, *por*, 157.

C is always pronounced like *k*, before *a, o, u, l, r*, and like *th* when followed by *e* or *i*.—**Ch** is sounded like *ch* in the English word *church*. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

CABER, to be contained.—*Irr. v.*—Pres. part. *Cubiendo*.—Past part. *Cabido*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense:

Yo quepo, tú cabes, él cabe, nosotros cabemos, vosotros cabéis, ellos caben.—

Imperf.: *Yo cabía, tú cabías, él cabía, nosotros cabíamos, vosotros cabíais, ellos cabían*.—

Past tense definite: *Yo cupe, tú cupiste, él cupo, nosotros cupimos, vosotros cupisteis, ellos cupieron*.—

Future: *Yo cabré, tú cabrás, él cabrá, nosotros cabremos, vosotros cabréis, ellos cabrán*.—

Conditional mood: *Yo cabría, tú cabrías, él cabría, nosotros cabríamos, vosotros cabríais, ellos cabrían*.—

Imper. mood: *Cabe, cabed*.—

Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que yo quepa, que tú quepas, que él quepa, que nosotros quepamos, que vosotros quepáis, que ellos quepan*.—

Subjunct. past: *Que yo cupiera, or cupiese; que tú cupieras, or cupieses; que él cupiera, or cupiese; que nosotros cupiéramos, or cupiésemos; que vosotros cupierais, or cupiéreis; que ellos cupieran, or*

cupiesen.—The second future is: *Fi cupiere, tú cupieres, él cupiere, nosotros cupiéremos, vosotros cupieréis, ellos cupieren*.

CALL, to, *llamar*, 99, 140.

CALLE, street, p. 17.

CAN, to be able, *poder*, 206.

CANAL, *el canal*, 172.

CAPITAL, *capital*.—This word is masculine when it refers to stock in trade, but feminine when used to designate the chief city of a state, 172.

CARE, *madures*, p. 188.

CARE, to TAKE, *cuidar*.

CARITATIVO con los pobres, charitable to the poor.

CARNE, meat, p. 10.

CARRIAGE, *carruaje*, 196.

CARRY, to, *llevar*, p. 192; *traer*, 287

CASH, *al contado*, p. 45; *en efectivo*, 814.

CATCH, to, *pillar*, p. 245.

Ce.—Many words ending with *ce* in English end with *cio* in Spanish, 238.

CEASE, to, *cesar de*, 166.

CENT, *centavo*, 813.

CERCA de, near, 83.

CERCADO de peligros, surrounded with dangers.

CHANGE, to, *mudar*, p. 126.

CHAR, to, *achicarrar*, p. 245.

CHASE BACK, to, *rechazar*, 187.

CHERISH, to, *querer*, 230.

CHILD, *nino, niña*.

CHILDREN, *niños*, p. 5.

Cien, see HUNDRED.

Cio.—Many words ending with *cio* in Spanish end with *ce* in English, 238.

Circular, circular, 317.

CITY, *ciudad*, p. 66.

CLASS, *clase*, p. 10.

CLEAN, to, *limpiar*, p. 186.

CLIMATE, *clima*, p. 201.

CLOCK.—The distinction made in English between *hour* and *o'clock* has no equivalent in Spanish; the word *hora* being used indifferently to express an interval of 60 minutes, and to ask what o'clock it is. In the answer to this question, however, the *o'clock* disappears entirely, and the numbers indicating the exact hour of the day or night have to be preceded by the article *the*, translated by *la* before *una*, and by *las* before all the others. In stating the time between any two hours, the one nearest to the

small hand should always be named first, and the words **AND** or **LESS** be placed after it, 84.

CLOTH, *pañó*, masc.

CLOTHES, *vestidos*, is used indifferently for dresses and clothes in general; but in the singular, *vestido* means more particularly a lady's dress, p. 23.

COOK, to boil, to cook.—**IRR. V.**—**Pres. part.** *Cociendo*.—**Past part.** *Cocido*.—**Indicative mood, pres. tense:** *Yo cocéo, tú coces, él cuece, nosotros cocemos, vosotros cocéis, ellos cocen*.—**Imperfect:** *Yo cocía, tú cocías, él cocía, nosotros cocíamos, vosotros cocíais, ellos cocían*.—**Past tense definite, Yo cocí, tú cociste, él coció, nosotros cocimos, vosotros cocisteis, ellos cocieron.—**Future:** *Yo coceré, tú cocerás, él cocerá, nosotros coceremos, vosotros coceréis, ellos cocerán*.—**Conditional mood:** *Yo cocería, tú cocerías, él cocería, nosotros coceríamos, vosotros coceríais, ellos cocerían*.—**Imper. mood:** *Cuece, coced*.—**Subjunct. mood, pres. tense:** *Que yo cueza, que tú cuezas, que él cueza, que nosotros cozamos, que vosotros cozáis, que ellos cuezan*.—**Subjunctive past:** *Que yo cociera, or cociese; que tú cocieras, or cocieses; que él cociera, or cociese; que nosotros cocierámos, or cociésemos; que vosotros cocieráis, or cociéseis; que ellos cocieran, or cociesen*.—**The second future is:** *Yo cociere, tú cocieres, él cociere, nosotros cociéremos, vosotros cociereis, ellos cocieren*.**

Recocer, to boil again, and *escocer*, to cause a sharp pain, to smart, are conjugated alike.

COLOR, color, 179.

COME, to, *venir*, 247.

COMIDA, dinner, food, p. 10.

COMO.—See **As**.

COMPADecer, to pity.—**Its conjugation**, 147.

COMPARATIVE.—The degrees of comparison are generally formed by placing before the adjective one of the following words: **Tan**, *as*; **mas**, *more, most*; **ménos**, *less, least*; **muy**, *very*; **bastante**, *enough, tolerably*, etc., 52.—When the adjective is one which requires to be placed after the noun, these adverbs go over with it, 53.—If the conjunction *than* follows, it has to be translated by **que**, 54.—In the comparative of equality, *as* is translated by **tan** before the adject-

ive, and *by como* after it, 55.—When two expressions in the comparative are compared together, the first must be preceded by **cuanto**, and the second by **tanto**, 171.

The superlative absolute is also formed by adding the following endings to the positive: **ísimo** for adjectives, and **ísimamente** for adverbs, 205.—Some adjectives and adverbs form their comparative and superlative irregularly, 161, 205, 296.

COMPOUND TENSES.—**HABER** enters into the composition of the compound tenses of all verbs, regular and irregular.—**TENER** is never so used, 45.

CONCLUDE, to, *concluir*, p. 222.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.—All verbs end in the conditional with **ia, ias, ía, íamos, íais, ían**, 261.—These terminations are generally added to the infinitive form of each verb, 262.—The conditional form is never preceded by a conjunction in Spanish, the subjunctive past being then invariably used instead, 268.

CONJUGATIONS.—All Spanish verbs end in the infinitive with **ar, er, or, ir**. Those ending with **ar** are said to be of the first conjugation; those ending with **er** are of the second; and those ending with **ir**, of the third, 98.—Model of the first conjugation, **hablar**, p. 61; model of the second, **vender**, p. 71; model of the third, **unir**, p. 80.

CONJUNCTIONS.—List of the principal conjunctions, 215.

CONmigo, with me, 183.

CONsigo, with him, with her, 83.

CONSIST, to, *consistir*, p. 100.

CONSONANTS.—Double consonants often become single in Spanish, especially **ff, ss, and tt**; but **ll**, when liquid, is never so changed, 239.

CONTAIN, to, *caber*, **irr. verb**: see **Caber**.

CONTEMPLATE, to, *contemplar*, p. 81.
Contento con or *de alguno*, pleased with some one.

Contigo, with thee, 83.

CONTINUE, to, *continuar*, p. 183.

CONTRACT, to, *contraer*, 288.

CONTRADICT, to, *contradecir*, 295.

COOK, to, *cocer*, **irr. v.**; see **Cocer**.

COST, to, *costar*, p. 97.

COUNTERFEIT, to, *contrahacer*, 174.

COUNTRY, *campo país*, 119.

COURT, *la corte*, 172.

COUSIN, *primo, prima*, 214.

COVER, *to, cubrir*, p. 125.

COVER, *to, ambicionar*, p. 126.

CREDIT, *on, á crédito*, p. 45.

Cruel con or para los vencidos, cruel to the vanquished.

CRY, *to, llorar*, p. 245.

Cual, which, 104.

Qualquier, whoever, whatever, 86.

Cuanto, cuanta, how much, 106.

Cuantos, cuantas, how many, 106.

CULTIVATE, *to, cultivar*, p. 202.

Cuyo, whose, 199.

D is always sounded in Spanish as in English. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

Dad.—Many words ending with *dad* in Spanish, end with *ty* in English, 156.

Dar.—See TO GIVE.

DATE of a letter.—The cardinal numbers are generally used instead of the ordinal, in speaking of the days of the month, and of sovereigns and princes, but *primero* is never so changed, and forms, therefore, an important exception to this rule, 311.

DAY, *día*, masc. by exc., p. 51.—On the next day, *al otro día*, 275.

De is one of the most important among the Spanish prepositions, 183.—It generally corresponds to *of* and *from*; but, besides, is often rendered *by* *to*, *with*, *in*, or the sign of the possessive case (*s'*), 257.—The prep. **de** and the article **el** are contracted into **del**, 34.—The prep. **de** may be prefixed to any adj. which follows *algo*, something; *nada*, nothing; *que*, what; but this addition is not absolutely necessary, 62.—To, before an infinitive, is translated sometimes by **de**, 166.

DEAL, *to, trafficar*, is conjugated like *aplicar*, 145.

Deber means *to owe, must, ought, to be obliged*, and even *to be*, but the latter only when joined to an infinitive, in which case it forms with it a particular future tense, expressive of duty, necessity, or purpose, as in the following example:

¿Que debo hacer?

What am I to do? 227.

DECAY, *to, decaer*, 271.

Decir.—See TO SAY.

DECLARE, *to, declarar*, p. 186.

DEDUCT, *to, deducir*, p. 91.

DEFINITE PAST TENSE.—The regular terminations of the past tense definite are: For the verbs in **ar**:

é, aste, ó, ámos, ásteis, áron.

For those in **er** and **ir**:

í, iste, ís, ímos, ísteis, íron, 226.

These terminations are added to the root of the verb, and take the place of the infinitive endings, **ar, er, ir**.

It is often difficult to decide between the use of the past tense definite and the imperfect, whether to say *tenía* or *tuve*. The better plan to be pursued, is to change the English into *was having, used to have, or did have*; rendering *was having* and *used to have* by *tenía*, and *did have*, by *tuve*. In case of doubt, however, it will be best to use the perfect, **Yo he tenido, I have had**, 225.

DEPOSE, *to, deponer*, goes like *poner*, 197.

Descontento con or de alguno, displeased with some one.

DESERVE, *to, merecer*, is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147.

DESIRE, *to, alcanzar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 187.

DESPISE, *to, despreciar*, p. 126.

Después, adv., *afterwards*, 178; as a preposition, *after*, 183.

DETRACT, *to, detraer*, 288.

Detras, behind.

DIERESIS (").—The diæresis, placed over any vowel, denotes that it has to be pronounced distinctly and by itself.

DIE, *to, morir*, 190.

DIFFERENCE, *diferencia*, p. 210.

DIFFICULT, *difícil*, p. 210.—**Difícil de or para hacer**, difficult to do.

DIMENSIONS.—For model sentences which may serve as a guide to the most usual way of expressing dimensions in Spanish, see 292.

DIMINISH, *to, disminuir*, is conjugated like *instruir*, 182; *minorar*, p. 222; *rebajar*, p. 164.

DIMINUTIVES are much more frequently used in Spanish than in English. Those expressive of smallness or prettiness are formed by the addition of **ico** or **ito** for the masc., and **ica** or **ita** for the fem.; and those expressive of contempt or pity, with **illo** or **uelo** for the masc., and **illa** or **uela** for the fem.

These terminations are generally added to the singular form of the noun or adjective, taking care that those ending with **a** or **o** drop their last vowel, and that those ending with **co**, **ca**, **go**, **ga**, and **z**, change these final letters into **qu**, **gu**, and **c**, 264.

Words ending with **e**, **n**, or **r**, take **cico**, **cito**, **cillo**, and **zuelo**. instead of **ico**, **ito**, **illo**, and **uelo**, 265.

The only exception to this rule is **Señor**, Mr. or gentleman, which is changed to **señorito**, master or young gentleman, and not **señorcito**, 265.

The diminutive endings are especially added to Christian names in Spanish, 266.

DINNER, food, *comida*, p. 10.

DISAPPEAR, to, *desaparecer*, is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147.

DISSEMBARK, to, *desembarcar*, goes like *aplicar*, 145.

DISGUISE, to, *disfrazar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 187.

DISPOSE, to, *disponer*, is conjugated like *poner*, 197.

DISSIMULATE, to, *disimular*, p. 126.

DISSOLVE, to, *disolver*, 197.

DIVIDE, to, *dividir*, p. 222.

DO, to, *hacer*, 178.—There is no such word as **do** or **did**, to give greater strength to an affirmation in Spanish; so that these two expressions, *I use*, and *I do use*, have but one translation, *uso*, 41.

The interrogative form, **Do you not?** annexed to a proposition in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In Spanish this form is invariably **¿No es verdad?** *Is it not true?* or **¿No es así?** *Is it not thus?* 70.

DO OVER AGAIN, to, *rehacer*, 174, is conjugated like *hacer*, 173.

DORMIR.—See **TO SLEEP**.

DRESS, *vestido*, p. 23.

DRESS ONE'S SELF, to, *traerse*, is the pronominal form of *traer*, 287.

DRINK, to, *beber*, 114.

DRIVE AWAY, to, *arrear*, p. 233.

DWELL, to, *morar*, p. 255.

E is sounded as *e* in the English word *met*. See **INTROD. LESSON**, p. vii.

EACH, *cada*, is an **invariable** word in Spanish, answering to *each* and *every*, 249.

EAGLE, THE, *el águila*, 185.

EARLY, *temprano*, 178.

EAT, to, *comer*, 114.

EDIFY, to, *edificar*, is conjugated like *aplicar*, 145.

EFFECT, *efecto*, 239.

EMPLOY, to, *emplear*, p. 183.

EN.—See **IN**.

ENCHANT, to, *hechizar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 187.

ENOUGH, *bastante* and *bastantemente*, but the latter is never joined to a noun, 176.

ENTIRELY, *enteramente*, 178.

ENTRE, *between*.

ES.—In Spanish, *ese* is properly to be applied only to objects near the person spoken to, or which happen to be the immediate subject of conversation; but in familiar intercourse it is often indifferently used for *este* and *aquel*. Its feminine is *esa*; its plural masc. *esos*; and its plural fem. *esas*, 277.

ESTAR, to *be*, is used when a change may reasonably be expected, or that the verb to *BE* can be replaced by *to stand* or *to lay* in English, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence; otherwise *ser* is to be preferred, 26.—See, also, **TO BE**.

Contrary to English usage, the prep. **á** is introduced in Spanish in the following idiomatic expressions:

Este vestido está bien á V.,
this dress fits you well.

Estar al servicio de alguno,
to be in the service of some one.

Estar á cuentas con él,
to have an account with him.

Estar á derecho,
to be in the right.

Estar á línea,
to be in a line.

Estar á punto de salir,
to be on the point of starting.

Estar á esperar,
to hope.

Este, *esta*, *esto*, *ésta*, 2, 274.

Estrecho, *strait*, 184.

EVER, *jamás*, 178.

EVERY, *todo*, *toda*, *todos*, *todas*.
See, also, **EACH**, 249.

EXAGGERATE, to, *abultar*, p. 253.
EXAMINE, to, *examinar*, 140.
EXCELLENT, *excelente*, p. 210.
EXPERIMENT, to, *experimentar*, p. 155.
EXPOSE, to, *exponer*, 197.
EXTINGUISH, to, *apagar*, is conjugated like *pagar*, 180.

F is sounded in Spanish as in English. See Introd. Lesson, p. vii.

FAIL, to, *faltar*, p. 212.
FALL, to, *caer*, 270.—To fall due, *vencer*, 114.

FAMILIARIZE, to, *familiarizar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 187.

FAR, *lejos*, 178.

FATE, *suerte*, fem. by exc., p. 108.

FAVOR, favor, 179; in favor of, *a favor de*, 244.

FEEL, to, *sentir*, 163.

FEMININE.—See **GENDERS**.

FETCH, to, *traer*, p. 252.

FEW, *pocos*; a few, *unos pocos*, *algunos*; fewer than, *ménos que*; a few days after, *a los pocos días*, 269.

FIDELITY, *fidelidad*, 156.

FIGHT, to, *pelear*, p. 155.

FIND, to, *hallar*, 140.

FINISH, to, *acabar*.—*Acabar de*, joined to an infinitive, forms more often with it a particular past tense, generally expressed in English by *to have just*, and a past participle:

Ex. *Acabo de hablar*,

I have just spoken, 181.

FIRST is translated by *primer*, and not by *primero*, when immediately followed by a noun, 220.

FIX, to, *fijar*, p. 154.

FLATTER, to, *lisonjear*, p. 294.

FLOURISH, to, *florescer*, is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147.

FLOWER, *flor*, p. 82.

FLY, to, *volar*, 164.

FOLLOW, to, *seguir*, 162.

FOOD, dinner, *comida*, p. 10.

FOR, when it can be replaced by *because*, is a conjunction, and has to be translated by *porque*, 88; otherwise it is a prep., and has to be rendered by *por*, 88, 157, or *para*, 276.—See, also, **FOR** and **PARA**.

FORCE, to, *forzar*, 140.

FOREHEAD, *frente*, 172.

FORETELL, to, *predecir*, 295.

FORM, to, *formar*, p. 294.

FORMATION of the Plural of Nouns and Adjectives, 65.

FORMATION of the Feminine of Adjectives, 185.

FORMATION of Adverbs in mente 20.

FORMATION of Diminutives, 264, 265, 266.

FORMATION of Augmentatives, 267.

FORMATION of the Present Participle, 203.

FORMATION of the Past Part., 210.

FORMATION of the Indicative mood.

Present tense, 223.

FORMATION of the Imperfect, 272, 273.

FORMATION of the Past tense definite, 228.

FORMATION of the Future, 258, 259.

FORMATION of the Conditional, 261, 262.

FORMATION of the Imperative, 238, 239.

FORMATION of the Subjunct. mood, Present tense, 237.

FORMATION of the Subjunct. Past, 278, 279, 281, 282, 283.

FORMATION of the Compound Tenses, 41.

FORMATION of Verbal Adjectives in *ante* and *entre*, 243.

FORMERLY, *antes*, 178; *antiguamente*, *en otro tiempo*.

FORTIFY, to, *fortalecer a alguno*, p. 114, goes like *compadecer*, 147.

FORWARD, *adelante*, 178.

FOUND, to, *fundar*, p. 255.

FRACTIONS.—In English, the fractional numbers are like the ordinal; but in Spanish they have a particular ending, the termination *avo* being added to the cardinal form, thus: *cinco*, five; *un cincoavo*, a fifth. Take notice, that *avo* is changed to *avos* in the plural.

FREEZE, to, *helar*, is conjugated like *quebrar*, 138.

FROM, *de*, 183.—*De* and *el* are contracted into *del*, 34.

FRONT, *frente*, 172.

Fulano corresponds to the abbreviation N. in English, and means *such a one*, 75.

FURNISH, to, *amueblar*, 99.

FUTURE TENSE.—All verbs, regular and irregular, end in the future with

é, ás, á, émos, éis, án, 253.

These terminations are generally added to the infinitive form of each verb. The exceptions to this rule

still be found explained in the irregular verbs, 229.

G is sounded like *k* before *a*, *o*, *u*, *h*, *r*, and like a strongly aspirated *h*, or the German *ch*, when followed by *e* or *i*. *u* is generally silent between *g* and *e* or *i*, unless a diæresis is put over it. See Introd. Lesson, p. vii.

GAIN, to, *ganar*, p. 108.

GATHER, to, *lograr*, p. 136; to gather together, to assemble, *concurrir*, p. 278.

GENDERS.—There are properly but two genders in Spanish, the masculine and the feminine. As to what is commonly called the neuter in Spanish, see note † on page 4, and Obs. 170.—The gender of nouns is determined either by the sex or by the termination. All the names of males are masculine, whatever may be their termination, and all the names of females are feminine, 3.—Words ending with *a*, *d*, *ion*, and *umbre* are feminine, those ending otherwise are masculine, 4.—Words which, without being nouns, are accidentally used as such, are masculine, 110.—Review of the gender of nouns, 111.—Nouns denoting titles, qualities, professions, or degrees of relationship, which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives by means of the same terminations as the adjectives, 185.—The names denoting the natives of a country, and words ending with *an*, *on*, or *or*, form their feminine by the addition of an *a*, 185.—See, also, **Nouns and Adjectives**.

GET, to, *alcanzar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 187.

GET UP, to, *levantarse* or *llevarse*, 181.

GIVE, to, *dar*, 221.

GIVE BACK, to, *volver*, *restituir*.

GO, to, *ir*, v. irr.—The verb *to go* is often used in the pronominal form, and joined to another verb, to indicate that an action is actually going on, 165.—To go for, *ir por*, or *ir á buscar*; literally, *to go and fetch*.—To go on foot, *ir á pié*; to ride, *ir á caballo*; to go away, *irse*.—To go out, *salir*, 242.—To go to bed, *acostarse*, is conjugated like *mostrar*, 137.

GOOD, *bueno*, *bueno*.—*Bueno* drops its final letter, and becomes *buen*,

when placed before a noun, 89.—The comparative of *bueno* is *mejor*, better, and its superlative is *el mejor*, or *el óptimo*, 52.

GOOD BY, *adios*.

GOOD DAY, *buenos días*.—The salutations, *Good morning*, *Good day*, and *Good evening*, are always used in the plural in Spanish, 116.

GOVERN, to, *gobernar*, is conjugated like *quebrar*, 138.

GRAMMAR, *gramática*, p. 210.

Grande corresponds more particularly to *great*, when placed before the noun to which it refers, and to *large*, when placed after it, 40.—The comparative of *grande* is *mayor*, and its superlative is *el mayor*, or *el máximo*, 161.

GREAT, *grande*, becomes *gran* when placed before a noun beginning with a consonant, 89.

GREAT, *grande*, 40.

GROW, to, *crecer*, is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147.—To grow in body, *crecer de cuerpo*, 122; to grow in virtues, *crecer en virtudes*; to grow fat, *engordar*, p. 245; to grow thin, *enflaquecer*, conjug. like *compadecer*, 147.

GUARD, to, *guardar*, p. 126.

GUIDE, to, *guiar*, p. 245.

GUTTER, *la canal*, 172.

H is always silent in Spanish. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

HABER.—See **TO HAVE**.—Its conjugation, p. 24.

HABIT of suffering, *habito de sufrir*, 218.

HACER.—Its conjugation, 178.—See, also, **TO DO**.

HANDLE, to, *manejar*, p. 222.

HARDLY, *apenas*, 178.

HASTA, till.

HAVE, to.—There are two words corresponding to this verb in Spanish,—*haber* and *tener*, but they cannot be employed indiscriminately. *Haber* is used exclusively as an auxiliary, while *tener* is an active verb, and can be introduced only when *to HAVE* is not followed by a participle, in which case it may generally be replaced by *to hold*, or *to possess*, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence, 44.—Conjugation of *haber*, p. 24.—Conjugation of *tener*, 60.

The compound tenses of *tener*, as

of all other verbs, are formed with *haber*, 45, 61.

The verb *haber* is joined to verbs in the infinitive, and forms with them a particular idiomatic locution, expressive of duty or necessity. It is then invariably followed by the prep. *de*.—Ex. I have to call, *he de llamar*, 46.—The verb *tener* is also joined to verbs in the infinitive in the same else, and is always followed by *que*.

Ex. I have to go out,
Tengo que salir, 144.

The verb *tener*, to have, is used instead of *estar*, to be, in the following idiomatic expressions:

| | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Tener calor</i> , | to be warm. |
| <i>Tener frío</i> , | to be cold. |
| <i>Tener sueño</i> , | to be sleepy. |
| <i>Tener miedo</i> , | to be afraid. |
| <i>Tener hambre</i> , | to be hungry. |
| <i>Tener sed</i> , | to be thirsty. |
| <i>Tener vergüenza</i> , | to be ashamed. |
| <i>Tener razón</i> , | to be right, 72 |

HAVE JUST, to.—See *Acabar de*.

HE, *él*.—See PRONOUNS.

HEAR, to, *entender*, goes like *peracer*, 133.

HER.—See HIM.

HERE, *acá*, *aquí*, 178.

HERS, has to be translated in turn by *el suyo*, *la suya*, *los suyos*, and *las suyas*, 192, 193, 194, 195.

HERSELF, *se*.—See PRONOUNS.

HIDE, to, *encubrir*, 163; *ocultar*, p. 126.

HIGH, *alto*, *alta*, 211.

HIM is translated by *le*, and HER by *la*; but to HIM, to HER, or HIM, HER, used for to HIM, to HER, are rendered indifferently by *le*, 148.—It will be well to remark here, that *lo* is used almost as often as *le* for HIM, and that *la* is frequently introduced instead of *le* for to HER; the Spanish Academicians being themselves divided on the proper use of these small words, 149.

HIMSELF, *se*.—See PRONOUNS.

HIS is in English alike as an adjective and its a pronoun, but it is not so in Spanish. When joined to the name of a person or thing, it is translated by *su* for the singular, and by *sus* for the plural; but when not so placed, *el suyo*, *la suya*, *los suyos*, or *las suyas*, is the proper equivalent, 192, 193, 194, 195.

HOME, AT, *en casa*.—To go at home, *estar en casa*; to go home, *ir á casa*.

HONESTY, *honradez*, p. 191.

HONOR, to, *honrar*, p. 294.

Hour, *hora*.—The distinction made in English between *hour* and *o'clock* has no equivalent in Spanish; the word *hora* being used indifferently to express an interval of 60 minutes, and to ask what o'clock it is. In the answer to this question, however, the *o'clock* disappears entirely, and the numbers indicating the exact hour of the day or night have to be preceded by the article THE, translated by *la* before *una*, and by *las* before all the others. In stating the time between any two hours, the one nearest to the small hand should always be named first, and the words AND or LESS be placed after it. *Cuarto*, quarter, is a noun, and *media*, half, is an adjective; but *media* never changes in speaking of the time, because it invariably agrees with *hora*, hour, understood, 84.

How, *como*.—When added redundantly to the verb to know, in English, it is invariably left out in Spanish, 167.

HOWEVER, *sin embargo*.—*Por general que sea*, however general it may be.—*Por* is here an adverb, corresponding to *however*. Few words are used with greater latitude than *por* in Spanish. Answering in turn to *for*, *in order to*, *through*, *as*, *per*, *by*, *from*, etc., it enters, moreover, into the formation of a number of idiomatic expressions in which its original meaning seems to disappear entirely, 235.—See, also, *Por*.

How MANY, *cuantos*, *cuantas*, 106.

How MUCH, *cuanto*, *cuanta*, 106.

HUMANO con los vencidos, he mane to the vanquished.

HUNDRED, *ciento*; when placed before a noun or adjective, it becomes *cien* for both genders; but *cientos* becomes *cientas* when joined to a feminine word, in *doscientos*, two hundred; *trescientos*, three hundred; *cuatrocientos*, four hundred; *quinientos*, five hundred; *seiscientos*, six hundred; *setecientos*, seven hundred; *ochocientos*, eight hundred; *novecientos*, nine hundred, 132.

HUNGER, *hambre*, feminine by exception, p. 191.

I is always so indistinct like *i* in the English word *give*. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

I, yo.—See PRONOUNS.

ia.—Many words ending in Spanish with *ia*, end in English with *y*, 100

ble.—Many words ending with *ble* are alike, or nearly so, in both languages, 186.

ic.—Many words ending with *ic* or *ical* in English, end with *ico* in Spanish, 105.

ICAL.—See **ic** or **Ico**.

Ico.—Many words ending with *ico* in Spanish, end with *ic* or *ical* in English, 105.

Ir, es, 215.

Ir NOT, sino, 215.

IMPERATIVE.—The imperative has properly but one person in the singular and plural; and the expressions, *let him be, let us be, let them be, etc.*, are supplied by means of the subjunct. present, or of the verb *dejar, to let or leave*, 228.—It is, moreover, to be observed, that the subjunctive form is always used instead of the imperative in all negative sentences, and that the pronoun is then invariably placed before the verb, 229.—See, also, note *t*, on p. 35.

IMPERFECT TENSE.—The regular endings of the imperfect of the indicative are: For the verbs in **ar**:

aba, abas, aba,
ábamos, ábais, aban;

and for those in **er** and **ir**:

ia, ias, ia, íamos, íais, ían.

These terminations are added to the root of the verbs, and take the place of the infinitive endings, **ar, er, ir**, 272, 273.

It is often difficult to decide between the use of the past tense definite and the imperfect, whether to say *tenia* or *tuve*. The better plan to be pursued, is to change the English into *was having, used to have, or did have*; rendering *was having* and *used to have* by *tenia*, and *did have*, by *tuve*. In case of doubt, however, it will be best to use the perfect, **To be tenido, I have had**, 225.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.—See **VERBS**.

IN. required in English after a superlative, and before the name of a place, is rendered by **de**, and not by **en**, 219.

IN, en, 183.—**I** order to, **para**, 182.

—The prep. **en** is often used, instead of *sobre*, for *on* or *upon*; but this substitution is required only when the sense of the sentence clearly shows the particular meaning intended, 69.

—In order that, **para que**, 215.

IN A DIFFERENT MANNER, de diferente modo, 257.—In this manner, **de este modo**.

INASMUCH AS, como que, 255.

INCLINE, TO, inclinar, p. 145.

INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

—The regular endings of this tense are: For the verbs in **ar**:

o, as, a, amos, ais, an.

For the verbs in **er**:

o, es, e, emos, eis, en.

And for the verbs in **ir**:

o, es, e, imos, is, en, 223

See, also, **IMPERFECT, PAST TENSE DEFINITE, FUTURE, and COMPOUND TENSES.**

Infected de fiebre, infected with the fever.

Inferior, inferior, irregular comparative of *bajo*, low, 212.

Infimo, lowest, irregular superlative of *bajo*, low, 212.

INFINITIVE.—All Spanish verbs end in the infinitive with **ar, er, or ir**. Those ending with **ar** are said to be of the first conjugation; those ending with **er** are of the second; and those ending with **ir**, of the third, 98.—All prepositions govern the infinitive mood, 78.—The prep. **to**, before an infinitive, is sometimes translated by **a**, sometimes by **de**, and sometimes it is left out, 166.—The infinitive mood of verbs is sometimes used substantively. In this case it is preceded by an article, or some other determinative word, and is of the masculine gender, 110.

INFLUENCE, TO, influir, is conjugated like *instruir*, 182.

INSIDE, dentro, 173.

INSTEAD OF, en lugar de.

INSTRUCT, TO, instruir, 182.

INTERJECTIONS.—List of the principal interjections, 302, 303.

INTERROGATION.—We have already seen that *I use*, and *I do use*, are both translated by **uso**, 41.—The only difference of construction between an affirmative and an interrogative **see**

tence in Spanish is that when there is a pronoun in it, that pronoun is placed after the verb, if a question is asked.

Ex. *¿ Usa V. velas ?*

Do you use candles ?

V. usa velas,

You use candles.

The interrogative form annexed to proposition, in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In Spanish, this form is invariably *¿ No es verdad ?* *Is it not the truth ?* or, *¿ No es así ?* *Is it not so ?* 70.

Íntil para, useless to.

Invitar, to, convidar, 304.

Ion.—Many words ending with *ion* are alike in both languages, 87.

Ir.—See *To go*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.—See **VERBS**.

Ir.—Few words demand more attention than this small one. Translated in turn by *él, ella, ello, le, la, lo*, it has sometimes to be added and sometimes to be suppressed, contrary to English usage, 91.—In impersonal verbs, and before the verb *to be*, it is most often left out, 92.

But owing to the absence of the neuter gender in Spanish, inanimate objects are always spoken of either in the masculine or in the feminine, and it has therefore to be rendered in turn by *él, he; ella, she; le, him; and la, her*, 93.—The best plan to be pursued in this respect is to replace at once the word *it* by *he, she, him, or her*, according to the gender of the Spanish noun referred to, and to translate it regularly as a personal pronoun.

Ex. *¿ Donde está mi libro ?*

Where is my book ?

El está allí,

Le veo,

It is there.

I see it.

¿ Donde está mi gramática ?

Where is my grammar ?

Ella está allí,

La veo,

It is there.

I see it, 94.

It would be, perhaps, better to say simply, *está allí*, instead of *él está allí* according to Rule 18, which recom-

men & he suppression of the subject pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they*, but the reverse is not incorrect, 95.—As a further and natural consequence of this rule, the equivalent of *it* in the nominative case—that is to say, when used as *he* or *she*—are comparatively seldom required; but too much care could not be bestowed upon it in the direct objective case, which must be rendered by *lo* when it has to be replaced by *him*, and by *la* when it has to be replaced by *her*, according to Rules 93, 94, 95.

When *it* refers to an adjective, a verb, or a whole sentence, rather than to any noun in particular, it has to be translated by *ello* (seldom expressed, see Rule 18) for the nominative case, and by *lo* for the objective, 96.

The English word *so* is often replaced by *it*:

Ex. *Lo creo,* I think so, 97.

It would be best, to remember that *lo* is the old masculine form of *el*, used only when the noun to which the article refers is not expressed, and is liable to be supplied by words of different genders, as in the elliptical expression, *Lo sublime*, the sublime, which may be completed with *estilo*, style, which is masculine, or *dicción*, diction, which is feminine. The article and adjective are in the masculine, according to a rule which obtains throughout all modern languages, that whenever it is doubtful, whether males or females are spoken of, and even when both are alluded to at the same time, the masculine is preferred to the feminine, 170.

ITSELF, se.—See **PRONOUNS**.

IVE.—Words ending with *ive* in English, generally end with *ivo* in Spanish, with little or no other difference of orthography, 200.

Ivo.—Words ending with *ivo* in Spanish, generally end with *ive* in English, with little or no other difference of orthography, 200.

J has always a guttural sound, like a strongly aspirated *h*, or the German *ch*.—See **Introductory Lesson**, p. vii.

Jamas, ever, 178.

JOIN, to, juntar, p. 255.

JUDGE, to, juzgar, is conjugated like *pagar* 150.

Jugar, to play.—**IRR. V.**—Present part. *Jugando*.—Past part. *Jugado*.—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Yo juego, tú juegas, él juega, nosotros jugamos, vosotros jugáis, ellos juegan*.—Imperfect: *Yo jugaba, tú jugabas, él jugaba, nosotros jugábamos, vosotros jugabais, ellos jugaban*.—Past tense definite: *Yo jugué, tú jugaste, él jugó, nosotros jugamos, vosotros jugasteis, ellos jugaron*.—Future: *Yo jugaré, tú jugarás, él jugará, nosotros jugaremos, vosotros jugaréis, ellos jugarán*.—Conditional mood: *Yo jugaría, tú jugarías, él jugaría, nosotros jugaríamos, vosotros jugaríais, ellos jugarían*.—Imperative mood: *Juega, jugad*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que yo juegues, que tú juegues, que él juegue, que nosotros juguemos, que vosotros juguéis, que ellos jueguen*.—Subjunctive past: *Que yo jugara, or jugase; que tú jugaras, or jugases; que él jugara, or jugase; que nosotros jugaráramos, or jugarásemos; que vosotros jugaráis, or jugaráseis; que ellos jugarán, or jugaran*.—The 2d future is: *Yo jugaré, tú jugarás, él jugará, nosotros jugáremos, vosotros jugaréis, ellos jugarán*.

J is not properly a Spanish letter, being used only in foreign words and proper names. It is sounded alike in Spanish as in English. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

JER, *have*, is feminine by exception, p. 17.

KIND, *clase*, is feminine by exception, p. 10.

KISSES THE HANDS, **B. L. M.**, an abbreviation of *besa los manos*, is an expression of politeness which corresponds to *presents his compliments*, in English, 305.

KNOW, to, *saber*, 254.—To, before an infinitive, is not to be translated after *saber*.—**EX.** He knows to read, *sabe leer*, 166.—The verb *saber* should not be confounded with *conocer*. *Saber* is applied to things, while *conocer* refers to persons.

EX. To know some one, *Conocer á alguno*, 140.

To know a thing, *Saber una cosa*.

L is sounded alike in Spanish as in English, and **ll** as in *bullion*.—See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

La, *the*, see **ARTICLE**; *her, it*, see **PRONOUNS**.

LAKE, to, *carcer de alguna cosa*, 217. It is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147.

LANCE, *lanza*, p. 155

LANGUAGE, *idioma*, is masculine by exception, p. 178.

LARGER, *mayor*, 161.

LARGEST, *el mayor*, 161.

Las, fem. of *los*.—See **ARTICLE** **THE**, **THEM**, or **PRONOUNS**.

LATE, *tarde*, 178.

LAW, *ley*, fem. by exc., p. 222.

LE, *him, her, it*.—See **PRONOUNS**.

LEARN, to, *aprender*, p. 108.—To, before an infinitive, is translated by *a* after *aprender*.

EX. I learn to read,

Aprendo á leer, 166.

LEAST, *minimo*, irreg. superlative of *pequeno*, little, 209.

LEAVE, to, *dejar*, p. 204.

Les, *them*.—See **PRONOUNS**.

LESS, *menor*, irregular comparative form of *pequeno*, little, 209.

LET.—The imperative has properly but one person in the singular and plural; and the expressions, *Let him be, let us be, let them be*, etc., are supplied by means of the subjunctive present, or of the verb *dejar*, 228.—See, also, note on p. 35.

LETTERS.—For the letters of the Alphabet, see **Introductory Lesson**, p. vii.

LIBERTY, *libertad*, 156.

LIGHTEN, to, *relampaguear*, 186.

LIKE, *como*, 178.

LIKE, to, *querer*, 230.

LITTLE, *pequeno*, 209; *poco*, 106; a little, *un poco*.

LIVE, to, *vivir*, 124.—To live in a place, *quedar de asiento*, 122.

ll is sounded as *l* in the English word *bullion*. See **Introductory Lesson**, p. vii.

Llave, key, is fem. by exc., p. 17.

Llover, to rain, goes like *mover*, 187.

Lo, *the*, is a third form of the article *el*, to be used only before an adjective when the noun to which that adjective refers is not expressed. See note †, on page 4. Some grammarians consider it as of the neuter gender, 170.—See, also, **Ir** and **PRONOUNS**.

LOOK, to, *mirar*, p. 202.

LOOK FOR, to, *buscar*, is conjugated like *aplicar*, 145.

Los, las.—See **THE**, 10, and **THEM**, 86.

LOSE, to, *perder*, 138.

LOVE, to, *amar á alguno*, p. 104.

LOW, *bajo*, 212.

LOWER, *inferior*, 212.

LOWEST, *infermo*, 212.

LUCIR, to shine, goes like *compadecer*, 147.

LY.—Adverbs of quality are generally formed from adjectives by the addition of **mente**, which corresponds to the English ending, *ly*. The termination **mente** is always added to the feminine form of the adjective, 20.

ME is sounded in Spanish as in English. See *Introd. Lesson*, p. vii.

MAINTAIN, to, *mantener*, is conjugated like *tener*, 60.

MAKE, to, *hacer*, 173.

MALEDICIR, to curse, goes like *decir*, 294.

MALO, bad, drops its final letter before a noun, and becomes *mal*, 89.

MAÑANA, morning, to-morrow, 81.

MANY.—See **MUCH**.

MARAVEDÍ is the smallest Spanish coin, being worth only three mills. Its plural is *maravedíes*, *maravelíes*, or *maravelis*.

MARGIN (of a book), *el márgen*, 172.

MAS, more.

ME corresponds usually to **ME** and to **ME**; but when to **ME** is used by itself, that is to say, without a verb and after *es*, it is; *que*, than; and *como*, as, it has to be translated by *á mi*.—See, also, *conmigo*, 83, 102.

MEAT, *carne*, is feminine by exception, p. 10.

MEET, to, *encontrar*, is conjugated like *mostrar*, 137.

MENTE.—Termination of adverbs of quality corresponding to the ending *ly* in English, 20.

MINE, *el mio*.—See **PRONOUNS**, **POSSESSIVE**.

MISMO, SAME, is translated by **mismo**, before a word masculine singular; by **misma**, before a word fem. sing.; by **mismos**, before a word masc. pl.; and by **mismas**, before a word fem. plural, 49.

The word **VERY**, usually translated by **muuy**, is rendered by **mismo** when it precedes a noun, 113.

Mismo answers to the word

SELF, when joined to the pronouns *Yo, tú, él*, etc.

Ex. *Yo mismo*, I myself.

El mismo, he himself, etc.

MISTRESS (of the house), *ama*.—For the sake of euphony, *ama* takes the masculine art. *el*, instead of the feminine *la*, 185.

MONEY.—The *peso*, dollar; *real*, shilling; and *centavo*, cent, are the denominations used in computing sums of money in Spanish. There are 8 *reals* in a *peso*, and 12 1/2 *centavos* in a *real*, 818.

MORE, **mas**.—When two expressions in the comparative are compared together, the first must be preceded by **cuanto**, and the second by **tanto**, 171.

MOREOVER, *ademas*, 178.

MORIR, to die, 190.

MOUNT, to, *montar*, 99; (on horse back,) *á caballo*, 122.

MUVE, to, *mover*, 137.

MUCH, **mucho**, 81.—When joined to a verb, **mucho** is an adverb, and consequently an invariable word corresponding to *much*, in English; but joined to a noun, it is an adjective, meaning *much* or *many*, no difference being made in Spanish between quantity and number. The adjective *mucho* agrees in gender and number with the word to which it refers. Its feminine sing. is **muchoa**; its plural masc., **muchos**; and its fem. plur., **muchas**, 32.—The whole of this observation will apply to the following words: *Poco, poca, pocos, pocas*, little, or few; *tanto, tanta, tantos, tantas*, so much, or so many, *cuanto, cuanta, cuantos, cuantas*, how much? or how many? *demasiado, demasiada, demasiados, demasiadas*, too much, or too many, 106.

MUST, to, *haber de*, 46; *tener que* see **TO HAVE**.—**DEBER**, without a preposition, 166.

MY is translated by **mi** before a word singular, and by **mis** before a word plural, 16.—**Mi** and **mis** do not change in the feminine, 29.

MYSELF.—See **MISMO**.

N is sounded in Spanish as in English. **N** is sounded as *gn* in *mignonette*. See *Introductory Lesson*, p. vii.

Nadie, nobody, 253.

NAMES.—Christian names are generally preceded by *Don*, instead of *Señor*, and by *Doña*, instead of *Señora* or *Señorita*, 117.

NEAR, cerca or acerca. These prepositions are always followed by *de* in Spanish, 33, 107.

NECESSITY, necesidad, 156.

NEED, TO, necesitar, 164.

NEITHER, NOR, ni.—*Ni* corresponds to *neither* and *nor*. When placed after the verb, that verb must be preceded by the negative *no*; but *NI* may be used by itself when put before, or if there is no verb in the phrase.—**Ex.:**

No le encuentro ni demasiado fácil, ni demasiado difícil; or, Ni demasiado fácil ni demasiado difícil le encuentro.

I find it neither too easy nor too difficult.

This observation applies also to *nada*, *nothing*; *ninguno* or *nadie*, *nobody*; and *nunca*, *never*.—**Ex.:**

Nada veo, or no veo nada,

I see nothing.

Ninguno veo, or no veo ninguno,

I see nobody.

Nunca veo, or no veo nunca,

I never see, 71.

NEUTER GENDER.—Although we have seen in the note †, at the bottom of page 4, that *lo* is a third form of the article *el*, and that some grammarians consider it as of the neuter gender, this view has, however, another inconvenience besides the apparent uselessness of an article of the neuter gender in a language in which there is no neuter noun to be determined. For if we attempt to parse the adjective accompanying it, we are led into the absurdity of saying that the article of the neuter gender can accompany an adjective of the masculine, inasmuch as the neuter gender is not ascribed to adjectives by any Spanish grammarian. It would seem better, therefore, to remember that *lo* is the old masculine form of *el*, used only when the noun to which the article refers is not expressed, and is liable to be supplied by words of different genders, as in the elliptical expression, *Lo sublime*, the sublime, which may be completed with *estilo*, style, which is masculine, or *dicción*,

which is feminine. The adjective and article are then in the masculine, according to a rule which obtains throughout all modern languages, that whenever it is doubtful whether males or females are spoken of, and even when both are alluded to at the same time, the masculine is preferred to the feminine, 170.

Esto, commonly called the noun-form of *este*, is used only when the noun to which it refers is not expressed, just as *eso* and *aquello*. It is to be observed that the adjective joined to these words is used in the masculine form, 241, 274, 277.

NEVER, nunca. See, also, **NEITHER, NOR**, 71.

NEVERTHELESS, sin embargo, 215.

NEXT DAY (on the), *al otro día*, 275.

NI.—See **NEITHER, NOR**.

NIGHT, noche, fem. by exc., p. 51.

Ninguno.—See **NOBODY**.

No, no, not.—The negative *no* is always placed before the verb to which it refers, 50.

NOBODY, ninguno, nadie.—*Ninguno* answers to *nobody*, *none*, *not any*, and *no*. Its feminine singular is *ninguna*; its masc. plural, *ningunos*; and its fem. pl., *ningunas*. *Ningun* is used instead of *ninguno* before a noun masc., 198.—*Nadie* differs from *ninguno*, inasmuch as it cannot be joined to a noun, 253. See also **NEITHER, NOR**, 71.

NOR.—See **NEITHER**.

NOT.—See **NO**.

NOTE, pagaré, p. 44.

NOTHING, nada, 71.—See, also, **NEITHER, NOR**.

NOUN.—In Spanish, as in English, names of males are masculine, and names of females are feminine. But there is no neuter gender in nouns in Spanish, and the names of the inanimate objects are, therefore, like those of the animate, either masculine or feminine, 3;—to determine which, recourse is generally had to their termination, the principal rule being the following: Nouns ending with *a*, *d*, *ion*, and *umbre*, are feminine; those ending otherwise are masculine, 4.—The exceptions to this rule comprise a number of very necessary words, all of which have been carefully introduced and explained in the lessons.

Review of the Gender of Nouns, 111.

In Spanish, as in English, nouns generally take an *s* in the plural; but those ending with an *s* in the singular do not change in the plural, 6.

Nouns, ending with a consonant take *es*, instead of *s*, in the plural, 23.

Nouns of one syllable, ending with an *s* in the singular, take *es* in the plural.—Ex.: *Gas*; plur., *gases*, 42.

Nouns ending with *y* in the singular, form their plural by the addition of *es*, 63.

Names of nations ending with *es* take *es* in the plural.

Ex.: *Ingles*; plur., *Ingleses*.

Nouns ending with *z* in the singular, change *z* into *ces* in the pl., 67.

Review of the Formation of the Plural of Nouns, 68.

There are two ways of expressing the possessive in English: *The brother of my father*, and *My father's brother*. In Spanish there is but one: *The brother of my father*; and *'s* has always to be replaced by *of*, according to this model, 15.

Una alfombra de terciopelo.—There are two ways of saying this in English: *A carpet of velvet*, and *a velvet carpet*. In Spanish there is but one: *A carpet of velvet*; and all sentences of this kind have to be translated according to this model, placing the name of the thing of which another is made last, 36.

Nouns denoting titles, qualities, professions, or degrees of relationship, which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives by means of the same termination which the adjective takes in the feminine, 118.—See, also, ADJECTIVE.

The determinatives *THE*, *A*, *AN*, etc., are often used in the masculine instead of the feminine, before nouns beginning with an accented *a*, for the sake of euphony, and to avoid the too frequent recurrence of two *a*'s following each other, 126.

There are a few nouns which vary in meaning according to the gender in which they are used in Spanish. For a list of the most important, see 172.

The names denoting the natives of a country, and nouns ending with *an*, *on*, or *or*, form their feminine by the addition of an *a*, 184.

NOURISH, *TO*, *criar*, p. 202.

NOW, *ahora*, 178.

NUMBERS.—In speaking of the days of the month, the cardinal numbers must be used instead of the ordinal, except for the first, which is invariably *el primero*, 89.—For a table of the cardinal and ordinal numbers, see p. 385, in Index.

O is sounded in Spanish as in English. See *Introd. Lesson*, p. vii.

O, or, 215.—*ú* is used instead of *o*, before words beginning with an *o*.

OBEY, *TO*, *obedecer*, p. 126, is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147.

OBLIGE, *TO*, *precisar*, p. 108.

OBSERVE, *TO*, *observar*, p. 212.

OBTAIN, *TO*, *alcanzar*, conjugated like *rechazar*, 187; *conseguir*, conjugated like *seguir*, 162; *obtener*, conjugated like *tener*, p. 33.

OCCUPY, *TO*, *ocupar*, *ocuparse*, 131, 140.

OCCUR, *TO*, *ocurrir*, p. 164.

OF, *de*, 183.—When the article *le*, *the*, is joined to the preposition *de*, *of* or *from*, both small words are invariably merged into *del*; but *de la*, *de los*, *de las*, are never so contracted, 34.

The prep. *de* may be prefixed to any adjective which follows *algo*, *something*; *nada*, *nothing*; or *que*, *what*; but this addition is not absolutely necessary, 62.

The prep. *IN*, required in English after a superlative, and before the name of a place, is rendered by *de*, and not by *en*, in Spanish, 219.—See, also, *De*.

OFTEN, *amenudo*, 178.

OIR, to hear.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Oyendo*.—Past part. *Oído*.—Indicative mood, present tense: *Yo oigo, tú oyes, él oye, nosotros oímos, vosotros oís, ellos oyen*.—Imperfect: *Yo oía, tú oías, él oía, nosotros oíamos, vosotros oíais, ellos oían*.—Past tense definite: *Yo oí, tú oíste, él oyó, nosotros oímos, vosotros oísteis, ellos oyeron*.—Future: *Yo oiré, tú oirás, él oirá, nosotros oíremos, vosotros oiréis, ellos oirán*.—Conditional mood: *Yo oiría, tú oirías, él oiría, nosotros oiríamos, vosotros oiríais, ellos oirían*.—Imperative mood: *Oye, oíd*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que yo oiga, que tú oigas, que él oiga, que nosotros oigamos, que voso-*

tres oigan, que ellos oigan.—Subjunctive past: *Que yo oyera, or oyese; que tú oyeras, or oyesses; que él oyera, or oyese; que nosotros oyéramos, or oyésemos; que vosotros oyérais, or oyéseis; que ellos oyeran, or oyesen.*—The second future is: *Yo oyere, tú oyeres, él oyere, nosotros oyéremos, vosotros oyeráis, ellos oyerán.*

OLD, *antiguo, viejo.*—*Antiguo* means, of long standing, ancient; while *viejo* answers more particularly to old in years, worn out, or decayed, 141.

Oler, to smell.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Oliendo.*—Past part. *Olido.*—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Yo huelo, tú hueles, él huele nosotros olemos, vosotros oleis, ellos huelen.*—Imperfect: *Yo olía, tú olías, él olía, nosotros olíamos, vosotros olíais, ellos olían.*—Past tense definite: *Yo olí, tú oliste, él olió, nosotros olimos, vosotros olisteis, ellos olieron.*—Future: *Yo oleré, tú olerás, él olerá, nosotros oleremos, vosotros oleréis, ellos olerán.*—Conditional mood: *Yo olería, tú olerías, él olería, nosotros oleríamos, vosotros oleríais, ellos olerían.*—Imperative mood: *Huele, oled.*—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que yo huela, que tú huelas, que él huela, que nosotros olemos, que vosotros oleis, que ellos huelan.*—Subjunctive past: *Que yo oliera, or oliese; que tú olieras, or oliesses; que él oliera, or oliese; que nosotros oliéramos, or oliésemos; que vosotros oliérais, or oliéseis; que ellos olieran, or oliesen.*—The second future is: *Yo oliere, tú olieres, él oliere, nosotros oliéremos, vosotros oliéreis, ellos olieren.*

ONE is translated by *uno* before a word masculine, and by *una* before a word fem. The numeral *uno, una*, should not be confounded with the indef. art. *un, una*, which see, 8, 80.

ONLY, *solo, solamente.*

OPEN, *to, abrir*, has an irregular past participle, *abierto*, 168.

OPPOSE, *to, oponer*, is conjugated like *poner*, 197.

OPPOSITE OF, or IN FRONT OF, *en frente de*, 178.

OR, *ó*, 215.—Before words beginning with an *o*, it is translated by *ú*.

Or.—Words ending with *or* are generally alike, or nearly so, in both languages, 179.

ORDAIN, *to, ordenar*, p. 145.

ORDER, *to, ordenar*, p. 145.

ORDER, *orden.*—This word is masculine when it means *place* or *command*, but feminine when it means *rank, class, or fraternity*, 172.

OSO.—Words ending with *oso* is Spanish, generally end with *ous* in English, with little or no other difference of orthography, 159.

OTHER, *otro.*

OTHERWISE, *otramente*, 178.

OUGHT, *to, deber.*—*To*, before an infinitive, is left out after *deber*, 166.

OUR, *nuestro.*—Its feminine is *nuestra*; its pl. masc., *nuestros*; and its plur. fem., *nuestras*, 82.

OURS, *el nuestro*, 194. See, also, PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE.

OUS.—Words ending with *ous* in English generally end with *oso* in Spanish, with little or no other difference of orthography, 159.

OUTSIDE, *afuera*, 178.

OVER, *sobre*, 183.

OWE, *to, deber*, 114.

P is pronounced in Spanish as in English. See Intro. Lesson, p. vii.

PAGARÉ, note, p. 44.

PAGE, *paje*, 196.

PARA.—For model sentences illustrating the most important uses of this preposition, see 276.

PART, *parte*, is fem. by exception, p. 183.

PARTICIPATE, *to, participar*, 319.

PARTICIPLE.—The past participle, when used by itself, or with the auxiliary *TO BE*, agrees, like the adj., in number and gender with the noun to which it relates; but when joined to the verb *TO HAVE*, it is generally invariable, 79.

The past participle, used as an adjective, is generally followed by the preposition *de*, 146.

All verbs ending with *ar* in the infinitive end with *ando* in the present participle; and those ending with *er* and *ir*, end with *iendo*, 208.

All verbs ending with *ar* in the infinitive, end with *ado* in the past participle; and those ending with *er* and *ir*, end with *ido*, 210.

Some verbs have a second present participle in Spanish, ending with *ante* for the first conjugation, and with *ente* for the second and third. But this form can be used only as

an adjective, or as an adjective taken substantively. As these verbal adjectives cannot be formed from every verb indiscriminately, care should be had to consult the dictionary before using them. They have often to be translated by quite another word.

Ex. An affecting scene,
Una escena tierna, 243.

PASS, TO, *pasar*.

PASSION, *pasion*, 239.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.—Its regular terminations are:

For the verbs in *ar*:

é, aste, ó, ámos, ásteis, áron;
and for those in *er* and *ir*:

i, iste, ío, imos, isteis, iéron, 226.—It is often difficult to decide between the use of the past tense definite and the imperfect, whether to say *tenía* or *tuve*. The better plan to be pursued, is to change the English into WAS HAVING, USED TO HAVE, or DID HAVE; rendering WAS HAVING and USED TO HAVE by *tenía*, and DID HAVE, by *tuve*. In case of doubt, however, it will be best to use the perfect, *Yo he tenido*, I HAVE HAD, 225.

PAST TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—The regular endings of the first form of this tense are:

For the verbs in *ar*:

ara, aras, ara,
áramos, árais, aran;
and for those in *er* and *ir*:
iera, ieras, iera,
iéramos, iérais, ieran, 278.

These terminations are generally added to the root of the verb, and take the place of the endings of the infinitive, *ar, er, and ir*, 279.

As the use of the subjunctive past, instead of the conditional, is somewhat obligatory, and always allowable, it is one of the most important tenses, 280.—See, also, Rule 263.

The regular endings of the second form of the subjunctive past are:

For the verbs in *ar*:

ase, ases, ase,
ásemos, áseis, asen;
and for those in *er* and *ir*:
iese, ieses, iese,
iésemos, iéseis, iésen, 281.

These terminations are generally

added to the root of the verb, and take the place of the endings of the infinitive, *ar, er, and ir*, 282.—The form in *ase* and *iese* is especially used for the sake of euphony, when that of the conditional in *ia*, or of the first subjunctive past in *iera*, has already been introduced in the sentence. If *ase* or *iese* is put in the first part of a proposition, *ara* or *iera* should follow in the second, 283.

PATRONIZE, TO, *patrocinar*, p. 73.

PAY, TO, *pagar*, 180.

PEACE, *paz*, p. 212.

Pedir, to ask, follows Rule 162 in its conjugation.

PEOPLE, *gente*, fem. by exc., p. 255.

PERHAPS, *acaso*, 178.

PERMIT, TO, *permitir*.—To, before an infinitive, is left out after *permitir*, 166, 234.

PERSONAGE, *personaje*, 196.

PLACE, TO, *asentar*, is conjugated like *quebrar*, p. 98.

PLANT, TO, *plantar*.

PLEASE, TO, *gustar, agradar*.—*Servirse* is an idiomatic expression which corresponds to PLEASE, in English. It should, however, not be confounded with *hagame V. el favor*, explained in Rule 30. *Servirse* can only be used when the thing desired is a politeness to the person addressed, 321.

Poder, to be able, p. 171.

Podrir, to rot.—IRR. V.—Present part. *Pudiendo*.—Past part. *Podrido*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Yo pudro, tú pudres, él pudre, nosotros podrimos, vosotros podris, ellos pudren*.—Imperfect: *Yo podría, tú podrias, él podría, nosotros podriamos, vosotros podriais, ellos podrian*.—Past tense definite: *Yo podrí, tú podríste, él pudrió, nosotros pudrimos, vosotros pudristeis, ellos pudrieron*.—Future: *Yo podriré, tú podrirás, él podrirá, nosotros podrirémos, vosotros podriréis, ellos podrirán*.—Conditional mood: *Yo podriria, tú podririas, él podriria, nosotros podririamos, vosotros podririais, ellos podririan*.—Imper. mood: *Pudre, podrid*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que yo pudra, que tú pudras, que él pudra, que nosotros pudramos, que vosotros pudrais, que ellos pudran*.—Subjunctive past: *Que yo pudriera, or pudriese; que tú pudrie*

ras, or pudriésses; que si pudriera, or pudriese; que nosotros pudriéramos, or pudriésemos; que vosotros pudrierais, or pudrierais; que ellos pudrieran, or pudriesen.—The 2d future is: *Yo pudriere, tú pudrieres, él pudriere, vosotros pudriéremos, vosotros pudrierais, ellos pudrieren.*

Poner, to put, p. 162.

POPULATE, **TO**, *poblar*, p. 223.

Por.—This preposition, corresponding to *pro* and *per* in Latin, answers in turn to *per*, *by*, *through*, and *for*, 157.—Sometimes it is an adverb, meaning *however*.

Few words are used with greater latitude than *por* in Spanish. It has to be translated sometimes by *in order to*, *as from*, etc.; it enters, moreover, into the formation of a number of idiomatic expressions, in which its original meaning seems to disappear entirely. The model sentences which will best illustrate its several uses will be found in Obs. 235, p. 209.

POSSESSIVE.—There are two ways of expressing the possessive in English—*The brother of my father*, and *My father's brother*. In Spanish there is but one—*The brother of my father*; and *'s* has always to be replaced by *OF*, according to this model, 15.—See, also, 34, and *OF*.

PRAISE, **TO**, *alabar*, p. 136.

PREFER, **TO**, *preferir*, is conjugated like *sentir*, p. 116.

PREJUDICE, **TO**, *preocupar*, p. 222.

PREPOSITIONS.—For the principal prepositions, see list, 183.

All prepositions must be followed by the infinitive in Spanish, 78.

Few things are more troublesome in Spanish than the proper use of the prepositions. Observation and diligent reference to the dictionary are the only guides that can be offered. For examples illustrative of their more prominent features in this respect, see Rules 122, 157, 166, 208.

PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD.—Its regular terminations are, for the verbs in *ar*:

o, as, a, amos, ais, an;

for the verbs in *er*:

o, es, e, emos, eis, en;

and for the verbs in *ir*:

o, es, e, imos, is, en.

These terminations are added to the

root of the verb, and take the place of the endings of the infinitive, *ar, er, and ir*, 223.

PRESENT TENSE, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—Its regular terminations are, for the verbs in *ar*:

e, es, e, emos, eis, en;

and for the verbs in *er* and *ir*:

a, as, a, amos, ais, an.

These terminations are added to the root of the verb, and take the place of the endings of the infinitive, *ar, er, and ir*, 237.

PRESENTS HIS COMPLIMENTS, *B.L.M.*, an abbreviation of *Besa las manos*; literally, *Kisses the hands*, is an expression of politeness which corresponds to *presents his compliments*, in English, 305.

PRESERVE, **TO**, *conservar, conservar*, 181; *adobar*, p. 273.

PRETEND, **TO**, *pretender*, p. 212.

PREVAIL, **TO**, *prevalecer*, goes like *valer*, p. 270.

PROCURE, **TO**, *proporcionar*, p. 73.

PRODUCE, **TO**, *producir*, is conjugated like *traducir*, p. 134.

PRONOMINAL FORM OF VERBS.—This form is much more frequently used in Spanish than in English; and verbs which should be passive according to the sense, often take the pronom. form in Spanish, 9, 129, 180.—Model of the pronom. form of conj. *lavarse*, to wash one's self, p. 83.

PRONOUNS, PERSONAL.—The personal pronouns are, for the nominative case: *Yo, I; tú, thou; él, he, it; ella, she, it; nosotros, nosotros, we; vosotros, vosotros, you; and ellos, ellas, they*, 152.

For the objective case: *Me, me, or to me; te, thee, or to thee; le, him, or to him; la, her, or to her; nos, us, or to us; vos, you, or to you; los, las, them; and les, to them*.—unless joined to a preposition which has to be expressed in Spanish, when these pronouns are translated as follows:

ME by *mi*, except in *conmigo*, with me; *THEE* by *ti*, except in *contigo*, with thee; *HIM* by *él*, except in *consigo*, with him; *HER* by *ella*, except in *consigo*, with her; *US* by *nosotros, nosotros*; *YOU* by *vosotros, vosotros*; and *THEM* by *ellos, ellas*, except in *consigo*, with them, p. 107.

In the pronominal form, *se* is used for *himself, herself, themselves; to himself, to herself, to themselves*, 130, 152.

The objective pronouns, *me, him, her, us, you, them, etc.*, are placed before the verb in Spanish, except in imperative affirmative sentences, or if the verb is in the infinitive or in the participle present.—The pronoun, when placed after the verb, is merged into one word with it, 17.—For the position of the objective pronouns, see 101.

To avoid the coming together of *le le, le la, le lo, le los, le las, or le les*, on account of euphony only, to *him, to her, to it, or to them*, when joined to *him, her, it, or them*, is translated indiscriminately by *se*, which is of both genders and numbers, adding *á él, á ella, á ello, á ellos, or á ellas*, whenever clearness requires it, 154.—When two or more pronouns follow each other in a sentence, *me, te, se, nos, os*, are always placed before *le, la, los, las*, 153.

The verb having a particular ending for each person in Spanish, the subject pronouns *I, thou, he, etc.*, are generally suppressed, 13.—Contrary to this rule, they are expressed for the sake of emphasis, when in English they would be underlined or printed in *italics*, 18.—*V.*, pronounced *usted*, is an abbreviation of the now obsolete expression, *Vuestra merced, your honor*. Its plural is *Vs.*, pronounced *ustedes*, which corresponds to *your honors*.—In Spanish, the third person of the verb joined to *V.* is used instead of the second, for the sake of politeness, just as *you* is introduced in English; but care must be had to use the third person sing. together with *V.* when addressing a single person, and the third person plural together with *Vs.* when speaking to more than one, 7.—Some writers prefer *Vm.* to *V.*, and *Vms.* to *Vs.*; both are correct, 8.

The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS are:

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| el mío, la mía, | } mine. |
| los míos, las mías, | |
| el tuyo, la tuya, | } thine. |
| los tuyos, las tuyas, | |
| el suyo, la suya, | } his, hers, |
| los suyos, las suyas, | |

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------|
| el nuestro, la nuestra, | } ours. |
| los nuestros, las nuestras, | |
| el vuestro, la vuestra, | } yours. |
| los vuestros, las vuestras, | |

These pronouns, like their corresponding adjectives, agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, 192, 193, 194; see, also, 57, 58.—*El suyo*, and its several forms, corresponding in turn to *his, hers, its, theirs*, and even to *yours* (see Rule 7); it is often necessary to add after it *de él, de ella, de ellos, de ellas, de V., or de Vs.*, to indicate more clearly in what particular sense it is used, 195.

PRONOUNS, DEMONSTRATIVE.—THIS or THAT is translated by *este* before a word masculine, and by *esta* before a word fem., 2.—THESE or THOSE by *estos* for the masculine, and by *estas* for the feminine, 64.—Used in turn as demonstrative adjectives and as pronouns, they invariably agree in gender and number with the object pointed out.—When it is desirable to indicate more particularly the proximity or remoteness of the persons or things spoken of, *este, esta*, are used for THIS; *estos, estas*, for THESE; *aquel, aquella*, for THAT; and *aquellos, aquellas*, for THOSE.—*Aquel* is used before a word masculine sing., and *aquella* before a word fem. sing.; *aquellos* before a word masc. plural, and *aquellas*, before a word feminine plural, 14, 66.—*Esto* and *aquello* are used instead of *este* and *aquel* before an adjective, when the noun to which that adjective refers is not expressed; as in *Lo sublime*, the sublime. This is what is commonly called the neuter gender in Spanish.—See note †, at the bottom of page 4, and Obs. 170.—*Ese, esa, eso*, is sometimes used instead of *este, esta, esto*; but *ese* is properly to be applied only to objects near the person spoken to, or which happen to be the immediate subject of conversation. In familiar intercourse, however, it is often used indifferently for *este* and *aquel*. Its feminine is *esa*; its plur. masc., *esos*; and its plur. fem., *esas*, 277.

PRONOUNS, INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE.—WHO, WHOM, WHICH, WHAT, are sometimes interrogative and

sometimes relative. When interrogative, they are generally placed at the beginning or at the end of the sentence; but when relative, they are never so placed, 103.—WHICH is translated by *cual*, as an interrogative, and by *que*, as a relative; but OF WHICH and TO WHICH are generally rendered by *del cual* and *al cual*.—*Que* does not change, but *cual* agrees in gender and number with the word to which it refers. Its feminine singular is like the masculine (see Rule 22). Its plural for both genders is *cuales* (see Rule 23), 104.—WHAT is translated by *que* as an interrogative, and by *lo que* when it can be replaced by *that which*, or *the thing which*, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence (see Rule 10), 106.—WHO and WHOM are translated by *quien* as an interrogative, and by *que* as a relative (see Rule 108); but when preceded by a preposition, WHOM is generally translated by *quien* or *cual*, for the singular, and by *quienes* or *cuales*, for the plural, 127.—*Cuyo* is another equivalent of *whose*; but it differs from *de quien* and *del cual*, already seen, inasmuch as it cannot be used without a noun, and that it agrees in gender and number with the word before which it is placed. Its feminine singular is *cuya*; its plural masculine, *cuyos*; and its plural feminine, *cuyas*.—*Cuyo* is, however, less used as an interrogative than as a relative; and *whose*, at the beginning of a sentence, is most often translated by *de quien*, 199.

PRONOUNS, INDEFINITE.—SOME or ANY is translated by *alguno*, for the masculine singular; by *alguna*, for the feminine singular; by *algunos*, for the masculine plural; and by *algunas*, for the feminine plural. *Algun* is used instead of *alguno* before a noun, 12.—NOBODY, NONE, or NO, is translated by *ninguno*, for the masculine singular; by *ninguna*, for the feminine singular; by *ningunos*, for the masculine plural; and by *ningunas*, for the feminine plural. *Ningun* is used instead of *ninguno* before a noun, 198.—*Cualquier* means literally, *whoever, whatever, or any one*. A compound of *cual* and *quier*, it agrees in gender and number with the noun to which

it refers. Its feminine singular is *cualquiera*; its masculine plural, *cualesquier*; and its feminine plural, *cualesquiera*, 86.

Pues, for, because, 215.

PULL DOWN, TO, *arrancar*, p. 155.

PUNCTUATION.—All the punctuation marks are the same in Spanish as in English, with the exception that inverted signs of exclamation and interrogation are placed before each sentence.—See note †, on p. 2.

PUT, TO, *meter, poner*, p. 162.

Q is never used without *u*. The *u* is, however, always silent, and the *q* sounded like *k*.—See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

Que, which, what, whom.—See PRONOUNS, RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.

Querer, to wish, p. 200.

QUICKLY, *pronto*, 178.

Quien, who, whom.—See PRONOUNS, RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.

QUIT, TO, *dejar*, p. 108.

QUITE, *enteramente*, 178.

R is sounded in Spanish as in English. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

RACE, *gente*, fem. by exc., p. 255.

RAIN, TO, *llover*, is conjugated like *mover*, 137.

READ, TO, *leer*, 114.

RECEIVE, TO, *recibir*, 140.

RECENTLY, *recien*, is used instead of *recientemente* before a participle, 285.

RECOMMEND, TO, *recomendar*, p. 82.

RECOMMENDATION, *recomendacion*, 239.

REFER, TO, *referir*, p. 294, is conjugated like *sentir*, 168.

REFLECTIVE.—The reflective form of conjugation is much more frequently used in Spanish than in English; and verbs which should be passive according to the sense, often take the reflective form in Spanish, 9.

REGION, *país*, 119.

Reir, to laugh.—IRR. V.—Present part. *Riendo*, or *riyendo*.—Past part. *Reído*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Yo río, tú ries, él rie, nosotros reímos, vosotros reís, ellos rien*.—Imperfect: *Yo reía, tú reías, él reía, nosotros reíamos, vosotros reíais, ellos reían*.—Past tense definite: *Yo reí, tú reiste, él rió, or riyó, nosotros reímos, vosotros reísteis, ellos reieron, or riyeron*.—Future:

Yo reiré, tú reirás él reirá, nosotros reiremos, vosotros reiréis, ellos reirán.—Conditional mood: *Yo reiría, tú reirías él reiría, nosotros reiríamos, vosotros reiríais, ellos reirían.*—Imperative mood: *Rie, reid.*—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que yo ria, que tú rias, que él ria, que nosotros riamos, que vosotros riais, que ellos rian.*—Subjunct. past: *Que yo riera, or riese; que tú rieras, or rieses; que él riera, or riese; que nosotros riéramos, or riésemos; que vosotros riérais, or riéseis; que ellos rieran, or riesen.*—The second future is: *Yo riere, tú rieres, él riere, nosotros riéremos, vosotros riereis, ellos rieren.*

RELAPSE, TO, *recaer*, is conjugated like *caer*, 270, 271.

RELATE, TO, *contar*, is conjugated like *mostrar*, 137; *relatar*, p. 263.

RELATIVE.—See PRONOUNS, RELATIVE.

REMAIN, TO, *quedar*, p. 73; to remain on foot, *quedar de pies*; to remain in the house, *quedar en casa*, p. 80.

REPAIR, TO, *reparar*, p. 145.

REPENT, TO, *arrepentirse*, p. 245.

RESIDE, TO, *residir, vivir*, 124; *morar*, p. 255.

RESPECTING, *respecto de*, 202.

RESPECTO, *respecting*, is generally followed by the preposition *de*, 202; it is used sometimes in the sense of *compared to*, in *comparison with*, 240.

REST, THE, *lo restante*, 245.—*Restante* is a verbal adjective, from *restar*, to remain, formed in accordance with Rule 243. See, also, note †, at the bottom of page 4.—*Lo demas*. This is an invariable word, which enters into the composition of several idiomatic expressions; the most important of which are: *Estar demas*, or *estar por demas*, to be one too many, to be superfluous; *demas de esto*, besides this, 290.

RETAIL, *por menor*, p. 45.

RETRACT, TO, *desdecirse*, 295.

RIDE, TO, (on horseback), *andar á caballo*; (in a coach), *ir en coche*.

RIGHT, TO BE, *tener razon*, 72.

RIPEN, TO, *sazonar*, p. 137.

RISE, TO, *levantarse*, 99.

RIVAL, TO, *riealzar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 187.

ROOT, TO TAKE, *arraigar*, is conjugated like *pagar*, 180.

RUIN, TO, *arruinar*, p. 192.

S is sounded in Spanish as in English. See *Introd. Lesson*, p. vii.

Saber, to know, 254.—I KNOW is translated by *lo sé*, because all transitive verbs require a direct regimen in Spanish, 90.

Salir, to go out, p. 211.

SALUTATIONS.—The salutations *Good morning*, *Good day*, and *Good evening*, are always used in the plural in Spanish, 116.

SAME is translated by *mismo*, before a word masculine singular; by *misma*, before a word fem. sing.; by *misimos*, before a word masc. plural; and by *misimas*, before a word fem. plural, 49.

SATISFY, TO, *satisfacer*, 320.

SAY, TO, *decir*, p. 261.

SCATTER, TO, *esparcir*, p. 192.

SEE, TO, *ver*, p. 180; *mirar*, p. 202.

SEEM, TO, *parecer*, is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147.

Seguir, to follow.—See p. 114.

SEIZE, TO, *pillar*, p. 245.

SELF.—See **Mismo**.

SELL, TO, *vender*, p. 71.

SEND, TO, *enviar*, 140.

Señor, Señora.—Christian names are generally preceded by **Don** instead of **Señor**, and by **Doña**, instead of **Señora** or **Señorita**, though both may be introduced at the same time with equal propriety, 117.

SEPARATE, TO, *separar*, p. 222.

Ser, to be, is used when the person or thing spoken of is likely to remain what, where, or as it is said to be; whereas **estar** has invariably to be introduced when a change may reasonably be expected, or that the verb TO BE can be replaced by *to stand* or *to lay*, in English, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence. **Ser** is, moreover, generally added to the participle past, and **estar** to the participle present, 26.

SERPENT, *serpiente*, p. 65.

SERVE, TO, *servir*, 124, is conjugated like *seguir*, 164.

Servirse is an idiomatic expression which corresponds to PLEASE, in English. It should, however, not be confounded with *hagame V. el favor*, explained in Rule 30. *Servirse* can only be used when the thing desired is a politeness to the person addressed, 325.

SETTING OF THE SUN, *el poniente*, 286.

SEVERAL is translated by **varios** or **algunos** before a word masculine, and by **varias** or **algunas** before a word feminine.

SHALL.—There is no exact equivalent to this word in Spanish, the idea of futurity being expressed invariably by the terminations peculiar to the **FUTURE TENSE**; which see.

SHARP.—The sharp edge of a knife, *el corte de un cuchillo*, 172.

SHE, ella.—See **PRONOUNS, PERSONAL**.

SHINE, TO, *lucir*, p. 135.

SHIP, *nave*, fem. by exc., p. 155.

SHOULD.—There is no exact equivalent to this word in Spanish; and the idea expressed by it is generally rendered by the terminations of the **CONDITIONAL MOOD** or **SUBJUNCTIVE PAST**; which see.

SHOW, TO, *mostrar*, 137.

SIGNALIZE, TO, *señalar*, p. 164.

SIGNATURES of letters.—**S.S.S.**, an abbreviation of *su seguro servidor*—literally, *your true servant*—is an expression of politeness, which corresponds in English to *your obedient servant, yours truly, or yours respectfully*, 308.—**Q. S. M. B.** stands for *que sus manos besa*, who kisses your hands. This abbreviation is found at the end of almost all Spanish letters, 309.

SILENCE, TO, *acallar*, p. 164.

SIMPLICITY, *sencillez*, fem. by exception, p. 201.

SINCE, *después*, 178; *desde*, 183; *pues*, 215.

SIT DOWN, TO, *sentarse*, is conjugated like *quebrar*, 138.

SLEEP, TO, *dormir*, 191.

SLEEPY, TO BE, *tener sueño*, 72.

SLOWLY, *lentamente*, 178.

SMALL, *chico, pequeño*; its comparative is *menor*, and its superlative *el* or *la menor*, 209.

So, *tan*, sometimes *lo*, 37.

Soberbio con su fortuna, proud of his wealth.

SOLVE, TO, *solver*, is conjugated like *mover*, 137.

SOME, *alguno, alguna, algunos, algunas*, 12; *uno, una, unos, unas*, 204.

SOMEBODY, *alguien*.—See, also, **Alguno**.

SOMETHING, *alguna cosa*.

SOMETIMES, *algunas veces*.

SOON, *pronto*, 173.

SOUL, *alma*, 135.

SPEAK, TO, *hablar*, p. 61.

SPIE OF, IN, *sin embargo de*, 215.

STATE, *país*, 119.

STEAL, TO, *deslizar*, is conjugated like *rechazar*, 137.

STILL, *aun*, 178.

STRAIGHTNESS, *estrechez*, p. 133.

STRAITS, *estrecho*, 134.

STREET, *calle*, feminine by exception, p. 17.

STEETCH, TO, *tender*, is conjugated like *perder*, 138.

STUDY, TO, *estudiar*, 99.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—Formation of the present tense, 237; of the past tense, 278, 279, 280; second form of the past tense, 281, 282, 283. The subjunctive form is always used instead of the imperative in all negative sentences, 229.

SUBMIT, TO, *someter*, p. 212.

SUBSTANTIVE.—See **NOUN**.

SUBTRACT, TO, *subtraer*, 288.

SUCCCEED, TO (in knowing), *llegar a saber*, 201.

SUCH A ONE, *Fulano*, 75, 312.

SUDDENLY, *subitamente*, 178.

SUPERLATIVE.—The degrees of comparison are generally formed by placing before the adjective one of the following words: **Tan, as; mas, more, most; menos, less, least; muy, very; bastante, enough, tolerably, etc.**, 52.—The superlative absolute is also formed by adding the following endings to the positive: **ísimo** for adjectives, and **ísimamente** for adverbs. The termination **ísimo** changes to **ísima**, for the feminine singular; to **ísimos**, for the plural masculine; and to **ísimas**, for the feminine plural: but **ísimamente** is, of course, invariable. In forming these superlatives, care should be had that words ending with a vowel drop their final letter before these inflections, and that those ending with **ble, co, and go**, change these syllables into **bil, qu, and gu**.—Ex.: *Fácil, facilísimo, facilísimamente. Hermoso, hermosísimo, hermosísimamente. Noble, nobilísimo, nobilísimamente. Rico, riquísimo, riquísimamente. Largo, larguísimo, larguísimoamente*, 205. See, also, 161 and 294.

SUPPOSE, TO, *suponer*, 197.
 SURPASS, TO, *sobrepasar*, p. 263.
 SUSTAIN, TO, *sustentar*, p. 137.

T is pronounced in Spanish as in English. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

TAKE, TO, *tomar*, 99; to take care, *cuidar*.

Tanto, so much, so many, 106.

TEACH, TO, *enseñar*, p. 91.

TELL, TO, *decir*, p. 261.

TEMER, to fear, 166.

TENER, to have; its conjugation, p. 33.

TENSES, COMPOUND.—The compound tenses of all verbs, regular and irregular, are formed with *haber*, to have; and *tener* is never used auxilially, 252.

TESTIFY, TO, *atestiguar*, p. 273.

THAN is translated sometimes by *que* and sometimes by *de*, and it is often troublesome to make a proper selection. There is always a verb expressed or understood in all sentences in which this word is found. *Que* must be used whenever this verb can be repeated after *THAN* without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence; and *de*, when the verb cannot be so repeated, 51.

THANK YOU.—There is no literal equivalent to *I thank you*, nor to *If you please*, in Spanish, and both have to be expressed by a circumlocution.—THANK YOU, by *muchas gracias*, as above; and IF YOU PLEASE, by one of the following expressions of politeness: *Hagame V. el favor*, *Do me the favor*; or, *Tenga V. la bondad*, *Have the goodness*, 30.

THAT.—The conjunction *que*, *that*, is seldom suppressed in Spanish, and it may safely be introduced whenever it can be added in English without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence.—EX.:

Digale que venga, Tell him to come; literally,

Tell him that he may come, 236.

THAT, pron. demonstrative, *aquel*, *aquella*, 14.

THAW, TO, *deshelar*, is conjugated like *quebrar*, 138.

THE, *el*, *la*, *los*, *las*, *lo*; see ARTICLE.

THE MORE... THE MORE.—When two expressions in the comparative are

compared together, the first must be preceded by *cuanto*, and the second by *tanto*, 171.

THEE.—See THOU.

THEIR, *su*, *sus*.—See ADJECTIVES, POSSESSIVE.

THEIRS, *el suyo*, *la suya*, *los suyos*, *las suyas*.—See PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE.

THEM is always translated by *los*, for the masculine, and by *las*, for the feminine. But TO THEM, or THEM used for TO THEM, is translated by *les* for either gender, 85.

THEN, *entonces*, 178.

THERE, *allá*, *allí*, 178.

THEREFORE, *por tanto*, 215.

THERE TO BE, *haber*, 139.

THESE, *estos*, *estas*.—See PRONOUNS, DEMONSTRATIVE.

THEY, *ellos*, *ellas*.—See PRONOUNS, PERSONAL.

THINE, *el tuyo*, *la tuya*, *los tuyos*, *las tuyas*.—See PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE.

THINK, TO, *pensar*, is conjugated like *quebrar*, 138.

THIRSTY, TO BE, *tener sed*, 72.

THIS, pron. demonstrative, *este*, *esta*, 2; or, *ese*, *esa*.—*Ese* is applied only to objects near the person spoken to, or which happen to be the immediate subject of conversation; but in familiar intercourse it is often used indifferently for *este* and *aquel*, 277.

THOSE, *aquellos*, *aquellas*, 66.

THOU is translated by *tú*, and *THEE*, TO *THEE*, or *THYSELF*, by *te*.—*Tú*, *thou*, has an accent over the *u*, to distinguish it from *tu*, *thy*, 150.—The second person singular is more used in Spanish than in English; but as it is applicable only in familiar conversation between very intimate persons, it would seem better to abstain from it, until a sufficient facility in general speaking shall have been acquired, 151.

THOUSAND FIVE HUNDRED AND THREE, *mil quinientos y tres*.—The Spaniards never say, *fifteen hundred*, *sixteen hundred*, etc., 160.

THROUGH, *por*, 157.

THROW, TO, *echar*, p. 183.

THUS, *así*, 178.

THY is translated by *tu* before a word singular, and by *tus*, before a word plural, 143, 150, 151, 155.

TILL, *hasta*, 188.

TIME, *vez*, should not be confounded with *tiempo*, time, which invariably implies duration; *vez* refers rather to repetition, p. 51.

TITLES are preceded by the article THE, in emphatic or ceremonious language, 75.—Christian names are generally preceded by *Don*, instead of *Señor*; and by *Dña.*, instead of *Señora* or *Señorita*; though both may be introduced at the same time with equal propriety, 117, 306.—In letters, the title of the person or persons addressed is generally preceded by the article THE at the beginning of a letter, 318.

TO, when used in the sense of *in order to*, has to be translated by *para*, 38.—To, before an infinitive, is translated sometimes by *á*, sometimes by *de*, and sometimes it is left out, 166.—See, also, *A*.

TOAST, *to*, *tostar*, p. 245.

TOBACCO means *tabaco*; but the plural, *tabacos*, is applied chiefly to *cigars*, the Spanish word *cigarro* or *cigarrillo* being confined to paper cigars, at least in Cuba, 120.

TO-DAY, *hoy*, 178.

TO-MORROW, *mañana*, 178.

TOO, *demasiado*, 106.

TOWARDS, *hacia*, 183.

TOWER, *torre*, fem. by exc., p. 263.

TRAER, to fetch, p. 252.

TRANSLATE, *to*, *traducir*, 175.

TRY, *to*, *ensayar*, 166.

TURN AWAY, *to*, *apartar*, p. 233.

TY.—A great many words ending in English with *ty*, end in Spanish with *dad*, 166.

U is sounded as oo in the English word *good*. It is silent after *g* and *q*. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

U, or.—U is used instead of *ó*, before words beginning with an o.

UN, uno, una, one, a, or an.—See ARTICLE, and ADJECTIVES, NUMERAL.

UNCLE, *tío*, 214.

UNDERTAKE, *to*, *emprender*, p. 192.

UNDO, *to*, *deshacer*, 174.

UNITE, *to*, *unir*, p. 80; *unirae*, 131.

UNLESS, *a menos que*, 215.

UNOS, unas, is often used instead of *algunos*, *algunas*, for *some* or *any*, 204.

UNTIL, *hasta*, 183.

UPON, *sobre*, en, 69.

US, and TO US, is translated by *nos*; but after *es*, *it is*; *que*, *than*; and *como*, *as*, TO US has generally to be translated by *á nosotros*, 128.

USE, *to*, *usar*, 99.

Usted.—See V.

V is sounded in Spanish as in English. See Introductory Lesson, p. vii.

V., pronounced *usted*, is an abbreviation of the now obsolete expression, *Vuestra merced*, *your honor* or *your grace*. Its plural is *Vs.*, pronounced *ustedes*, which corresponds to *your honors*. In Spanish, the third person joined to V. is used instead of the second, for the sake of politeness, just as YOU is introduced in English; but care must be had to use the third person sing. together with V. when addressing a single person, and the third person plural together with *Vs.* when speaking to more than one, 7.—Some writers prefer *Vm.* or *Vd.* to V., and *Vms.*, *Vds.*, or *VV.*, to *Vs.*; all are correct, 8.

VAIN, TO MAKE, *envanecer*, p. 202.

VALER, to be worth, irr. verb.—Pres. part. *Valiendo*.—Past part. *Valido*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Yo valgo, tú vales, él vale, nosotros valemos, vosotros valeis, ellos valen*.—Imperfect: *Yo valía, tú valías, él valía, nosotros valíamos, vosotros valíais, ellos valían*.—Past tense definite: *Yo valí, tú valiste, él valió, nosotros valimos, vosotros valisteis, ellos valieron*.—Future: *Yo valdré, tú valdrás, él valdrá, nosotros valdremos, vosotros valdréis, ellos valdrán*.—Condit. mood: *Yo valdría, tú valdrías, él valdría, nosotros valdríamos, vosotros valdríais, ellos valdrían*.—Imper. mood: *Val, valed*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que yo valga, que tú valgas, que él valga, que nosotros valgamos, que vosotros valgais, que ellos valgan*.—Subj. past: *Que yo valiera, or valiese; que tú valieras, or valieses; que él valiera, or valiese; que nosotros valiéramos, or valiésemos; que vosotros valiérais, or valiéseis; que ellos valieran, or valiesen*.—The second future is: *Yo valiere, tú valieres, él valiere, nosotros valiéramos, vosotros valiéreis, ellos valieren*.

Valor, valor, 179.

Variado de colores, varied in colors.

Venir, to come; its conjugation, p. 220.

Ver, to see, p. 180.

VERBS.—**Haber**, to have; its conjugation, p. 24.—**Haber** enters into the composition of the compound tenses of all verbs, regular and irregular, 45; it is also joined to verbs in the infinitive, and forms with them a particular idiomatic locution, expressive of *duty* or *necessity*. It is then invariably followed by the prep. **de**, 46.—**Tener**, to have; its conjugation, 60. The compound tenses of **tener**, as of all other verbs, are formed with **haber**, 61.—**Ser**, to be; its conjugation, p. 48.—**Estar**, to be; its conjugation, p. 52.—Use of **ser** and **estar**, 26.—The verbs having a particular ending for each person in Spanish, the subject pronouns, *I, thou, he*, etc., are generally suppressed, 13.—Contrary to this rule, the subject pronouns are expressed in Spanish for the sake of emphasis, when in English they would be underlined or printed in *italic*, 18.

All Spanish verbs end in the infinitive with **ar**, **er**, or **ir**. Those ending with **ar** are said to be of the first conjugation; those ending with **er** are of the second; and those ending with **ir**, of the third, 98.—Model of the first conj. **hablar**, to speak, p. 61.—Model of the second conjugation, **vender**, to sell, p. 71.—Model of the third conjugation, **unir**, to unite, p. 80.—List of the regular verbs of the first conjugation which have occurred in the text up to the eighth lesson, 99.—Verbs of the first conjugation may be formed from almost all the substantives ending with **acion**, by changing this termination into **ar**, 121.—List of the regular verbs of the second conjugation which have occurred in the text up to the ninth lesson, 114.—List of the regular verbs of the third conjugation which have occurred in the text up to the tenth lesson, 124.—The PRONOMINAL FORM is much more frequently used in Spanish than in English; and verbs which should be passive according to the sense, often take the pronominal form in Spanish, 9, 129.—Model of the pronominal form of conjug., **lavarse**, to wash one's self, p. 88.—Almost all transitive verbs may be conjugated pronomi-

nally, 131.—IMPERSONAL VERBS are generally used only in the third person singular, and without any pronoun, 136.—Model of conjug. for the impersonal verbs, **relampaguear**, to lighten, p. 96.

VERBS, IRREGULAR.—Many verbs ending with **ar**, and some ending with **er**, in the infinitive, whose termination is preceded by a syllable containing an *o*, change this *o* into *u* in the first, second, and third person singular, and third person plural of the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, 137. See model verbs, **mostrar**, to show, and **mover**, to move, p. 97.—The principal verbs conjugated thus are the following:

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Absolver</i> , | to absolve. |
| <i>Acordar</i> , | to agree. |
| <i>Acostar</i> , | to lay down. |
| <i>Almorzar</i> , | to breakfast. |
| <i>Apostar</i> , | to bet. |
| <i>Avergonzar</i> , | to shame. <i>Y</i> |
| <i>Colar</i> , | to strain. |
| <i>Colgar</i> 2,* | to hang. |
| <i>Consolar</i> , | to console. |
| <i>Contar</i> , | to count. |
| <i>Costar</i> , | to cost. |
| <i>Demostrar</i> , | to demonstrate. |
| <i>Disolver</i> , | to dissolve. |
| <i>Doler</i> , | to ache. |
| <i>Encontrar</i> , | to meet. |
| <i>Encordar</i> , | to string. |
| <i>Engrosar</i> , | to engross. |
| <i>Forzar</i> , | to force. |
| <i>Holgar</i> 2,* | to rest. |
| <i>Hollar</i> , | to crush. |
| <i>Llover</i> , | to rain. |
| <i>Moler</i> , | to grind. |
| <i>Morder</i> , | to bite. |
| <i>Mostrar</i> , | to show. |
| <i>Mover</i> , | to move. |
| <i>Poblar</i> , | to people. |
| <i>Probar</i> , | to prove. |
| <i>Recordar</i> , | to remind. |
| <i>Recostar</i> , | to lie down. |
| <i>Renovar</i> , | to renew. |
| <i>Rescomtar</i> , | to compensate. |
| <i>Resollar</i> , | to breathe. |
| <i>Rodar</i> , | to roll. |
| <i>Rogar</i> 2,* | to entreat. |
| <i>Soldar</i> , | to solder. |

* Some verbs have other irregularities besides these; they are marked throughout the lists with a 2 attached to them, as *holgar*, to rest, which follows also Rule 180.

| | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| <i>Soltar,</i> | to let go. |
| <i>Sonar,</i> | to sound. |
| <i>Sohar,</i> | to dream. |
| <i>Torcer 2,*</i> | to twist. |
| <i>Tostar,</i> | to toast. |
| <i>Trocar 2,*</i> | to barter. |
| <i>Tronar,</i> | to thunder. |
| <i>Volar,</i> | to fly. |
| <i>Volcar 2,*</i> | to overturn. |
| <i>Volver,</i> | to return. |

Many verbs ending with *ar*, and some ending with *er*, in the infinitive, whose termination is preceded by a syllable containing an *e*, take an *i* before that *e* in the first, second, and third person singular, and third person plural, of the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, 138.—See model verbs, *quebrar*, to break, and *perder*, to lose, p. 98.—The principal verbs conjugated thus are the following :

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Acertar,</i> | to ascertain. |
| <i>Acrescentar,</i> | to increase. |
| <i>Adestrar,</i> | to render skilful. |
| <i>Alentar,</i> | to animate. |
| <i>Apacentar,</i> | to feed. |
| <i>Apretar,</i> | to squeeze. |
| <i>Arrendar,</i> | to hire. |
| <i>Ascender,</i> | to ascend. |
| <i>Atender,</i> | to attend. |
| <i>Aterrorar,</i> | to throw down. |
| <i>Atestar,</i> | to stuff. |
| <i>Atravesar,</i> | to cross. |
| <i>Aventar,</i> | to winnow. |
| <i>Calentar,</i> | to warm. |
| <i>Cegar 2,*</i> | to blind. |
| <i>Cerner,</i> | to sift. |
| <i>Cerrar,</i> | to shut. |
| <i>Comenzar 2,*</i> | to commence. |
| <i>Concertar,</i> | to agree. |
| <i>Condescender,</i> | to condescend. |
| <i>Confesar,</i> | to confess. |
| <i>Contender,</i> | to contend. |
| <i>Defender,</i> | to defend. |
| <i>Desatender,</i> | to neglect. |
| <i>Descender,</i> | to descend. |
| <i>Despertar,</i> | to awake. |
| <i>Desterrar,</i> | to banish. |
| <i>Empedrar,</i> | to pave. |
| <i>Empezar,</i> | to begin. |
| <i>Encender,</i> | to kindle. |
| <i>Encerrar,</i> | to lock up. |
| <i>Encomendar,</i> | to recommend. |
| <i>Entender,</i> | to understand. |
| <i>Enterrar,</i> | to bury. |

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Escarmentar,</i> | to warn. |
| <i>Extender,</i> | to extend. |
| <i>Fregar 2,*</i> | to rub. |
| <i>Gobernar,</i> | to govern. |
| <i>Helar,</i> | to freeze. |
| <i>Hender,</i> | to split. |
| <i>Herrar,</i> | to shoe. |
| <i>Invernar,</i> | to winter. |
| <i>Mentar,</i> | to mention. |
| <i>Negar 2,*</i> | to deny. |
| <i>Nevar,</i> | to snow. |
| <i>Pensar,</i> | to think. |
| <i>Perder,</i> | to lose. |
| <i>Quebrar,</i> | to break. |
| <i>Recomendar,</i> | to recommend. |
| <i>Regar 2,*</i> | to water. |
| <i>Reventar,</i> | to burst. |
| <i>Segar 2,*</i> | to cut down. |
| <i>Sembrar,</i> | to sow. |
| <i>Sentar,</i> | to set, to fit. |
| <i>Sosegar,</i> | to quiet. |
| <i>Temblar,</i> | to tremble. |
| <i>Tender,</i> | to stretch out. |
| <i>Tentar,</i> | to tempt. |
| <i>Transcender,</i> | to transcend. |
| <i>Tropezar,</i> | to stumble. |
| <i>Verter,</i> | to pour out. |

Verbs ending with *car* in the infinitive, change *c* into *qu* before *e*, in order that the root may preserve the sound of *k* throughout their conjugation, 145.

Verbs ending with *cer* and *cir* take a *z* before *c*, when followed by *a* or *o*, to preserve to their root the soft sound of *c* throughout their conjugation, 147.

Verbs ending with *ir* in the infinitive, whose termination is preceded by a syllable containing an *e*, change that *e* into *i*, according to the model, *seguir*, to follow, on p. 114. It would be well to observe, that *seguir* has another peculiarity besides, inasmuch as it loses its *u*, like all verbs ending with *guir*, before *a* and *o*. This suppression is, however, common only to the verbs whose termination is *guir*, those ending with *guir* being conjugated like *arguir*, which see in Index.

The following verbs are conjugated like *seguir* :

| | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| <i>Cefir,</i> | to gird. |
| <i>Colegir,</i> | to collect. |

* See note on page 412.

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Competir,</i> | to contend. |
| <i>Concebir,</i> | to conceive. |
| <i>Conseguir,</i> | to constrain. |
| <i>Derretir,</i> | to melt. |
| <i>Deleir,</i> | to dilute. |
| <i>Eligir,</i> | to elect. |
| <i>Embustir,</i> | to attack. |
| <i>Engreir,</i> | to make one proud. |
| <i>Fryir,</i> | to fry. |
| <i>Gemir,</i> | to groan. |
| <i>Henchar,</i> | to fill up. |
| <i>Hojar,</i> | to knead dough. |
| <i>Medir,</i> | to measure. |
| <i>Pedir,</i> | to ask. |
| <i>Regir,</i> | to rule. |
| <i>Rer,</i> | to laugh. |
| <i>Rendir,</i> | to give up. |
| <i>Reñir,</i> | to wrangle. |
| <i>Repetir,</i> | to repeat. |
| <i>Servir,</i> | to serve. |
| <i>Tefir,</i> | to dye. |
| <i>Vestir,</i> | to dress. |

The following verbs ending with *entir, erir, and ertir*, are conjug. like *sentir*, to feel.—See p. 168 :

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Adherir,</i> | to adhere. |
| <i>Advertir,</i> | to advert. |
| <i>Arrepentirse,</i> | to repent. |
| <i>Conocerir,</i> | to concern. |
| <i>Conferir,</i> | to confer. |
| <i>Controvertir,</i> | to controvert. |
| <i>Convertir,</i> | to convert. |
| <i>Deferir,</i> | to defer. |
| <i>Diferir,</i> | to differ. |
| <i>Digerir,</i> | to digest. |
| <i>Discernir,</i> | to discern. |
| <i>Divertirse,</i> | to divert one's self. |
| <i>Herir,</i> | to wound. |
| <i>Hervir,</i> | to boil. |
| <i>Inferir,</i> | to infer. |
| <i>Ingerir,</i> | to ingraft. |
| <i>Invertir,</i> | to invert. |
| <i>Mentir,</i> | to lie. |
| <i>Pervertir,</i> | to pervert. |
| <i>Preferir,</i> | to prefer. |
| <i>Proferir,</i> | to utter. |
| <i>Referir,</i> | to refer. |
| <i>Requerir,</i> | to require. |
| <i>Sugerir,</i> | to suggest. |
| <i>Transferir,</i> | to transfer. |
| <i>Zaherir,</i> | to censure. |

The following verbs are irregular in the past participle only, 168 :

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>Abrir,</i> | to open ; | <i>abierto.</i> |
| <i>Cubrir,</i> | to cover ; | <i>cubierto.</i> |
| <i>Describir,</i> | to describe ; | <i>descrito.</i> |
| <i>Escribir,</i> | to write ; | <i>escrito.</i> |
| <i>Imprimir,</i> | to print ; | <i>impreso.</i> |

| | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| <i>Inscribir,</i> | to inscribe ; | <i>inscrito.</i> |
| <i>Prescribir,</i> | to prescribe ; | <i>prescrito.</i> |
| <i>Proscribir,</i> | to proscribe ; | <i>proscrito.</i> |
| <i>Resolver,</i> | to resolve ; | <i>resuelto.</i> |
| <i>Solver,</i> | to solve ; | <i>suelto.</i> |
| <i>Volver,</i> | to return ; | <i>vuelto.</i> |

The following verbs have a regular and an irreg. past participle. Those marked with a * are obsolete :

| Infinitive. | Reg. past part. | Irreg. |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Abstractar,</i> | <i>abstraído,</i> | <i>abstracto.</i> |
| | to abstract. | |
| <i>Aceptar,</i> | <i>aceptado,</i> | <i>accepto.</i> |
| | to accept. | |
| <i>Adquirir,</i> | <i>adquirido,</i> | <i>adquisito.*</i> |
| | to acquire. | |
| <i>Aficionarse,</i> | <i>aficionado,</i> | <i>afecto.</i> |
| | to become fond of. | |
| <i>Afligir,</i> | <i>afligido,</i> | <i>aflito.*</i> |
| | to afflict. | |
| <i>Aguzar,</i> | <i>aguzado,</i> | <i>agudo.</i> |
| | to whet or sharpen. | |
| <i>Ahitar,</i> | <i>ahitado,</i> | <i>ahito.</i> |
| | to surfeit. | |
| <i>Alertar,</i> | <i>alertado,</i> | <i>alerto.</i> |
| | to render vigilant. | |
| <i>Angostar,</i> | <i>angostado,</i> | <i>angusto.</i> |
| | to narrow. | |
| <i>Aprender,</i> | <i>aprehendido,</i> | <i>aprehenso.*</i> |
| | to apprehend. | |
| <i>Arrepentirse,</i> | <i>arrepentido,</i> | <i>arrepiso.*</i> |
| | to repent. | |
| <i>Asegurar,</i> | <i>asegurado,</i> | <i>aserto.*</i> |
| | to assure. | |
| <i>Astringir,*</i> | <i>astringido,*</i> | <i>astricto.</i> |
| | to contract. | |
| <i>Asumir,*</i> | <i>asumido,*</i> | <i>asunto.*</i> |
| | to assume. | |
| <i>Atender,</i> | <i>atendido,</i> | <i>atento.</i> |
| | to attend. | |
| <i>Bendecir,</i> | <i>bendecido,</i> | <i>bendito.</i> |
| | to bless. | |
| <i>Cansarse,</i> | <i>cansado,</i> | <i>canso.*</i> |
| | to become tired. | |
| <i>Cefir,</i> | <i>ceñido,</i> | <i>cinto.*</i> |
| | to gird. | |
| <i>Colmar,</i> | <i>colmado,</i> | <i>colmo.*</i> |
| | to fill up. | |
| <i>Combar,</i> | <i>combado,</i> | <i>combo.</i> |
| | to warp. | |
| <i>Compaginar,</i> | <i>compaginado,</i> | <i>compacto.</i> |
| | to join. | |
| <i>Compeler,</i> | <i>compelido,</i> | <i>compulso.</i> |
| | to compel. | |
| <i>Completar,</i> | <i>completado,</i> | <i>completo.</i> |
| | to complete. | |
| <i>Comprender,</i> | <i>comprendido,</i> | <i>comprensio.</i> |
| | to understand. | |

| Infín. | Reg. past part. | Irreg. |
|--|-----------------------|--------|
| <i>Comprimir</i> , <i>comprimido</i> , | <i>compresso</i> . | |
| to compress. | | |
| <i>Conceder</i> , <i>concedido</i> , | <i>conceso</i> .* | |
| to concede. | | |
| <i>Concluir</i> , <i>concluido</i> , | <i>concluso</i> . | |
| to conclude. | | |
| <i>Concretar</i> , <i>concretado</i> , | <i>concreto</i> . | |
| to concrete or combine. | | |
| <i>Confesar</i> , <i>confesado</i> , | <i>confeso</i> . | |
| to confess. | | |
| <i>Confundir</i> , <i>confundido</i> , | <i>confuso</i> . | |
| to confound. | | |
| <i>Constituir</i> , <i>constituido</i> , | <i>constituto</i> .* | |
| to constitute. | | |
| <i>Consumirse</i> , <i>consumido</i> , | <i>consunto</i> . | |
| to be consumed. | | |
| <i>Contener</i> , <i>contenido</i> , | <i>contenido</i> .* | |
| to contain. | | |
| <i>Contentarse</i> , <i>contentado</i> , | <i>contento</i> . | |
| to content one's self. | | |
| <i>Contrair</i> , <i>contraído</i> , | <i>contracto</i> . | |
| to contract. | | |
| <i>Controvertir</i> , <i>controvertido</i> , | <i>controverso</i> .* | |
| to controvert. | | |
| <i>Contundir</i> , <i>contundido</i> , | <i>contuso</i> . | |
| to contuse. | | |
| <i>Convencer</i> , <i>convencido</i> , | <i>convicto</i> . | |
| to convince. | | |
| <i>Convertir</i> , <i>convertido</i> , | <i>converso</i> . | |
| to convert. | | |
| <i>Convulsarse</i> , <i>convulsado</i> , | <i>convulso</i> . | |
| to be convulsed. | | |
| <i>Corregir</i> , <i>corregido</i> , | <i>correcto</i> . | |
| to correct. | | |
| <i>Corromper</i> , <i>corrompido</i> , | <i>corrupto</i> . | |
| to corrupt. | | |
| <i>Corvar</i> , <i>corvado</i> , | <i>corvo</i> . | |
| to bend. | | |
| <i>Cuadrar</i> , <i>cuadrado</i> , | <i>cuadro</i> . | |
| to square. | | |
| <i>Cultivar</i> , <i>cultivado</i> , | <i>culto</i> . | |
| to cultivate. | | |
| <i>Defender</i> , <i>defendido</i> , | <i>defeso</i> .* | |
| to defend. | | |
| <i>Densar</i> , <i>densado</i> , | <i>denso</i> . | |
| to thicken. | | |
| <i>Descalzar</i> , <i>discalzado</i> , | <i>discalzo</i> . | |
| to pull off the shoes and stockings. | | |
| <i>Desertar</i> , <i>desertado</i> , | <i>desierto</i> . | |
| to desert. | | |
| <i>Desnudar</i> , <i>desnudado</i> , | <i>desnudo</i> . | |
| to undress. | | |
| <i>Despertar</i> , <i>despertado</i> , | <i>despierto</i> . | |
| to awake. | | |
| <i>Desquitarse</i> , <i>desquitado</i> , | <i>desquito</i> .* | |
| to retaliate. | | |
| <i>Destruir</i> , <i>destruido</i> , | <i>destruido</i> .* | |
| to destroy. | | |

| Infín. | Reg. past part. | Irreg. |
|--|----------------------|--------|
| <i>Desyunir</i> , <i>desyunción</i> , | <i>desyunto</i> .* | |
| to unyoke. | | |
| <i>Disfundir</i> , <i>disfundido</i> , | <i>disfuso</i> . | |
| to diffuse. | | |
| <i>Digerir</i> , <i>digerido</i> , | <i>digesto</i> .* | |
| to digest. | | |
| <i>Dirigir</i> , <i>dirigido</i> , | <i>directo</i> . | |
| to direct. | | |
| <i>Dispersar</i> , <i>dispersado</i> , | <i>disperso</i> . | |
| to disperse. | | |
| <i>Distinguir</i> , <i>distinguido</i> , | <i>distinto</i> . | |
| to distinguish. | | |
| <i>Dividir</i> , <i>dividido</i> , | <i>diviso</i> . | |
| to divide. | | |
| <i>Efundir</i> , <i>efundido</i> , | <i>efuso</i> . | |
| to pour out. | | |
| <i>Elegir</i> , <i>elegido</i> , | <i>electo</i> . | |
| to elect. | | |
| <i>Embriagarse</i> , <i>embriagado</i> , | <i>embriago</i> .* | |
| to get intoxicated. | | |
| <i>Enhestar</i> , <i>enhestando</i> , | <i>enhiesto</i> . | |
| to raise. | | |
| <i>Enjugar</i> , <i>enjugado</i> , | <i>enjuto</i> . | |
| to dry. | | |
| <i>Entregar</i> , <i>entregado</i> , | <i>entregado</i> .* | |
| to deliver. | | |
| <i>Erigir</i> , <i>erigido</i> , | <i>erecto</i> . | |
| to erect. | | |
| <i>Excluir</i> , <i>excluido</i> , | <i>excluido</i> . | |
| to exclude. | | |
| <i>Esculpir</i> , <i>esculpido</i> , | <i>esculto</i> .* | |
| to sculpture. | | |
| <i>Esperimentar</i> , <i>esperimentado</i> , | <i>esperimento</i> . | |
| to experiment. | | |
| <i>Espear</i> , <i>espeado</i> , | <i>espeso</i> . | |
| to thicken. | | |
| <i>Esprezar</i> , <i>esprezado</i> , | <i>espresso</i> . | |
| to express. | | |
| <i>Estender</i> , <i>estendido</i> , | <i>estenso</i> . | |
| to extend. | | |
| <i>Estinguir</i> , <i>estinguido</i> , | <i>estinto</i> . | |
| to extinguish. | | |
| <i>Estraer</i> , <i>extraído</i> , | <i>extracto</i> . | |
| to extract. | | |
| <i>Estrechar</i> , <i>estrechado</i> , | <i>estrecho</i> . | |
| to tighten. | | |
| <i>Estreñir</i> , <i>estreñido</i> , | <i>estricto</i> . | |
| to bind. | | |
| <i>Eximir</i> , <i>eximido</i> , | <i>exento</i> . | |
| to exempt. | | |
| <i>Faltar</i> , <i>faltado</i> , | <i>falto</i> . | |
| to be wanting. | | |
| <i>Favorecer</i> , <i>favorecido</i> , | <i>favorito</i> . | |
| to favor. | | |
| <i>Fechar</i> , <i>fechado</i> , | <i>fecho</i> . | |
| to date. | | |
| <i>Fijar</i> , <i>ajado</i> , | <i>ajó</i> . | |
| to fix. | | |

| Infín. | Reg. past part. | Irreg. |
|---|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Pingir</i> , to feign. | <i> fingido</i> , | <i> feto</i> . |
| <i>Froir</i> , to fry. | <i> freído</i> , | <i> frito</i> . |
| <i>Hartar</i> , to stuff one's self (with eating). | <i> hartado</i> , | <i> hartó</i> . |
| <i>Improvisar</i> , to improvise. | <i> improvisado</i> , | <i> improviso</i> . |
| <i>Incluir</i> , to include. | <i> incluido</i> , | <i> incluso</i> . |
| <i>Incurrir</i> , to incur. | <i> incurrido</i> , | <i> incurso</i> . |
| <i>Infectar</i> , to infect. | <i> infectado</i> , | <i> infecto</i> . |
| <i>Inficionar</i> , to vitiate. | <i> inficionado</i> , | <i> infecto</i> . |
| <i>Infundir</i> , to infuse. | <i> infundido</i> , | <i> infuso</i> . |
| <i>Ingerir</i> , to introduce. | <i> ingerido</i> , | <i> ingerito</i> . |
| <i>Ingerlar</i> , to ingraft (a tree). | <i> ingerlado</i> , | <i> ingerito</i> . |
| <i>Insertar</i> , to insert. | <i> insertado</i> , | <i> inserto</i> . |
| <i>Instruir</i> , to instruct. | <i> instruído</i> , | <i> instructo</i> .* |
| <i>Interrumpir</i> , to interrupt. | <i> interrumpido</i> , | <i> interruoto</i> .* |
| <i>Introducir</i> , to introduce. | <i> introducido</i> , | <i> introducto</i> .* |
| <i>Invertir</i> , to invert. | <i> invertido</i> , | <i> inverso</i> . |
| <i>Juntar</i> , to join. | <i> juntado</i> , | <i> junto</i> . |
| <i>Leudar</i> , to ferment (dough with leaven). | <i> leudado</i> , | <i> leudo</i> . |
| <i>Limpiar</i> , to clean. | <i> limpiado</i> , | <i> limpio</i> . |
| <i>Maldecir</i> , to curse. | <i> maldecido</i> , | <i> maldito</i> . |
| <i>Malquistar</i> , to excite disputes and quarrels. | <i> malquistado</i> , | <i> malquisto</i> . |
| <i>Mancar</i> , to maim. | <i> mancado</i> , | <i> manco</i> . |
| <i>Manifestar</i> , to manifest. | <i> manifestado</i> , | <i> manifesto</i> . |
| <i>Manumitir</i> , to emancipate. | <i> manumitido</i> , | <i> manumiso</i> . |
| <i>Marchitar</i> , to wither. | <i> marchitado</i> , | <i> marchito</i> . |
| <i>Merecer</i> , to deserve. | <i> merecido</i> , | <i> mérito</i> .* |
| <i>Mondar</i> , to purify. | <i> mondado</i> , | <i> mondo</i> . |
| <i>Mutilar</i> , to mutilate. | <i> mutilado</i> , | <i> mutilo</i> . |
| <i>Nacer</i> , to be born. | <i> nacido</i> , | <i> nato</i> . |

| Infín. | Reg. past part. | Irreg. |
|--|--------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Ocultar</i> , to hide. | <i> ocultaáo</i> , | <i> oculto</i> . |
| <i>Omitir</i> , to omit. | <i> omitido</i> , | <i> omiso</i> . |
| <i>Oprimir</i> , to oppress. | <i> oprimido</i> , | <i> opreso</i> . |
| <i>Pagar</i> , to pay. | <i> pagado</i> , | <i> pago</i> . |
| <i>Pasar</i> , to pass. | <i> pasado</i> , | <i> paso</i> . |
| <i>Perfeccionar</i> , to perfectionate. | <i> perfeccionado</i> , | <i> perfecto</i> . |
| <i>Permitir</i> , to permit. | <i> permitido</i> , | <i> permiso</i> .* |
| <i>Pervertir</i> , to pervert. | <i> pervertido</i> , | <i> perverso</i> . |
| <i>Pintar</i> , to paint. | <i> pintado</i> , | <i> pinto</i> .* |
| <i>Poseer</i> , to possess. | <i> poseído</i> , | <i> poseso</i> . |
| <i>Prender</i> , to seize. | <i> prendido</i> , | <i> preso</i> . |
| <i>Presumir</i> , to presume. | <i> presumido</i> , | <i> presunto</i> . |
| <i>Pretender</i> , to pretend. | <i> pretendido</i> , | <i> pretensio</i> . |
| <i>Producir</i> , to produce. | <i> producido</i> , | <i> producto</i> . |
| <i>Proferir</i> , to utter. | <i> proferido</i> , | <i> proferto</i> . |
| <i>Profesar</i> , to profess. | <i> profesado</i> , | <i> profeso</i> . |
| <i>Proveer</i> , to provide. | <i> proveído</i> , | <i> provisto</i> . |
| <i>Provenir</i> , to arise. | <i> provenido</i> , | <i> provento</i> .* |
| <i>Querer</i> , to wish. | <i> querido</i> , | <i> quisto</i> .* |
| <i>Quitar</i> , to quit. | <i> quitado</i> , | <i> quito</i> . |
| <i>Raer y rasar</i> , to erase. | <i> raído y rasado</i> , | <i> raso</i> . |
| <i>Rarefacier</i> , to rarefy. | <i> rarefacido</i> , | <i> rarefacto</i> . |
| <i>Reasumir</i> , to reassume. | <i> Reasumido</i> , | <i> reasunto</i> .* |
| <i>Recluir</i> , to shut up. | <i> recluido</i> , | <i> recluso</i> . |
| <i>Recocer</i> , to boil again. | <i> recocido</i> , | <i> recocho</i> . |
| <i>Reflejar</i> , to reflect the rays of light. | <i> reflejado</i> , | <i> reflejo</i> . |
| <i>Refringir</i> , to refract. | <i> refringido</i> , | <i> refracto</i> . |
| <i>Remitir</i> , to remit. | <i> remitido</i> , | <i> remiso</i> . |
| <i>Repeler</i> , to repel. | <i> repelido</i> , | <i> repulso</i> .* |

| Infín. | Reg. past part. | Irreg. |
|---|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Requerir</i> , to require. | <i>requerido</i> , | <i>requisito</i> . |
| <i>Responder</i> , to answer. | <i>respondido</i> , | <i>respuesto</i> .* |
| <i>Restringir</i> , to restrain. | <i>restringido</i> , | <i>restricto</i> . |
| <i>Rizar</i> , to curl hair. | <i>rizado</i> , | <i>rizo</i> . |
| <i>Romper</i> , to break. | <i>rompido</i> , | <i>roto</i> . |
| <i>Salar</i> , to salt. | <i>salado</i> , | <i>salso</i> .* |
| <i>Salpresar</i> , to season with salt. | <i>salpresado</i> , | <i>salpreso</i> . |
| <i>Salvar</i> , to save. | <i>salvado</i> , | <i>salvo</i> . |
| <i>Secar</i> , to dry. | <i>secado</i> , | <i>seco</i> . |
| <i>Sepultar</i> , to bury. | <i>sepultado</i> , | <i>sepulto</i> . |
| <i>Situar</i> , to situate. | <i>situado</i> , | <i>sito</i> . |
| <i>Soltar</i> , to loosen. | <i>soltado</i> , | <i>suelto</i> . |
| <i>Subtender</i> , to subtend. | <i>suptendido</i> , | <i>subtenso</i> . |
| <i>Sujetar</i> , to subdue. | <i>sujetado</i> , | <i>sujeto</i> . |
| <i>Suprimir</i> , to suppress. | <i>suprimido</i> , | <i>supreso</i> . |
| <i>Surgir</i> , to anchor. | <i>surgido</i> , | <i>surto</i> . |
| <i>Suspender</i> , to suspend. | <i>suspendido</i> , | <i>suspenseo</i> . |
| <i>Sustituir</i> , to substitute. | <i>sustituido</i> , | <i>sustituto</i> . |
| <i>Tender</i> , to stretch out. | <i>tendido</i> , | <i>tenso or teso</i> . |
| <i>Tenir</i> , to tinge, to dye. | <i>teñido</i> , | <i>tinto</i> . |
| <i>Torcer</i> , to twist. | <i>torcido</i> , | <i>tuerto</i> . |
| <i>Zafarse</i> , to escape, to run away. | <i>zafado</i> , | <i>zafo</i> . |

The regular form of the past participle of these verbs is generally used with the auxiliary *haber*, and the irregular one with *ser* or *estar*, 169.

Verbs ending with *ucir*, in the infinitive, are conjugated like *traducir*, to translate, p. 134. *Lucir*, to shine, which is conj. like *conocer*, 147, is the only exception to this rule.

Verbs ending with *gar* take a silent *u* after *g* before *e*; and those ending with *ger* and *gir* change *g* into *j* before *a* and *o*, 180.

The letter *i*, when placed between two vowels, is frequently changed into *y* in Spanish. This occurs most often in the verbs ending with *aer*, as *raer*, to erase; *eer* as *leer*, to read; *oar*, as *roer*, to gnaw; *uir*, as *infiuir*, to influence; or *guir*, as *arguir*, to argue, before those terminations of inflexion which begin with *ia* (except in the imperfect), *ie*, or *io*, like in the model *instruir*, to instruct, on p. 143. This observation does not apply, however, to the verbs like *seguir*, to follow, in which the *u* is silent, and which have been explained in Rule 162.

Verbs ending with *zar*, change *z* into *c* before *e*, 187.

Verbs ending with *quir*, change this termination into *c* before *a*.—Ex. *Delinca*, and not *delinquá*.

The most important verbs which are entirely irreg. are the following:

Adquirir, to acquire; see *Adquirir*.
Andar, to walk; see *Andar*.
Asir, to seize; see *Asir*.
Caber, to be contained; see *Caber*.
Caer, to fall, 270.
Cocer, to cook; see *Cocer*.
Dar, to give, 221.
Decir, to say, 294.
Dormir, to sleep, 191.
Estar, to be, p. 52.
Haber, to have, p. 24.
Haber, there to be, 139.
Hacer, to do, to make, 173.
Ir, to go, 166.
Jugar, to play; see *Jugar*.
Morir, to die, 190.
Oír, to hear; see *Oír*.
Oler, to smell; see *Oler*.
Poder, to be able, 206.
Podrir, to rot; see *Podrir*.
Poner, to put, p. 162.
Querer, to wish, to will, p. 200.
Reir, to laugh; see *Reir*.
Saber, to know, 254.
Salir, to go out, p. 211.
Ser, to be, p. 43.
Tener, to have, p. 33.
Traer, to fetch, p. 252.
Valer, to be worth; see *Valer*.
Venir, to come, 247.
Ver, to see, 213.

Most active transitive verbs require the preposition *a* before their direct regimen, when that regimen is a person; but no preposition is added

when the direct regimen is not a person, 140.

Only the infinitive of verbs can be used as a substantive in Spanish. It is then invariably accompanied by an article, or some determinative word, like any other noun, 189.

Verbs of motion require the preposition *á*, and verbs of rest are generally followed by *en*, 222.

VERY, *muy*, 178; it is rendered by **misimo** when it precedes a noun, 113, 233.

VERY MUCH, *muchísimo*.

Vestido, dress, clothes, p. 23.

Viejo, old in years, worn out, decayed, 141.

VISIT, *TO*, *visitar*, p. 82.

Vm.—For **Vm.**, **Vd.**, **Vms.**, **Vds.**, **VV.**, and **Vs.**, see **V**.

W.—This letter does not exist in Spanish. See *Introd. Lesson*, p. vii.

WANT, *TO*, *carecer*, is conjugated like *compadecer*, 147; *faltar*, *necesitar*.

WAR, *TO*, *guerrar*, p. 222.

WARM, *TO BE*, *tener calor*, 72.

WASH ONE'S SELF, *TO*, *lavarse*, p. 88.

WATER, *agua*, 135.

WE, **nosotros**, **nosotras**.—See note on p. 61.

WELL, *bien*, 178.

WHAT, *qué*, *lo que*.—See **PRONOUNS**, **INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE**, or *Rules* 103, 108.

WHATEVER, *cualquier*.—See **PRONOUNS**, **INDEFINITE**, or *Rule* 86.

WHEN, *cuando*.

WHENCE, or **FROM WHERE**, *de donde*, 178.

WHERE, *donde*, 178.

WHERETO, *adonde*, 178.

WHICH, *qué*, *cual*, **quien**.—See **PRONOUNS**, **INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE**, or *Rules* 103, 108.

WHILE, *durante que*, 215.

WHITEN, *TO*, *blanquear*, p. 263.

WHITHER, *adonde*, 178.

WHO, **WHOM**, **quien**, *que*.—See **PRONOUNS**, **RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE**, or *Rules* 103, 127.

WHO YOUR HANDS KISSES, **G.S.M.B.**, 309.

WHOEVER, *cualquier*.—See **PRONOUNS**, **INDEFINITE**, or *Rule* 86.

WHOLESALE, *por mayor*, p. 45.

WHOM, **quien**, *que*, 108, 127.

WHOSE, *cuyo*, *cuya*, *cuyos*, *cuyas*.—See **PRONOUNS**, **INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE**, or *Rule* 199.

WHY, *porqué*, p. 64.

WILL, *TO*, *querer*; its conjugation, 230; not to be confounded with *gustar*, to please, 231.—*TO*, before an infinitive, is left out after *querer*, 164.

WISH, *TO*, *querer*; its conjugation, 230; *desear*, p. 126.

WITH, *con*, 183; is added to the personal pronouns as follows: **WITH ME**, *conmigo*; **WITH THEE**, *contigo*; **WITH HIM**, *with HER*, *consigo*; *para con*, 208.

WITHOUT, *sin*, 183; *sin embargo*, 123.

WORDS which without being nouns are used as such, are masculine, 110.

WORK, *TO*, *trabajar*, p. 108.

WORSE, *peor*, 52.

WORTH, *TO BE*, *valer*.—See **Valer**.

WRITE, *TO*, *escribir*.

WRONG, *TO BE*, *no tener razon*, 73.

X is sounded as *x* in *expression*. See *Introductory Lesson*, p. vii.—Some words, formerly spelled with an *x*, are now written with *j*; as, **relox**, *reloj*, a *watch*.

Y is sounded as *y* in the English word *easy*.—See *Introductory Lesson*, p. vii.

Y.—Many words ending in English with *y*, end in Spanish with *ia*, 100.

Ya, already, presently, now, 178.

YES, *sí*, 178.

YESTERDAY, *ayer*, 178.

YET, *aun*, *todavía*, *ya*, 178.

YONDER, *astras*, 178.

YOU, **vosotros**, **vosotras**.—See note on p. 61.—See, also, **V**.

YOUR, *su*, 27–29; *vuestro*, **vuestra**, **vuestros**, **vuestras**, 82.

YOUR HONOR, **V.**, **Vs.**, etc., 7, 8.

YOUR OBEDIENT SERVANT, **S. S. S.**, 308.

YOURS.—See **PRONOUNS**, **POSSESSIVE**.

Z is sounded as *th* in *thin*. See *Introductory Lesson*, p. vii.



1

.

.

.

SECRET
NO. 5-1000
REMARKS

3 61ST 5250
BR
02/95 53-005-00 U.S. AIR FORCE

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 016 396 470

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

| | |
|--|--|
| | |
|--|--|

